

R E P O R T R E S U M E S

ED 003 868

48

DAMASCUS ARABIC.

BY- FERGUSON, CHARLES A. AND OTHERS

CENTER FOR APPLIED LINGUISTICS, WASHINGTON, D.C.

REPORT NUMBER NDEA-VI-139

PUB DATE

61

EDRS PRICE MF-\$0.45 HC-\$12.92 323P.

DESCRIPTORS- *ARABIC, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, BASIC VOCABULARY, *TEXTBOOKS, *ORAL COMMUNICATION, SPEECH, STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS, GRAMMAR, PRONUNCIATION, *LANGUAGES, VOCABULARY, INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS, DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, DAMASCUS, SYRIA

THIS DOCUMENT WAS PREPARED AS A TEXTBOOK FOR AN INTENSIVE COURSE IN THE SPOKEN ARABIC LANGUAGE OF DAMASCUS, SYRIA. CONTAINED IN THE TEXT ARE DETAILED GRAMMATICAL INFORMATION, STRUCTURAL AND PRONUNCIATION INFORMATION, AND A CUMULATIVE ARABIC-ENGLISH VOCABULARY. (JH)

ED003868 139

Charles A. Ferguson with the assistance of
Moukhtar Ani and others

damascus arabic

Reprinted by the Center for Applied Linguistics
of the Modern Language Association of America
Washington D.C. 1961

Charles A. Ferguson with the assistance of
Moukhtar Ani and others

This document has been reproduced exactly as received from
person or organization originating it. Points of view or opin-
ions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Educa-
tion position or policy.

damascus arabic

Reprinted by the Center for Applied Linguistics
of the Modern Language Association of America
Washington D.C. 1961

ED003868

It is the policy of the Center for Applied Linguistics to make more widely available certain instructional and related materials in the language teaching field which have only limited accessibility. This policy calls for the republication of works which are out of print and of items which are normally limited in their distribution to members of the organization under whose sponsorship they were prepared, such as government agencies, special university programs, and private business concerns. The users of these reprints should bear in mind that in many instances they are incomplete or provisional in nature and that the Center has chosen to reproduce them either because, even in their present form, they are better than other available works, or because in some respect they may serve as supplemental to existing materials. Whenever appropriate, the authors' names are indicated. The kinds of prices set for the reprints vary considerably depending on the nature of the financing of the projects, but in every instance the price is determined in the light of the fact that the Modern Language Association is a non-profit professional association.

SPECIAL ACKNOWLEDGMENT: This work has been published with the permission of the Foreign Service Institute and under the provisions of a contract between the U.S. Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, and the Center for Applied Linguistics.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

This textbook was originally prepared for use in an intensive course in Arabic at the Foreign Service Institute of the Department of State during the years 1950-1952. The first twelve units, with a cumulative Arabic-English vocabulary, are in approximate final form, and constitute the major part of the book. The balance of the text consists of those units which, out of a planned total of thirty, exist in a form suitable for reproduction.

The book deals specifically with the spoken Arabic of Damascus, for which there is no other textbook in English. As a basic course in the spoken Arabic of the Syrian area, it contains more complete grammatical information and explanation than other texts, and will be a valuable supplement to them.

The pages have been reproduced directly from the mimeographed copy prepared for classroom use. Editorial attention has been limited to the correction of errors that might mislead or confuse the student; minor typographical errors in the English portion of the text have been allowed to stand. Different parts of the book were prepared at different times, and the user will note some discrepancies in the editorial treatment.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

UNITS

1. Do you speak Arabic?	001
2. Getting around	026
3. Meeting people	051
4. Hiring a maid	080
5. In a shop.	105
6. Review: Units 1-5	135
7. Keeping cool	149
8. Keeping clean	179
9. At the doctor's	201
10. The post office	223
11. A trip to Aleppo	248
12. Review: Units 1-11.	254
Arabic-English vocabulary: Units 1-12	262
13. Dining out	285
14. Renting a house.	289
15. At the bank	293
17. Holiday	298
29. The Arab Renaissance	304
Supplementary unit: Politics.	307
Supplementary unit: In the classroom	313

PRONUNCIATION

1.1. The Arabic spelling in this book	006
1.2. Arabic stress	006
1.3. Arabic vowels	006
1.4. Arabic consonants.	008
2.1. Trills (r)	030

2.2.	The glottal stop (ʔ)	030
2.3.	Double consonants	031
3.1.	Pharyngeal spirants (ħ, ʕ)	056
3.2.	Three-consonant sequences and the 'helping vowel'. . .	057
4.1.	The velar spirants (x, ɣ)	082
4.2.	Mid front vowel (e, ee)	082
4.3.	Automatic word-stress	084
5.1.	Light and heavy consonants	110
5.2.	Mid back vowel (o, oo).	110
5.3.	The neutral vowel (ə).	111
7.1.	The vowel (a).	154
7.2.	The vowel (aa)	155
8.1.	The inserted vowel at the ends of words	183
8.2.	Question intonation	183
9.1.	Assimilation	205
10.1.	The post-velar stop (q).	227
10.2.	Velarization	227

ANALYSIS

1.1.	Formulas	010
1.2.	How to say 'is'	010
1.3.	Pronoun endings	011
1.4.	'And'	012
1.5.	'The'	012
1.6.	Numbers	012
2.1.	Masculine or feminine.	032
2.2.	'The'	032
2.3.	'This'	033
2.4.	Pronoun endings	034
2.5.	Verb forms: the prefix tense.	035
2.6.	The B- verb prefix	036
2.7.	Feminine T- nouns	039

3.1.	Prefix tense	058
3.2.	Plural <u>-u</u>	060
3.3.	Pronoun endings	063
3.4.	Alternants of the pronoun endings	063
3.5.	Independent use of simple prefix tense	064
3.6.	Prepositions	064
3.7.	Feminine T- nouns.	068
3.8.	Feminine of adjectives	069
3.9.	Numbers	071
4.1.	Pronoun endings	085
4.2.	Suffix alternants	086
4.3.	Prefix tense	086
4.4.	Verb stems ending in a vowel	088
4.5.	The suffix -l-	089
4.6.	Prefix meaning 'going to'.	092
4.7.	The word <u>šii</u> 'thing'	092
4.8.	Formulas	093
5.1.	Command forms	113
5.2.	Feminine T-nouns	115
5.3.	Collectives	117
5.4.	Roots	118
5.5.	Separate personal pronouns	119
5.6.	Plurals	120
5.7.	Numbers	121
5.8.	Relative clauses	123
7.1.	Comparatives	156
7.2.	Suffix tense	158
7.3.	Nisbes	163
8.1.	Verbs: primary and derivative	186
8.2.	Active participles	187
8.3.	CCV verbs	189
8.4.	Command forms	190
8.5.	M- nouns	191

9.1. Passive participles	207
9.2. <u>yaa-</u> and other verbal particles	208
9.3. The prefixes <u>bi-</u> and <u>fii-</u>	210
9.4. Connective <u>maa</u>	213
10.1. Occupation nouns	229
10.2. Ordinal numbers	232
10.3. Color adjectives	234
10.4. Agreement	236
10.5. Formulas and responses	239

DO YOU SPEAK ARABIC ?

Section A. Basic Sentences

the peace	ssalaam
on you	ʿalaykom
1. Greetings to you.	ssalaamu ʿalaykom .
2. And greetings to you (<u>in reply</u>)	waʿalaykumu ssalaam .
3. Hello.	marhaba .
4. Hello <u>or</u> welcome.	ʾahlan wasahlan
how	kiif
your state	haalak
5. How are you?	kiif haalak ?
6. How are you? (<u>another way</u>)	šloonaak ?
God willing	nšāalla
well	maḥṣuṭ
7. I hope you're well?	nšāaʾilla maḥṣuṭ ?
praise God	lhāmdu ʾellāa <u>or</u> lhāmiella
good	mniin
8. Fine, thank you. ('Well, praise be to God.')	lhāmdu ʾellāa, mniin .
you	ʾante
9. How are <u>you</u> ?	šloonaak ʾante ?
you speak	btənki
Arabic	ʿarabi
10. Do you speak Arabic?	btənki ʿarabi ?
11. A little.	šwayye .
did you understand	fhəmt <u>or</u> fhəmet
on me	ʿaliyyi
12. Did you understand me?	fhəmt ʿaliyyi ?
yes	nāʾam
on you	ʿaléek

13. Yes, I understood you.

no

náſam fhəmt_ſaleek ,

lá?

14. No, I didn't understand.

please

speak

slowly ('at your ease')

la? maa_fhəmt .

bətražžáak

ʔəhki

ſala_máhlak

15. Please speak slowly.

do, make

favor

repeat

which

you said it

bətražzaak ʔəhki_ſala_mahlak .

ſmēel

maſruuf

ſiid

yállí or hállí

ʔəlto

16. Please repeat what you said.

what

you say

this

ſmeel_maſruuf ſiid_yállí_ʔəlto .

šuu

bətʔuul

háada

17. How do you say this in Arabic?

direct me

the hotel

šuu_bətʔuul_bəlſarabi haada ?

dəlni

lʔotēel

18. Direct me to the hotel.

I want

I go

dəlni_ſalʔoteel .

bəddi

ruuh

19. I want to go to the hotel.

how much

bəddi_ruuh ſalʔoteel or
bəddi_ruu_ſalʔoteel .

ʔaddēēš

20. (For) how much is this?

three

pounds

bʔaddēēš_hāada ?

tláate

leeráat or waraʔáat

21. Three pounds.

a lot

tlət_leeraat .

ktíir

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| it isn't | múu |
| so | hēek |
| 22. That's a lot, isn't it? | ktiir muu_heck ? |
| your need | háažtak |
| two pounds | leertéen or war'téen |
| 23. Two pounds will be enough. | háažtak_war'teen. |
| 24. All right. | táyye . |
| 25. What's this? | šuu_haada ? |
| this (<u>feminine</u>) | háyye or háyy |
| cigarette | siigáara |
| 26. This is a cigarette. | hayy_siigaara . |
| these or those | hadool |
| 27. What are these? | šuu_hadool ? |
| cigarettes | sagáayer |
| 28. Those are cigarettes. | hadool_sagaayer . |
| you want | béddak |
| 29. Do you want a cigarette? | béddak_siigaara ? |
| 30. Thank you. | mamnún . |
| give me | ŝaŝini |
| matches | kəbriit |
| 31. Give me matches. | ŝaŝini_kəbriit . |
| where | fēen or wēen |
| there is or there are | fii |
| restaurant | mátŝam |
| 32. Where is there a restaurant? | feen_fii_mátŝam ? |
| movie theater | siinama |
| 33. Where is there a movie theater? | feen_fii_siinama ? |
| the station | ləmnátta |
| 34. Where is the station? | feen_ləmnátta ? |

	toilet	xáarež <u>or</u> bēet_lmāyy	1.4
35.	Where's the toilet?	feen_lxaarež ?	
36.	Here.	hóon .	
37.	There.	hníik .	
38.	On your right.	ʕala_yamíinak .	
39.	On your left.	ʕala_šmáalak .	
40.	In front of you.	ʔaddáamak .	
	straight	déğri	
41.	Go straight ahead.	ruuh_déğri .	
42.	What do you want?	šuu_beddak ?	
	I eat	ʔáakol	
43.	I want to eat.	beddi_ʔaakol .	
	near you, at your place	ʕándak	
	fish	sámak	
44.	Do you have fish? ('Is there fish at your place?')	fii_ʕandak_samak ?	
	bring me	žēbli	
	rice	rēzz	
45.	Bring me rice.	žēbli rēzz .	
	meat	lámme	
	bread	xēbz <u>or</u> xēbez	
	fruit	fawáaki	
	potatoes	baṭáaṭa	
46.	I don't want potatoes.	maa_beddi baṭaṭa .	
	I drink	ʔēšrab	
	coffee	ʔahwe	
	water	mayy <u>or</u> mayye	
	beer	bíira	
47.	I want to drink coffee.	beddi_ʔēšrab ʔahwe .	

- | | |
|---|---|
| two | tnéen |
| they make | byáŋmlu |
| 48. How much are two and two? ('What do two and two make?') | tneen_wetneen šuu_byaŋmlu ? |
| four | ʔarbŋa |
| 49. Two and two are four. | tneen_wetneen ʔarbŋa . |
| five | xámse |
| eight | tmaanye <u>or</u> tmaane |
| 50. Three and five are eight. | tlaate_wamse tmaanye . |
| one | wáaned |
| six | sátte |
| seven | sábŋa |
| 51. One and six are seven. | waaned_wsátte sabŋa . |
| the hour | ssáaŋa |
| 52. What time is it? | ʔaddeš_ssáaŋa ? |
| one (<u>feminine</u>) | wáande |
| 53. It's one o'clock. | ssáaŋa_waande . |
| nine | tésŋa |
| ten | ʔášara |
| 54. It's ten after nine. ('The hour is nine and ten.') | ssáaŋa_tésŋa_wʔášara . |
| 55. Excuse me. | laa_tʔaaxežni <u>or</u> laa_twaaxežni . |
| 56. Excuse me. (<u>another way</u>) | ʔáfwan . |
| 57. Goodbye. (<u>said by the person leaving</u>) | xáatrak . |
| 58. Goodbye. (<u>in reply</u>) | maŋ_ssalaame . |
| 59. Goodbye. | ʔalla_ysalmak . |

1. The Arabic spelling in this book.

When Arabs write they do not write down their Spoken Arabic but use quite a different form of Arabic, called Literary Arabic. This is written in a special alphabet usually referred to as the Arabic alphabet. Sometimes -- very rarely -- Arabs do write down their everyday Spoken Arabic, for example in certain humorous magazines or in collections of popular songs. This is also customarily written in the Arabic alphabet. For this reason, and because you may want to study Literary Arabic when you finish this course, the Arabic alphabet is explained in Part 5 of the Manual. But since the purpose of this course is to teach you to SPEAK AND UNDERSTAND Arabic, not to read and write it, the Arabic alphabet is not used throughout the Manual. Instead, the Arabic words and sentences are written down in the ordinary letters of our own alphabet plus a few additional characters used to represent sounds unfamiliar to English speakers.

It is important for you to bear in mind that this spelling is only an AID TO LISTENING. It will help you to follow the Arabic expressions as you hear them spoken, and to recall afterwards what they sound like, but it cannot take the place of the actual sounds. The real content of this course -- the part that you should concentrate on above everything else -- is the spoken Arabic that you hear from your Guide or on the phonograph records. Whenever you hear something from your Guide that seems different from what you find written in this book, follow your ear, not your eye.

The Arabic spelling in this book may seem queer to you at first, but you will quickly get used to it, and in a few days you will have no trouble in using it to follow the spoken sounds. Most of the letters are used with values similar to the ones they have in English spelling. The exceptions to this rule will be explained as you go along, and you will have a chance to practice the pronunciation of all the sounds in the language, with your Guide as a model. Until the value of a particular letter has been made clear to you, don't be disturbed if it seems to be used in a peculiar way, simply disregard anything in the spelling that bothers you, and concentrate on the sounds.

2. Arabic stress.

In Arabic as in English some syllables are pronounced more loudly, with greater stress, than others. Such syllables are called stressed syllables and are indicated by a mark over the vowel of the stressed syllable. For example -- 'forgét' 'lólvely' ssaláam fárabi. Actually the position of stress is almost automatic in Arabic and you soon will be used to putting it in the right place.

3. Arabic vowels.

In English there are many vowels (think of the different vowels in pat, pet, pit, pot, put, putt, beat, boat, boot, etc.). but in Damascus Arabic there are only five basic vowels (written in our spelling a, e, i, o, u). For example, léera (pound), ?énte (you), dální (direct me), ?álto (you said it), byásmu (they make). In Damascus Arabic there is also a vowel in between i and u (written e), as in rázz (rice).

1.7

These vowels (except ə) are sometimes held longer, and in such cases are written double and will be called LONG VOWELS. For example -- háada (this), kíif (how), rúuh (go), tnéen (two), hoon (here).

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

a between 'e' of 'pet' and 'u' of 'but'	sámak	'fish'
	šlónak	'how are you'
i like the 'y' of 'many'	ʔaddécš	'how much'
	délni	'direct me'
	daŋri	'straight'
u like the 'u' of 'Hindu'	ʔábli	'bring me'
	byáʃmlu	'they make'
c like the 'ea' of 'great' but shorter	xáarež	'toilet'
	wáaned	'one'
o like the 'oa' of 'boat' but shorter	tláate	'three'
	ʔéltó	'you said it'
	ʔotéel	'hotel'
ə between u and i, like 'i' of 'pit'	ʔáakol	'I eat'
	rézz	'rice'
	fhémt	'I understood'
	ʔoddáamak	'in front of you'

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

aa between the 'a' of 'had' and the 'a' of 'father'	háada	'this'
	ssaláam	'the peace'
ii like 'i' of 'machine'	tmáanye	'eight'
	kíif	'how'
	ktíir	'a lot'
uu like 'u' of 'flu'	síinama	'movie theater'
	rúuh	'go'
	šúu	'what'
	múu	'it's not'
ee like 'ey' of 'they' but without the y-glide on the end	héek	'so'
	tnéen	'two'
	léera	'pound'
oo like 'ow' of 'know' but without the w-glide	hoon	'here'

4. Arabic consonants.

In Arabic there are many consonant sounds. Some are very similar to English sounds, but a few are quite different from any English sounds, and will require a great deal of practice. All the consonants will be discussed in detail several at a time in the Pronunciation Sections of future Units. For the time being here is a check list of the letters used to represent the consonants of Arabic in our spelling. The following are fairly similar to English sounds —

<u>Arabic letter</u>	<u>Nearest English sound</u>		
b	'b' in 'bit'	béddak	'you want'
d	'd' in 'dip'	delhi	'direct me'
f	'f' in 'fit'	féen	'where'
g	'g' in 'get'	siigáara	'cigarette'
h	'h' in 'hit'	háada	'this'
k	'k' in 'kit'	kiif	'how'
l	'l' in 'lip'	léera	'pound'
m	'm' in 'met'	múu	'it isn't'
n	'n' in 'net'	náfam	'yes'
s	's' in 'sip'	sétte	'six'
t	't' in 'tip'	tásfa	'nine'
w	'w' in 'wit'	wáahed	'one'
y	'y' in 'yet'	yamíinak	'your right'
z	'z' in 'zip'	rázz	'rice'
š	'sh' in 'ship'	šúu	'what'
ž	's' in 'pleasure'	žébli	'bring me'

The following sounds are not very similar to English speech sounds, although you have probably at one time or another uttered every one of them, and you will soon learn to use them as speech sounds.

Section C. Analysis

1.1. Formulas. In this unit you have learned a number of polite 'formulas' used in Arabic, for example — ssalāamu ʔalāykom, waʔalāykumu ssalāam, kiif hāalak, lhāmdella, xāatrak, maʔ ssalāame. Similarly we have formulas in English used as greetings and polite expressions such as — 'how do you do', 'you're welcome', etc. which don't have much meaning but are used more or less automatically in certain situations. Such formulas are very common in Arabic, more common than they are in English, and it is important for you to learn them. For example, in English we have only a few formulas of gratitude — 'thank you', 'thank you very much', 'thanks pal', 'that's very good of you', etc. The use of these depends more on the social relationship of the speaker and hearer than on the nature of the action for which gratitude is being expressed. In Arabic, on the other hand, there are many formulas of this kind — one used when the action has been performed by the hand, one if the action consists of offering part of one's possession, and so on.

Also, there is very often a regular, stereotyped formula of response to a given formula. For example, when one says ssalāamu ʔalāykom, the answer is almost always waʔalāykumu ssalāam. Or, when one says mārhaba the other usually says mārhaba. Or, maʔ ssalāame is the almost inevitable response to xāatrak.

New formulas will appear in every unit. Learn them — learn when to use them, and use them whenever you get a chance. The abbreviation fla will be used to mark formulas in the Vocabularies.

1.2. How to say 'is'. Study the following sentences with their English equivalents —

šūu_hāada ?

What is this?

hadḍol_sagāayer .

These are cigarettes.

kiif_hāalak ?

How is your state?

ktiir mlu_hēek ?

That is a lot, isn't it?

wēen_lamhātta ?

Where is the station?

tnēen_wetnēen ʔārbfa .

2 plus 2 = 4

In Arabic there usually is no equivalent for English 'am', 'is', 'are'. If you want to say 'You are well', or 'The station is in front of you', you simply say 'You — well' or 'The station — in front of you'.

ʔānte mabṣūut .

You are well.

lamhātta ʔaddāamak .

The station is in front of you.

1.3. Pronoun endings. Study carefully these words together with their English equivalents —

háalak	<u>your</u> state
šlónak	how are <u>you</u>
kiifak	how are <u>you</u>
béddak	<u>your</u> wish
yamíinak	<u>your</u> right
šmáalak	<u>your</u> left
ʔándak	with <u>you</u> , at <u>your</u> place
ʔəddáamak	in front of <u>you</u>
háažtak	<u>your</u> need
ʔaléek	on <u>you</u>
béddi	<u>my</u> wish
dál ⁿⁱ	direct <u>me</u>
ʔatfini	give <u>me</u>

You can see from these words that -ak or -k at the end of a word often means 'your' or 'you' and that -i or -ni at the end of a word often means 'my' or 'me'. Here are seven more sentences showing these endings on other words —

beddi_rúun ʔala_šmáli .	I want to go to my left.
šúu_háada_yalli_ʔəddáamak ?	What's this in front of you?
máa_fii_ʔándi batáata .	I don't have any potatoes.
beddi_déllak ʔalʔotéel .	I want to direct you to the hotel.
béddak_trúun_ʔəddáami ?	Do you want to go in front of me?
ʔáhlán_wasáhlán_fiik .	Welcome to <u>you</u> .
máʔak_siigàara ? láʔ,	Do you have a cigarette with you?
máa_mafi .	No, I don't.

1.4. 'And.' Notice the forms for 'and' in the following expressions --

tnèen_watnéen 'árbfa .	2 plus 2 = 4
wáahed_wsétte sábfá .	1 plus 6 = 7
tnèen_watmáane fášara .	2 plus 8 = 10
tnèen_watnéen_wxámse tésfa .	2 plus 2 plus 5 = 9

Sometimes the Arabic equivalent of 'and' is w, sometimes wə. When the following word begins with two consonants it is wə, when it begins with one consonant it is w. Thus tneen, tmaanye, ktiir begin with two consonants; on the other hand, xamse, sette, xəbz begin with a single consonant.

1.5. 'The.' Notice the Arabic for 'the' in the following expressions --

lhámdu_ləlláa	The praise to God
l'otéel	the hotel
lxáarež	the toilet
lámháttá	the station
ssaláame	the peace, safety
ssáafa	the hour

Arabic has two ways of saying 'the' -- either putting l- at the beginning of a word or doubling the first consonant of a word. The use of these two ways depends on the consonant that begins the word. For example, if it is s you double it -- sáafa, ssáafa; but if it is m you use l- -- máyy, lmáyy,

1.6. Numbers. In the Basic Sentences you learned that the Arabic word for 'three' is tlaate, but that if you want to say 'three pounds' you say tlát_leeràat. Arabic numbers from 'three' to 'ten' have one form when they are said by themselves and another when they are counting. Here is the complete list --

ALONE	WITH A NOUN
tláate	tlát_leeràat
'árbfa	'árbaf_leeràat
xámse	xáms_leeràat
sétte	sátt_leeràat
sábfá	sábf_leeràat

tmáanye

tmén_leeràat

tásfa

tásf_leeràat

fášara

fášr_leeràat

There are other ways in which the numbers you have learned differ in use from the corresponding English numbers. For example, the Arabic for 'one' usually follows its noun instead of preceding it like the other numbers. Also, it has two forms -- a masculine (wáaned) and a feminine (wáande), and you have to know when to use which form. You will learn more about this in later units. Here are two examples --

mâtṣam_wáaned

one restaurant

lèera_wáande

one pound

In special cases, however, the word for 'one' comes first, and then you always use waaned. For example --

ṣatṭini wáaned_ʔáhwe .

Give me one coffee.

For saying 'two' of anything Arabic does not usually use tneen but instead adds an ending -een to the noun. For example --

lèera_(wáande) one pound

siigàara_(wáande) one cigarette

lcertéen two pounds

siigaartéen two cigarettes

tlét_leeràat three pounds

tlét_sagàayer three cigarettes

ʔotèel_(wáaned) one hotel

mâtṣam_(wáaned) one restaurant

ʔoteelécn two hotels

maṭṣaméen two restaurants

Section D. Exercises

1. Questions and Answers. Here are some questions which you are able to answer in Arabic. Read each question aloud, be sure you understand it, and then answer it briefly in Arabic. Take turns asking one another the questions. Do not try to invent elaborate answers. Just use the phrases and sentences you have learned in the Basic Sentences. Go over the questions until you are able to answer each one promptly and relevantly in several ways.

1. bténki_ṣàrabi ?

2. wéen_lamhàṭṭa ?

3. kíif háalak ?

4. ʔaddécš_bèddak ?

5. šúu_bèddak ?

6. wéen_ssagàayer ?
7. ?addées_ssàafa ?
8. wéen_bèet_lmàyy ?
9. ?addées_tnèen_wetnèen ?
10. šúu_hàada ?

2. Arithmetic. Read each question aloud, be sure you understand it, and then answer it in a complete Arabic sentence. For example --

?addées_tnèen_wetnèen ? Answer -- tnèen_wetnèen ?árbfa .

Take turns asking one another --

1. xámse_wetnèen šúu_byàfmlu ?
2. ?addées_sàtte_wetlāate ?
3. tlāate_wxámse šúu_byàfmlu ?
4. ?addées_tàsfa_wwàahed ?
5. ?árbaf_leerāat wxáms_leerāat šúu_byàfmlu ?
6. ?addées_sàbfa_wetlāate ?
7. ?árbfa_w?árbfa šúu_byàfmlu ?
8. ?addées_tlēt_leerāat_wleortèen ?
9. tnèen_wsàtte šúu_byàfmlu ?
10. ?addées_tlāate_wetnèen_wwàahed ?

3. Yes or No. Read each question aloud, be sure you understand it, and then answer first affirmatively and then negatively, using complete, natural Arabic sentences. For example --

fii_šándak_sámak ? náfam, fii . lá?, máa_fii .

bàddak_batāaṭa ? náfam, báddi . lá?, máa_báddi .

Take turns asking one another --

1. bàddak_láhme ?
2. fii_šándak ràzz ?
3. bàddak_siigáara ?
4. fhàmət ?

5. fii_mátṣam hòon ?
6. bəddak_ʔáhwe ?
7. bəddak_xébez ?
8. fii_ʔotèel_mniin_hniik ?
9. fii ṣándak_bīira ?
10. btənkī_ṣārabi ?

4. Telling time. Say the following times in Arabic. You only know the numbers to ten so you are somewhat limited in telling time, but practice with one another on the times you can say.

1. 3:10
2. 9:00
3. 1:05
4. 3:06
5. 6:00
6. 7:03
7. 8:10
8. 5:05
9. 4:09
10. 3:08

Section E. Listening In

Go through the following conversations with your group. The Guide or the speaker on the phonograph records will read them to you, with a pause after each sentence to give you time to repeat it after him. Speak up loud and clear, and imitate the Guide's pronunciation as closely as you can.

The first time through, keep your book closed and see how much you can understand through the ear alone. The second time through, open your book and follow the printed version with your eye as you listen. Go through each conversation as often as you need to in order to understand it all.

The conversations in the Listening In contain no new words and no sentence types that you have not already learned. If you have memorized the Basic Sentences, you will have no trouble in understanding what you hear. The leader will discuss the meaning of the conversations with you, and the Guide, as usual, will tell you whether your pronunciation satisfies him.

Conversation 1. Jones, who has recently arrived in Damascus, tries to speak Arabic with Ahmad.

- Jones. ssalāamu_ʿalāykom .
- Ahmad (ʿahmad) waʿalāykomu_ssalaam .
- ʿāhlan_wasāhlan_fiik .
- Šlōonak ?
- J. maḥṣūut_lhāmdella, wʿante_kiifak ?
- Ah. lhāmdu_lollāa mnīin . ʿāfwan, šuu_btēnki_ʿarabi ?¹
- J. šwāyye mūu_ktiir .
- Ah. lāʾ . ʿante_btēnki_ʿarabi_mnīin :
- J. mamnūunak, betražžāak dāl_ni_ʿalʾotēel .
- Ah. rūuḥ_māʿi dāğri .
- J. tāyyeb, mamnūun .
- Ah. háyy_lʾotēel ʿaddāamak .
- J. ʿmēel_maʾrūuf ʿiid_yalli_ʾalto šwāyye_šwāyye .²
- Ah. šuu_māa_fhēmt_ʿaliyyi ?¹
- J. mūu_ktiir .
- Ah. háyy_lʾotēel ʿaddāamak .
- J. nāʿam fhēmt . šūu_hāada_halli_ʿala_šmāali ?
- Ah. hāada māʿam_mnīin .
- J. beddi_ʾāakol_fii, rūuḥ_māʿi .
- Ah. lāʾ . mamnūunak . xāatrak .
- J. maʿ_ssalaame .

1 - Unaccented šuu at the beginning of a sentence is often equivalent to 'oh' or 'well'

2 - šwāyye_šwāyye ('little-little', also said šwāyye_šwāyye) means 'slowly', 'taking it easy'.

Conversation 2. Jones goes into a restaurant.

- Waiter. ?ahlan_wasáhlán .
- J. márhaba . šúu_fii_fándak ?
- Wa. fii_lámm_wrázz_wbatáata .
- J. šuu_máa_fii_fándak_sámak ?!
- Wa. kiif_máa_fii !!
- J. táyyeb šébli_sámak .
- Wa. béddek_xábəz ?
- J. náfam bédde .
- Wa. šúu_béddek_fawáaki ?
- J. máa_bédde_fawáaki . bédde_rúuh . ?addées_béddek ?
- Wa. tlét_leeráat .
- J. háada_ktiir, mñu_héek ?! mñiñ háyy_leertéen .
- Wa. táyyeb leertéen .
- J. ?addées_ssáafa ?
- Wa. ssáafa_wáande_wíášara .
- J. xáatrak .
- Wa. maí_ssáláame .

Conversation 3. In the coffee shop.

- Waiter. ?ahlan_wmárhaba .
- J. marnabtéen, fatíini_wáahed_?áhwe .
- Wa. háyy_l?áhwe .
- J. šébli_bíira .
- Wa. táyyeb .
- J. íméel_maí_rúuf šébli_sagáayer .
- Wa. láa_twaaxəzni . máa_fhəmt_faləek mñiñ .
- J. ?ənte_láa_t?aaxəzni, ?ána_máa_bənki_fárabí_ktiir .
bédde_sagáayer .
- Wa. háyy_sətt_siigaarəat .

- J. ʕáfwan . máʕak_kebriit ?
 Wa. náʕam .
 J. fii_bêet_màyy_hdon ?
 Wa. lxáareʒ ʕala_yamfinak .
 J. bêddi_rúu_ʕassfinama . féen_fii_wàande ?
 Wa. hniik ʔaddáam_lʔáhwe wʕala_ʕmáal_lamhàtta .
 J. mamnúun . xáatrak..

Conversation 4. At the ticket window.

- Jones bʔaddééʕ_ʕssinama_hdon ?
 Cashier fii_bléera wobleertéen wbetlét_leeràat .
 J. ʕmêel_maʕrúuf ʕiid_yalli_ʔéltó ʕala_máhlak .
 Ca. fii_bléera wobleertéen wbetláate .
 J. fhámt fhámt, táyyeb, háyy_leertéen .

Conversation 5. Walking on the streets of Damascus.

- Jones ʕúu_háada_halli_hniik ?
 Ahmad hniik_lamhàtta whóon_lʔotéel .
 J. náʕam ? máa_fhámt .
 Ah. hniik_lamhàtta whóon_lʔotéel .
 J. bêddi_ʔéʕrab_sii_áarà, máʕak_wàande ?
 Ah. náʕam máʕi .
 J. ʕatfini_kebriit .
 Ah. láa_twaaxèzni máa_fii_máʕi .
 J. ʔaddééʕ_ʕsàaʕa ?
 Ah. ʕsàaʕa_xámse_wxámse .
 J. táyyeb . bêddi_rúu_ʕal_ʔotéel, xáatrak .
 Ah. ʔállà_máʕak, máʕ_ʕsaláame .

Section F. Free Conversation

This section is the pay-off. It is the goal toward which you have been working all through the rest of the Unit — a chance to use the material in a real situation. If you have done all the work in the Unit up to this point, you should have no difficulty in rattling off the sentences you have learned.

First act out the Listening In, with different members of the group taking the parts of Jones, Ahmad, the waiter, etc. Run through each conversation several times, with different actors, until everybody in the group has played all three parts.

Now go on to conversations of your own, modeled on the Listening In but changed as much as you like. The Leader will assign parts, and ask various members of the group to carry on the conversations in pairs or threes. Put some spirit and imagination into your performance. Try to make each conversation as lively and lifelike as possible, and to rattle off the Arabic as naturally as you can.

The following conversation outlines are only suggestions. If you have better ideas, by all means follow them. But remember that it is more valuable for you to speak fluently over a narrow range of topics than to hem and haw trying to say things you haven't learned yet. Never mind if your conversations in the first few Units sound a little monotonous. The only way to arrive at the stage where you can talk about more interesting matters is to practice the simple things first.

Conversation 1. Asking for information.

A sees B on the street, they exchange greetings.
A asks the way to a restaurant, a hotel, or a movie theater.
B says it is to the right or left or straight ahead.
A doesn't understand and asks B to repeat.
B repeats the information, speaking more slowly.
A says he understood, and thanks B.
They say goodbye.

Conversation 2. At the restaurant.

C enters a restaurant and tells the waiter that he wants to eat.
The waiter asks him what he wants.
C asks for meat.
The waiter says there isn't any, but he's got some fish.
C asks for fish.
C also wants some potatoes or rice.
The waiter asks if he wants beer.
C says no, he wants coffee.
After his meal, C asks for cigarettes.
C asks how much he owes.
The waiter tells him.

Conversation 3. On the street.

E has just come to town. He goes up to F and greets him.

E asks where there is a hotel.

F gives him directions.

E asks him to speak slowly.

F does so, giving the same information in other words (if possible).

E asks if this (building) isn't a hotel.

F says no, this is a movie theater.

E says he wants to eat.

F says there's a restaurant over there.

E says he didn't understand.

F repeats.

E thanks him.

They say goodbye.

Section G. Vocabulary

This is a complete alphabetical list of all words and expressions used in this unit. It is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit.

ʔáakol	I eat	féen	where
ʔaddées	how much	fíi	there is, there are
ʔáhlán, wasáhlán	hello, welcome	fhémt or fhémet	I understand, you understand
ʔáhwe	coffee, coffee house	háada	this (masc.)
ʔállá	God	hadóol	these
ʔárbía	four	hálli	which, who, that (=yálli)
ʔáŋki	speak	háyy	this (fem.), here is
ʔénte	you	háyy	here is, here are
ʔaddáam	in front (of)	héek	so
ʔáito	you said it	hóon	here
ʔéšrab	I drink	hníik	there
ʔotéel	hotel	háažtak	your need, enough for you
b-	for (price), in, with	háalak	your state
betražžáak	I beg you, please	hámd	praise, thanks
béet, lmáyy	toilet	lhámdu, ləlləa or lhámdella (fla)	Praise be to God
bedd-	want	kəbríit	matches
báddi	I want	kiif	how
bəddak	you want	ktiir	much, a lot
baṭáata	potatoes	l-	the (see Note 1.5)
bíira	beer	láʔ	no
btéŋki	you speak	laa, tʔaaxəzni or laa, twaaxəzni	excuse me
dəll	direct (verb)	láhme	meat
dəgri	straight		
fawáaki	fruit		

léera	pound	siigáara	cigarette
leertéen	two pounds	siigaartéen	two cigarettes
leeráat	pounds	sagáayer or siigaaráat	cigarettes
máa	not	síinama	movies (movie theater)
máyy	water	sétte	six (sétte ...)
mabsút	glad, fine	sáafa	hour
máhel	ease	ʔaddées_sáafa ? What time is it?	
ʔala_máhlak	slowly	saláam	peace
mamnún	thankful, thank you	ssaláamu_ʔaláykom	'peace be on you'
márhaba	hello	waʔaláykumu_ssaláam	'and on you be peace' (see Note 1.1)
mátʔam	restaurant	saláame	peace, safety
máʔ	with	máʔ_ssaláame	goodbye
maʔrúuf	favor	šlón	how
ʔméel_maʔrúuf	please	šmáal	left
mhátta	station	šúu	what
mníin	good, well	šwáyye	a little
múu	it isn't	tésfa	nine (tésf ...)
náʔam	yes, well?, beg your pardon? (=what did you say?, what do you want?)	tláate	three (tlát ...)
nšáalla	God willing	tmáanye or tmáne	eight (tmén ...)
rúuh	go	tnéen	two
rəzz	rice	ťáyye	good, all right
sábfa	seven & (sábʔ ...)	w-, wə-	and
sámak	fish	wáaned	one
		wáande	one (fém.)

wéen	where
xáarež	toilet
xaatrak	goodbye
xámse	five (xáms ...)
xébz or xébez	bread
yállí	which
yamín	right
žábli	bring me
řála, or řa-	to, at, on
řarabi	Arabic
řášara	ten (řášr ...)
říd	repeat
řánd	near, at the place of
řándak	at your place, you have
řmél	do, make
řáfwan	excuse me
řatíini	give me

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. kiif haalak ? | How are you? |
| 2. mabsuut, lhamdella . | Fine, thank you. |
| 3. ?ente btenki farabi mniin . | You speak Arabic well. |
| 4. ?ahlan wasahlan fiik . | Welcome to you. |
| 5. fhemt faleek šwayye . | I understood you a little. |
| 6. haada maṭṣam mniin . | This is a good restaurant. |
| 7. beddi ?aakol fii . | I want to eat in it. |
| 8. šuu haada halli hniik ? | What's that over there? ("What that which there?") |
| 9. ween fii maṭṣam fii samak ? | Where is a restaurant that has fish? |
| 10. lmaṭṣam halli fala šmaalak mniin . | The restaurant that's on your left is good. |
| 11. fiid yalli ?alto šwayye šwayye . | Repeat what you said slowly. |
| 12. b?addeeš lxəbz ? | How much is bread? |
| 13. faṭiini war?teen . | Give me two pounds. |
| 14. ssamak tayyeb . | The fish is good. |
| 15. fii fandak fawaaki ? | Do you have fruit? ("Is-there at your- place fruit?") |
| 16. nafam fandi . | Yes, I do. ("Yes, at-my-place.") |
| 17. ?addeeš bəddak ? | How much do you want? |
| 18. beddi leerteen . | I want two pounds. |
| 19. haaztak leera waande . | One pound is enough for you. ("Your need is one pound.") |
| 20. žəbli waaned biira . | Bring me one beer. |
| 21. beet lmayy hniik fala yamiinak . | The toilet is over there on your right. |
| 22. beddi ?əšrab siigaara . | I want to smoke ("drink") a cigarette. |
| 23. beddi ?aakol ssaafa xamse . | I want to eat at five o'clock. |
| 24. hadool siigaaraatak . | These are your cigarettes. |
| 25. ruuh fala mahlak . | Go slowly! |
| 26. l?oteel muu mniin ktiir . | The hotel isn't very good. |
| 7. feen ssiinama ? | Where's the movie theater? |
| 28. láa twaaxəzni . máa fhemt mniin . | Excuse me, I didn't quite understand. ("I didn't understand well.") |

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 29. ssamak fandak mniin ? | Is the fish you have good? |
| 30. bʔaddees llaame ? | How much is meat? |
| 31. beddi ruuh ssaafa fašra . | I want to go at ten o'clock. |
| 32. baddak mayy ?ʔ | Do you want water? |
| 33. nafam šwayye . | Yes, a little. |
| 34. fafwan šuu hayy ? | Excuse me, what's this? |
| 35. hayy lemhatta . | This is the station. |
| 36. fmeel maf ruuf žabli bašaata . | Please bring me potatoes. |
| 37. fandi sett siigaaraaf . | I have six cigarettes |
| 38. ssaafa tmaane wxamse . | It's five after eight. |
| 39. baddi ruuh, xaatrak . | I want to go, goodbye. |
| 40. ʔalla mafak . maf ssalaame . | Goodbye. ("God with you, with peace.") |

GETTING AROUND

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| he came | ʔáʒa or ʔáʒa |
| the bus | lbáas or lbáasʔ |
| 1. Here comes the bus . | ʔəʒa_lbáas . |
| let's | xalliina |
| we go up | nátlaʔ |
| in it | fii |
| 2. Let's get on it . | xalliina_nátlaʔ_fii . |
| it seems | byəʒhar |
| the tram | ttramwáay |
| delayed, late | mətʔáxxer |
| 3. It looks as though the tram's late . | byəʒhar ttramwáay_mətʔaxxer . |
| crowded | maʔʒúuʔ |
| 4. No, the bus is crowded . | laʔ lbáas_maʔʒuuʔ . |
| we wait | nəstánna |
| second | táani |
| 5. Let's wait for the next tram . | xalliina_nəstanna ttramwáay_ttaani . |
| 6. Give us two tickets . | ʔaʔiina_warʔteen . |
| class | dáraʒe |
| first (feminine) | ʔúula |
| or | yemma |
| 7. First class or second class ? | dáraʒe_ʔuula yemma_dáraʒe_taanye ? |
| their value | háʔhon or háʔʔon |
| 8. How much are they ? | ʔaddees_haʔhon ? |
| piastres | ʔrúuš |
| 9. Ten piastres . | ʔašr_ʔruuš . |
| we want | bédna |
| we go down | nənzəl |

Marji Square

lmárže

10. We want to get off at Marji Square.

bedna_nanzel belmarže .

when

lamma

we arrive

mnáşal or mnúşal

information, news

xábar

11. Let's know when we get there .

lamma_mnəsal ʃaʃiina_xabar .

the line

lxátt

it leads

biwáddi

12. Where does this line go ?

halxátt_laween_biwaddi ?

13. To the Assaa .

ʃalʔaşşáaʃ .

I go down

ʔənzəl

14. Stop, I want to get off here .

ʃala_mahlak beddi_ʔənzəl hoon .

also

kamáan

15. So do I .

uʔana_kamaan .

16. Taxi .

táksi .

17. (The taxi driver says:)

ʔámr .

we go

nruuh

18. We want to go to Marji .

bedna_nruuh_ʃalmarže .

19. Please get in .

tfáqqalu .

20. How much do you want ?

ʔaddees_btaaxod_menna ?

21. Four pounds .

ʔarbaʃ_leeraat .

22. What? That's a little steep .

ʃuu_haada ? ʃii_ktiir .

(not) at all

ʔábadan

bey

béek

23. That's not at all too much, sir .

ʔabadan muu_ktiir yaa_beek .

half

nəşş

enough

kfáaye

24. Two and a half pounds is enough . war?teen_ unəss kfaaye .
 sake šāan
25. All right, for you (" for your sake") tayyeb. man šaankon betlat_wara?aat .
 three pounds .
- you (pl) want bādkon
 I stop for you wa??əflkon
26. Where do you want me to stop ween bədkon_wa??əflkon ?
 (for you) ?
- seeing šaayef
 the building lbinaaye
 the red (feminine) lhamra
27. Do you see the red building in šaayef_lbinaaye_lhamra yalli_?əddamak ?
 front of you ?
- in back of her warāaha
 a turn lāfte
28. A little beyond it there's a turn waraaha_šwayye, fii_lafte fala_yamiinak .
 to the right .
- turn lféet
 in it fiiha
29. Turn in there . lfeet_fiiha .
- stop (for us) wa??əflna
 first ?āwwal
 door, gate báab
30. And stop at the first gate on uwa??əflna fala_?awwal_baab fala_šmaalak.
 your left .
- please bálla
 with you máfak
 change kmáale
31. Do you have change for five pounds? balla mafak_kmaalet xams_leeraat ?
 stop, wait wá??ef

- | | |
|---|---|
| I see for you | šáflak |
| 32. Wait a minute, I'll see . | waʔʔef_lašəflak . |
| 33. Yes, I do . | máfi . |
| 34. Here. (Handing a note) | tfəddal . |
| we | nəɲna |
| we stay | nəbʔa |
| about | ɲawáali |
| two hours | saaʃtéen |
| 35. We're going to stay here about
two hours . | nəɲna ɲaɲaɲəbʔa_hoon ɲawaali_saaʃteen . |
| you like | bəɲəbb |
| you come back | tərʒaʃ |
| you take us | taaxédna |
| 36. Would you like to come back and
pick us up at six o'clock? | bəɲəbb_tərʒaʃ_taaɲədna ssaʃa_sette ? |
| 37. Yes sir (" on my eye "). | ʃala_ʃéeni . |
| if | ʔíza |
| you got delayed | tʔaxxárt |
| from, than | ʃán |
| we take | mnaaxod |
| other than you | ǵéerak |
| 38. And if you're later than six o'clock
we'll take someone else . | uʔiza_tʔaxxart ʃan_ssaʃa_sette,
mnaaxod_ǵéerak . |
| 39. I won't be. (No, God willing). | laʔ nšaalla . |
| to you | ʔəlkon |
| may I be | kúun |
| before, ahead of time | ʃábl |
| minutes | daʔáayeʔ |
| 40. I promise you I'll be here ten
minutes ahead of time . | ʔəlkon_ʃaliyyi kuun_hoon
ʔabl_bʃaʃr_daʔaayeʔ . |

Section B. Pronunciation

UNIT 2

1. Trills (r)

The Arabic "r" is not made the same way as our English "r". In English we curl back our tongue and hold it there for the "r". In Arabic you make a trill with the tip of your tongue. You have undoubtedly heard this trilling sound, and have probably made it yourself. It is the sound many telephone operators use in saying "thur-ree" and that children often use to imitate the sound of motors. Sometimes the tip of the tongue makes one flap, often it makes two or three flaps in rapid succession. This sound is not at all difficult to learn, but it requires constant attention to remember always to make this "r" in Arabic instead of using the "r" you use in your English.

Here are some examples of Arabic "r":

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

ktfir	'much'	nrúuh	'we go'
sagáayer	'cigarettes'	léera	'pound'
dáraže	'step', 'class'	bíira	'beer'
rézz	'rice'	?rúuš	'piastres'

2. The glottal stop (?)

This sound occurs in both English and Arabic--in English it is a rare sound that occurs only in a few words or in saying certain sequences of words very carefully; in Arabic it is a full-fledged consonant that occurs in very many words. We have it in English for example in the expression of mild dismay "uh-oh!"--once before the "uh" and again before the "oh", so that if we write the sound with a ? we should write "?uh-?oh!" Or, as equivalent to "No, No! You mustn't do that", we sometimes say to a child "?ah-?ah" (ah = "a" in "cat"). We often use it in speaking carefully where one word ends with a vowel and the next one begins with a vowel, e.g. "Florida ?oranges", "India ?office" or in a phrase like "an ?ice man" as contrasted with "a nice man". In Arabic ? occurs at the beginning, middle or end of words, single and double.

Here are examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

?áakol	'I eat'	?rúuš	'piastres'
lá?	'no'	war?téen	'two tickets'
há?hon	'their value'	bet?úul	'you say'
met?áxxer	'delayed, late'	da?áaye?	'minutes'
?éža	'he came'	?otéel	'hotel'

The sound is called "glottal stop"--"stop" because the air is completely stopped (as with the stops t, d, k, g, b) and "glottal" because the closure takes place in the glottis.

3. Double Consonants

In English double consonants are not common. Often we write double consonants when we say single ones, e.g. "penny", "hammer", "bedding", etc. Here are some examples of real double consonants in English:

penknife (double "n") cf. penny (single "n")

ham-market (double "m") cf. hammer (single "m")

mid-day (double "d") cf. bedding (single "d")

Here are examples of Arabic double consonants.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

Arabic words	Meaning	Consonant	Similar English Examples
1. bēddak	'you want'	dd	bed-deck
ʔaddēes	'how much'		mid-day
biwāddi	'leads, takes'		
2. nestānna	'we wait'	nn	pen-knife
mēnnak	'from you'		thinness
šāanna	'our sake'		
3. lāmma	'when'	mm	lamb-meat
sētte	'six'	tt	coat-tails
ʔāwwal	'first'	ww	how well
ʔaṣṣāaʔ	'Qassaa'	ss	Miss Sand
4. hāʔʔi	'my right'		---
hāʔʔak	'your right'		
wāʔʔef	'stop'		
5. hāllaʔ	'now'		---
xallfina	'let us'		
yālli	'which'		

Section C. Analysis

Note 2.1 Masculine or feminine. You have learned two Arabic words for "this"; *háada* and *háyy*. Every noun in Arabic is either masculine or feminine, and the word "this" is *háada* when it refers to a masculine noun and *háyy* when it refers to a feminine noun. For example, *mátšam* 'restaurant' is masculine and "this" referring to *mátšam* is *háada*; *siigáara* 'cigarette' is feminine and "this" referring to *siigáara* is *háyy*. Most masculine nouns end in a consonant (e.g. *mátšam*, *xábz*, *ʔotéel*, *háal*); most feminine nouns end in -a or -e (e.g. *siigáara*, *máttá*, *láhme*, *kmáale*, *biira*).

The terms "masculine" and "feminine" are used because nouns denoting male beings are usually masculine and nouns denoting female beings are usually feminine. However, the fact that a noun is masculine has very little to do with the sex of the object it denotes. In English we may refer to a noun by using "he", "she", or "it"; in Arabic you must learn with each noun whether it is masculine or feminine so that you can use the right words in referring to it. For further details see Note 2.7.

Note 2.2 "The" As indicated in Note 1.5 the Arabic equivalent of "the" is either l- prefixed to a noun or the doubling of the first consonant of a noun. In the Basic Sentences of this Unit there are additional examples:

lbáas, *lxátt*, *lwáʔt*, *ttáani*.

If a noun begins with one of the following consonants, that consonant is doubled for "the":

t d s z l n r š ʕ

ṭ ḍ ṣ ḏ ḷ

Here are further examples:

<i>táani</i>	'second'	<i>ttáani</i>	'the second'
<i>táyyeḅ</i>	'good'	<i>ttáyyeḅ</i>	'the good'
<i>dáraʕe</i>	'step'	<i>ddáraʕe</i>	'the step'
<i>sámak</i>	'fish'	<i>ssámak</i>	'the fish'
<i>láhme</i>	'meat'	<i>lláhme</i>	'the meat'
<i>néss</i>	'half'	<i>nnéss</i>	'the half'
<i>rézz</i>	'rice'	<i>rrézz</i>	'the rice'
<i>šáayef</i>	'seeing'	<i>ššáayef</i>	'the seeing'

If a noun begins with some other consonant (b f m w y k g x ġ h ʔ), l- is prefixed for 'the'. Here are further examples:

báab	'door'	lbáab	'the door'
fawáaki	'fruit'	lfawáaki	'the fruit'
mátṣam	'restaurant'	lmátṣam	'the restaurant'
wáraʔa	'ticket'	lwáraʔa	'the ticket'
xábar	'piece of news'	lxábar	'the piece of news'
ġéer	'other'	lġéer	'the other'
háʔʔ	'right, value'	lháʔʔ	'the right, the value'
ʕárabi	'Arabic'	lʕárabi	'the Arabic'
ʔáhwe	'coffee'	lʔáhwe	'the coffee'

The word lmháṭṭa or ləmháṭṭa of Unit 1 is mháṭṭa 'station' + l- 'the'. Whenever a noun begins with TWO consonants (of which the first is not one of the consonants that double) 'the' is l- or lə-. Here are two more examples:

ʔrúuš	'piastres'	l(ə)ʔrúuš	'the piastres'
kmáale	'(return) change'	l(ə)kmáale	'the (return) change'

But notice, as in a word like ttramwaay 'the train', that if the first of the two consonants is one that is doubled when alone, it is doubled here too. Examples:

tláate	'three'	ttláate	'the three'
šwáyye	'little'	ššwáyye	'the little'

Note 2.3 "This". Study the following sentences taken from the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2:

- 1.26 háyy_siigáara . This is a cigarette.
- 1.25 šúu_háada ? What's this?
- 2.15 halxàṭṭ_lawéen_biwàddi ? Where does this line go?

Notice that of these three equivalents for English 'this' the first two (háada, háyy) occur independently, and the third (hal-) is always prefixed to a noun. Thus:

háyy binàaye_hámra .	This is a red building.
halbinàaye_hámra .	This building is red.
háada_rézz .	This is rice.
máa_bhèbb_harrèzz .	I don't like this rice.

Notice also that haada and hayy refer to masculine and feminine nouns respectively, but that hal- is used with either kind of noun (e.g. halxátt, hassigáara) The l- of hal- is the Arabic 'the' described in Note 2.2 and so is a doubling of the first consonant of the noun under the conditions described in Note 2.2.

Note 2.4 Pronoun endings. In Note 1.3 the endings -i, -ni, 'my, me' and -ak, -k 'your, you' were discussed. The following words taken from the Basic Sentences of this Unit show two more endings of this kind:

xallína	let <u>us</u>	bádkon	<u>your</u> (pl) wish
ʔatína	give <u>us</u>	waʔʔéflkon	stop for <u>you</u> (pl)
bédna	<u>our</u> wish		
waʔʔéflna	stop for <u>us</u>		
taaxédna	you take <u>us</u>		

The ending -na means 'our, us'; the ending -kon means 'your, you' when referring to more than one person. Here are more examples of all these endings:

bédði	my wish - I want	háʔʔi	my right
béddak	your wish - you want	háʔʔak	your right
bédna	our wish - we want	háʔna	our right
bádkon	your (pl) wish - you (pl) want	háʔkon	your (pl) right
ʔala_šmáli	on my left	ʔala_yamíini	on my right
ʔala_šmáalak	on your left	ʔala_yamíinak	on your right
ʔala_šmáalna	on our left	ʔala_yamíinna	on our right
ʔala_šmáalkon	on your (pl) left	ʔala_yamíinkon	on your (pl) right
ʔeddáami	in front of me	máʔi	with me
ʔeddáamak	in front of you	máʔak	with you
ʔeddáamna	in front of us	máʔna	with us
ʔeddáamkon	in front of you (pl)	máʔkon	with you (pl)
máʔi_háʔʔ	I'm right		
máʔak_háʔʔ	you're right		
máʔna_háʔʔ	we're right		
máʔkon_háʔʔ	you're (pl) right		

ʃándi at my place, in my possession
 ʃándak at your place, in your possession
 ʃánna at our place, in our possession
 ʃándkon at your(pl) place, in your(pl) possession

ʃatfini	give me	nšúufak	we see you
ʃatfina	give us	nšúufkon	we see you(pl)
taaxédni	you'll take me	déllak	I direct you
taaxédna	you'll take us	déلكon	I direct you(pl)
waʔʔéfli	stop for me	waʔʔéflak	I stop for you
waʔʔéflna	stop for us	waʔʔéflkon	I stop for you(pl)
délni	direct me		
délna	direct us		

Note that with nouns (bədd-, haʔʔ, šmaal, yamiin, ʔəddaam) and prepositions (ʃand, maʃ) the ending for 'my, me' is -i, but that with verbs (ʃati, déll, nšúuf, etc.) the ending is -ni. This is the only ending of this kind which has different forms for nouns and verbs; all the others, such as -ak, -na, -kon (and the others you will learn) are the same for both.

Note 2.5 Study the following verb forms which occurred in the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2:

nétlaʃ	we go up	térʒaʃ	you return	ʔénzel	I go down
nəstánna	we wait	taaxédna	you take us	ʔéšrab	I drink
nénzel	we go down			ʔáakol	I eat
nrúuh	we go			—wáʔʔef	I stop
nšúuf	we see			—rúuh	I go
nəbʔa	we stay			—kúun	may I be

In these forms prefixes correspond to English "I", "you", and "we". We will refer to forms of this kind as forms of the PREFIX TENSE. The prefix for "we" is nə- or n-, the prefix for "you" is tə- or t-, and the prefix for "I" is ʔə-, ʔ-, or nothing. The remainder of the word we will call the STEM. In general, the longer forms of the prefixes (nə-, tə-, ʔə-) are used when the verb begins with two or more consonants (-nzəl, -tlaʃ, etc.); otherwise the shorter forms (n-, t-, ʔ- or nothing). Here are the forms of the prefix tense of the verbs of Units 1 and 2:

"I"	"you"	"we"	meaning
ʔábʔa	tábʔa	nébʔa	remain, stay
ʔáhki	téhki	néhki	speak
ʔánzel	ténzel	nénzel	go down, get off
ʔéržaf	téržaf	néržaf	return, go back
ʔestánna	testánna	nestánna	wait
ʔéšrab	téšrab	néšrab	drink
ʔétlaf	tétlaf	nétlaf	go up, get on, go out
ʔáʔti	táʔti	náʔti	give
ʔúul	tʔúul	nʔúul	say, tell
dáll	ddáll *	ndáll	direct
həbb	təbb	nhəbb	like, love
kúun	tkúun	nkúun	be
rúun	trúun	nrúun	go
šúuf	tšúuf	nšúuf	see
wáʔʔef	twáʔʔef	nwáʔʔef	stop, stand
wáddi	twáddi	nwáddi	lead, take, send
xáll	txáll	nxáll	let, have leave
žiiib	džiiib	nžiiib	bring
ʔiid	tʔiid	nʔiid	repeat
ʔáakol	táakol	náakol	eat
ʔáaxod	táaxod	náaxod	take
ʔəsal	təsal	nəsal	arrive, ready

* Note that t- plus -dall is ddáll and t- plus -žiiib is džiiib which are easier to say than tdáll or tžiiib.

Note 2.6 the b- verb prefix. Study the following verb forms which have also occurred in the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2.

mnəsal	we arrive	bətnəbb	you like
mnáaxod	we take	btéhki	you speak
		btáaxod	you take

Sometimes b-, bə-, m-, or mə- is prefixed to the forms of the prefix tense described in Note 2.5. These are all alternants of the same prefix, which will be called the B- PREFIX. The longer forms (bə-, mə-) occur before a stem beginning with two consonants and the shorter forms (b-, m-) otherwise. The form m(ə)- occurs only before the n(ə)- "we" prefix; everywhere else b(ə)- appears. Note that when b(ə)- is added to a form beginning with the ʔ(ə)- prefix, the ʔ of the prefix drops out (e.g. ʔáakol, báakol). The following list gives the forms listed in Note 2.5 with the b- prefix added:

"I"	"you"	"we"
báb'a	btáb'a	mnéb'a
béñki	btéñki	mnéñki
bénzel	bténzel	mnénzel
béržaŋ	btéržaŋ	mnéržaŋ
béstánna	btéstánna	mnéstánna
béšrab	btéšrab	mnéšrab
bátlaŋ	btátlaŋ	mnátlaŋ
báŋti	btáŋti	mnáŋti
b'úul	bet'úul	mén'úul
bdéll	beddéll	méndéll
bñébb	betñébb	mennébb
bkúun	betkúun	menkúun
brúun	betrúun	menrúun
bšúuf	betšúuf	menšúuf
bwá'ef	betwá'ef	menwá'ef
bwáddi	betwáddi	menwáddi
bxálli	betxálli	menxálli
bžfiib	bedžfiib	menžfiib
bfiid	betfiid	menfiid
báakol	btáakol	mnéakol
báaxod	btáaxod	mnáaxod
béšal	btéšal	mnéšal

The following sentences, taken from the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2, give examples of the use of the forms of the prefix tense with and without the b- prefix.

2.2 xallina_nətlaŋ_fii .

2.5 xallina_nəstánna_ttramwáay_ttàani .

2.10 bədna_nénzel belmárže .

2.18 bədna_nrúun ŋalmárže .

2.35 nónna lananéb'a_hoon nawáali_saaŋtéen .

2.22 wá'ef lašéflak .

2.44 'éikon_ŋaliyyi klun_hoon 'ábl_bíášr_da'áaye' .

1.43 bəddi_'áakol .

1.10 btə̀ki_ʕārabī ?

2.11 lamma_mnə̀ʕal ʕatīina_xābar .

2.20 ʔaddēəʕ_btāaxod_mə̀nna ?

2.36 bəthəbb_tə̀rʕaʕ_tāaxədna_ssāʕa_sətte ?

2.38 ... mnāaxod_ǧeerak .

In these sentences the simple forms of the Prefix Tense without the b- prefix are DEPENDENT on a preceding word (e.g. bāddi, xallīna, bəthəbb) or are used with the prefixes la-, la a-. Thus the forms of the Prefix Tense are very often to be translated by "to" in English. Arabic says "you like you go" or "let me I stay" where English says "you like to go" or "let me stay".

On the other hand the form with the b- prefix in these sentences are INDEPENDENT. For example "we go" or "we'll go" by itself is mənruu, but "we go" in combinations like "we want we go" or "let us we go" is nrūu.

Here are further examples of forms of the Prefix Tense with or without the b-prefix. Go over them until you are not only sure of the meaning of the Arabic and understand it but can also give the Arabic sentences for the English without hesitation:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ʔaddēəʕ_bədna_nəstānna ? | How long shall we wait? |
| 2. baʕtīikon ʕāʕr_leerāat . | I'll give you(pl) ten pounds. |
| 3. wēen_bəddak_tənzəl ? | Where do you want to get off? |
| 4. mənkuun_ʕāndkon ssāʕa_wāande_unəʕʕ . | We'll be at your place at one thirty. |
| 5. bəddak_trūu_māʕi ? | Do you want to go with me? |
| 6. bəddak_təʕal_ʔābli ? | Do you want to get there ahead of me? |
| 7. māa_fii_māʕna kmāalet_xāms_leerāat . | We don't have change for five pounds. |
| 8. bəʕlaʕ ʔābl_bʕāʕr_daʔāyeʔ . | I'll go up ten minutes ahead of time. |
| 9. rananəhki_ʕārabī . | We'll speak Arabic. |
| 10. bədna_nəʕʕaʕ ssāʕa_təʕʕa . | We want to come back at nine o'clock. |
| 11. māa_fii_tāksi nrūu_fii ? | Isn't there a taxi we can go in? |
| 12. bəthəbb_tə̀rʕaʕ_tāakol_māʕna ? | Would you like to come back and eat with us? |

13. béržaf_māʕkon . I'll go back with you.
14. xallīina_nšūufak . Let us see you.
15. baʕʕīk_māʕʕon . I'll give you the money to pay for the
16. šūu_bəddak_tāakol ? What do you want to eat?
17. ʔīza_tʔaxxārt_ʕan_lxāmse bāaxod_
gēerak . If you're later than five I'll take
someone else.
18. ʕaʕīina_xābar ssāafa_sētte . Notify us at six o'clock.
19. ssāafa_ʔaddēēš_btāržaf_taxxēdni ? What time will you come back and pick
me up?
20. mənwāʔʔef ʕāla_ʔāwwal_bāab ʕāla_
yamiinna . We'll stop at the first door on our
left. right

Note 2.7 In Note 1.6 noun forms like léera, leertéen, leeráat were discussed. There are many nouns of this type in Arabic. They will be called FEMININE T-NOUNS. By itself such a noun ends in -e or -a but when a suffix is added or when the noun is in close connection with a following noun the -e or -a appears as -(e)t. The plural usually ends in -aat. Here are further examples:

singular

sāafa	sāaʕti	saaʕtéen	saaʕáat	hour, clock, watch
bināaye	bināayti	binaaytéen	binaayáat	building
dāraže	dāržti	daržtéen	daražáat	step, class
háaže	háažti	haažtéen	haažáat	need, thing

As you know some Feminine T-nouns have other plurals (e.g. siigāara - sagāayer). Here are examples

daʔīʔa	daʔīʔti	daʔīʔtéen	daʔāayeʔ	minute
siigāara	siigāarti	siigaartéen	sagāayer(or siigaaraat)	cigarette
wāraʔa	wārʔti	warʔtéen	waraʔáat (or urāaʔ)	leaf, paper, ticket

In the Vocabularies of this and following Units a Feminine T- Noun will be marked ft; if the plural, or any other form, is at all irregular the noun will be marked ft* and the irregular forms will usually be given. Most feminine nouns are Feminine T- Nouns. If a noun is feminine but it is not a Feminine T- Noun it will be marked f. If it behaves like a Feminine T- Noun but it is masculine it will be marked mt or mt*. All other nouns are masculine and will be left unmarked. Here are further examples of the use of Feminine T- Nouns. Go over the sentences and their English equivalents very carefully and make sure you understand the Arabic and can give it without hesitation when asked the English.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. xallfina_nestâna da'ii'téen . | Let's wait a couple of minutes. |
| 2. betxallfina_?âaxod_wâra'a ? | Will you let me take a ticket? |
| 3. tfâddal háyy_xâms_urâa' . | Here are five tickets. |
| 4. btêṭlaṭ_ṭâṣr_daraṣâat ṭâla_yamīnak,
udarṣtēen_ṭâla_ṣmâlak, btâṣal_laṭândo . | You go up ten steps on the right
and two steps on the left and you're
at his place. |
| 5. ṭândkon_binaayâat_bel'âṣṣâaṭ ?
--ṭâna binaaytēen . | Do you have any buildings at the Qass:
We have two buildings. |
| 6. wēen_sâaṭet_xâaled ? | Where's Khaled's watch? |
| 7. mâa_mâṭi sagâayer . | I don't have any cigarettes. |
| 8. ṭâṭfina_siigâara men_siigaarâatak . | Give me one of your cigarettes. |
| 9. mâa_bṣâbb_?âḥwet_xâaled 'ana . | I don't like Khaled's coffee. |
| 10. māṭak_kebrīit_yâa_bēek ? | Do you have matches, sir? |

Section D. Exercises

1. Transformation sentences. Read each of the following sentences, be sure you understand it, then repeat it changing all the "I" forms to "we" forms.

Sample: beddi_rûu(ḥ)_ṭal'otēel .

changed to: bedna_nrûu(ḥ)_ṭal'otēel .

1. bēnki_ṭârabī mīlīḥ .
2. bēddi_?êrṣâṭ ssâaṭa_xâmse .
3. baṭṭīk_leertēen .
4. mâa_bēddi_?êṭlaṭ hâlla' ?
5. bēddi_?ânzel_hōon .
6. mâa_bṣâbb_lfawâakī .
7. bkūun_hnīk 'âbl_bsâaṭa .
8. bēddi_dēll 'âmmad_ṭal'otēel .

9. bšúufak ssáafa_xámse belmárže .
10. béržaf báaxdak máfi .
11. bnébb_ʔáakol belmátfam .
12. lámma_bésal faṭfīni_xábar .
13. ranawaʔʔéflak_ʔeddām_lbāab .
14. bēbʔa_hōon saafteen .
15. beddi_xállī ʔānmad_ʔāndī .
16. bestānna_ʔānmad belmāṭṭa .
17. ranažfib_lurāaʔ belʔāwwal .
18. ʔāna_bʔūul láʔ .
19. béržaf bšúufak .
20. báaxod_lbāss_falmárže .

2. "This." Use each of the following words three times (a) This is (a) _____, (b) This is the _____, (c) This _____ is yours (ʔéflak). Don't forget to use the feminine hayy when the word is feminine.

Sample: baab

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| (a) hāada_bāab . | This is a door. |
| (b) hāada_lbaab . | This is the door. |
| (c) halbāab_ʔéflak . | This door is yours. |

1. rézz
2. siigáara
3. bāas
4. bināaye
5. ʔotéel
6. sáafa
7. táksi
8. sāmāk
9. wāraʔa
10. xébz

3. Numbers. Give the Arabic equivalents of the following:

1. three hours
2. five minutes
3. six cigarettes
4. first class
5. four tickets
6. one o'clock
7. two clocks
8. nine piastres
9. one coffee
10. seven buildings
11. two steps
12. one pound
13. two pounds
14. second class
15. one hour
16. ten cigarettes
17. two minutes
18. one minute
19. the first door
20. two tickets

4. Questions and Answers. Follow the same procedure as in the questions and answers exercise of Unit 1.

1. Šúu_bèddak_tàakol ?
2. fii_síinama_hòon ?
3. bèddak_tšúufni ?
4. 'addéeš_ssàa'a ?
5. má'ak_kmàalet_šàšr_leeràat ?
6. wéen_bèddak_tènzal ?
7. šlóonak_yaa_'àgmad ?
8. bèddak_téržaf_taxàdna ?
9. 'addéeš_btàaxod_mènna ?
10. Šúu_fii_šandak_šèer_ssàmak ?
11. fèen_lmàtta ?
12. xàmse_wetnéen Šúu_byà'mlu ?

13. lawéen_bèddak_trùuh ?
14. b'addées_haddool ?
15. wéen_bèddak_testàanna ?
16. kiif_hàalak ?
17. halxàtt_lawéen_biwàddi ?
18. 'addées_hà'?'on ?
19. šúu_btàaxod_màšak ?
20. bəthəbb_tàakol_màši ?

5. Substitution sentences. Repeat each of the following sentences aloud, then say it again substituting for the -i ending meaning 'my' or 'me' (a) -ak 'your, you' (h) -ha 'our, us' (o) kon 'your, you (pl)'. Practice saying all these sentences over and over until they all sound natural.

Sample:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| (a) ssiinama_?addāamak . | The theater is in front of you. |
| (b) ssiinama_?addāamna . | The theater is in front of us. |
| (c) ssiinama_?addāamkon . | The theater is in front of you (pl). |
| 1. mātšami mnīia_ktiir . | My restaurant is very good. |
| 2. maa_?əža_gēeri . | No one came but me. |
| 3. wéen_siigaarāati ? | Where are my cigarettes? |
| 4. 'āhmad 'əža māši . | Ahmad came with me. |
| 5. šāndi_xāms_leerāat . | I have five pounds. |
| 6. lemhaṭṭa_šala_šmāali . | The station is on my right. <i>left</i> |
| 7. 'otēeli 'addāam_ssiinama . | My hotel is in front of the movie theater. |
| 8. fiilāfte šala_yamiini . | There's a turn on my right. |

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Jones and Hassan meet on the street.

Jones marnaba hassan_béek .

Hassan marnabtéen yaa_mèster_xóons . nšáalla_mabšut ?

J. mníin_lhámdella u?ènte_šlóonak ?

H. lhámdella, ?ána mabšut_fiik, wéen_bèddak_truh ?

J. rúuh_máfi lanénzel_?almárže .

H. táyyeb xallíina_náaxod_lbàas .

J. féen_mnestánna_lbàas ?

H. ?alyamíin_hniik .

J. šuu_byéžhar_lbàas ktiir_mašžu? !!

S. fii_xàtt_traamwáay ?almárže_kamāan .

J. lēeko ?šža_wāahed .

H. táyyeb rúuh_lanətlaf_fii, tfáddal ?eddāami .

J. ?addées_mən_hōon_?almárže ?

H. fii_dāraže_?uula bšášara ufii_dāraže_tāanye bsábfa .

J. mníin, mnāaxod_war?téen_dāraže_?uula .

H. táyyeb mníin .

J. šuu_byéžhar_rananəsal .

H. tfáddal ?eddāami .

Conversation 2. Jones and Ahmad decide what to do.

Jones uhálla? lawéen_mərruh ?

Ahmad ?al?aššáaf, ?ána_beddi_štuuf_wāahed_hniik .

J. xallíina_rruh_?al?áhwe_bel?āwwal .

J. bèddi_?šrab_šwāyyet_bíira .

- A. uʔana_báaxod_ʔáhwe .
 W. ʔáhlán_wasáhlán, tʔáddalu .
 A. márhaba, bálla_ʔéblna wáaned_ʔáhwe uwáaned_bíira .
 W. hóon máa_mnáʔti_bíira .
 J. táyyeb, ʔébli_ʔáhwe ʔána_kamáan .

Conversation 3. A little later.

- J. uhálláʔ kiif_merrúuH_ʔalʔaʃʃáaʔ ?
 A. fii_lbáaʃ wettraa mwáay wettáksi .
 J. mnáaxod_táksi .
 A. táksi ... táksi ...

Taxi driver ʔámr_yaa_bèek ?

- A. bédna_nrúuH_ʔalʔaʃʃáaʔ ʃúu_btáaxod_ménna ?
 TD. tlét_leeráat .
 A. háada_ktiir, mlu_héek ?
 TD. láʔ. ʔábadan_mlu_ktiir_yaa_bèek .
 A. láʔ_ktiir, leertéen_kfáaye .
 TD. men_ʃáankon báaxod leertéen_unèʃʃ .
 A. táyyeb tʔáddal_yaa_mèster_ʔòons .
 TD. wéen_bethébbu_waʔʔéflkon ?
 A. rúu_déǵri latʃúuf_lbínáaye_lháamra .
 TD. háyy_lbínáaye .
 A. hniik_ʔaʃʃmáal fii_láfte, lífèet_fiiha .
 TD. hóon ?
 A. waʔʔéflna ʔala_ʔáwwal_báab ʔala_yamíinak .
 TD. ʔámrak, bethébbu_ʔérʒaʔ_ʔaaxèdkon ?

A. šúu_betʔúul_yaa_məster ʔəons ?

J. ʔiza_btərʔaʔ_bəʔd_səaʔa bikúun_mniin .

TD. ʔala_ʔeeni .

A. máʔak_kməalet_ʔəʔr_leerəat ?

TD. wəʔʔef_laʔúuf, máʔi, tʔəddal .

Conversation 4. In the Assaa.

A. byəzhar_xaliil múu_hoon !

J. šúu_mnəʔmel_hallaʔ ?

A. xalliina_nrúun_nəakol .

J. wéen_fii_məʔʔam_mniin_hoon ?

A. šəayef_halbinəaye_lhəamra ?

J. nəʔam .

A. warəaha .

J. rúun_lanrúun .

A. šúu_hàada !! lməʔʔam_məʔʔúuʔ_ktiir !!

J. máa_fii_gəer_məʔʔam_hoon ?

A. fii, háyy_wəaned_təani .

J. ʔiza_mniin mnəakol_fii .

A. təyyeb .

Waiter ʔəhlan_wasəhlan . ʔəmr !!

A. šúu_fii_ʔəndak_šii_mniin_təʔʔina ?

W. ʔəanna_ləhm urəzz ubəʔəəʔa usəmak .

A. ʔəna_bəddi_ləhmə_məʔ_ləʔəəʔa .

W. uʔənte_yaa_bəek šúu_bəəblak ?

J. ʔəbli_wəaned_biiira ubəʔdəen_bəʔúuf_šúu_bəddi_ʔəakol .

- W. ʔala_ʔeeni .
- A. llahme_mniina_ktiir_yaa_màster_žòons .
- J. táyyeβ žèbli_ʔàna_ttàani_lahme_ubatàata .
- W. šuu_bèdkon_fawāaki ?
- A. bàʔd_šwáyye menšúuf_šuu_bèdna .
- J. žèbli_ʔàhwe_maʔ_šwáyyet_máy .
- A. ʔaddées_byètlaʔ_ʔalèena ?
- W. ʔárbaʔ_leeràat unéss .
- A. háyy_xámse welkmáale_ʔèlak .
- W. mannúun .
- A. xáatrak .
- W. maʔ_ssalaame .

Section F. Free Conversation

The following conversation outlines are just suggestions; converse as freely as you can with what you know. It is important to remember, however, that it is much better at this stage of learning to be able to converse very fluently on just a few things than to converse very hesitantly on a larger range of topics. So don't be afraid to use the Basic Sentences in your conversation just as they are - the more of them you can work into your conversation the more fluent you will be, and the better prepared you will be to go on and learn more Arabic in succeeding units.

Conversation 1. Jones takes a taxi.

Jones hails a taxi.

The driver asks Jones to get in.

Jones says he is going to the Marjé and asks how much the driver wants.

They agree on a price.

When they reach the Marjé, Jones points out a turn on the right in back of a movie theater and tells the driver to turn in there.

The driver asks where to stop.

Jones tells him the first door on the left.

They stop and Jones pays the driver, getting change for 5 pounds.

They say goodbye.

Conversation 2. Jones and Ahmad get on a train.

Jones says he wants to go to the Qassaa. And asks where this line goes.
 Ahmad tells him this line goes to the Assaa and says he's going there too.
 Jones says, "Here comes a train!"
 Ahmad says it's crowded and he wants to wait for the next train.
 While waiting Jones says he would like to take a bus.
 Ahmad says there is no bus here.
 They get on the train and Jones asks about the fare.
 The conductor tells him the first and second class prices.
 Jones and Ahmad each get a first class ticket.
 Jones asks Ahmad to tell him when they reach the Assaa.
 Ahmad tells him, Jones thanks him, and they exchange goodbyes.

Section G. Vocabulary

-aaxod	take	báab	door, gate
taaxádna	you take us	báas or báss (pl baasáat or baasáat)	bus
ʔábadan	never, ever, at all	bállá	please, if you don't mind
ʔábl	before	béek	bey, gentleman (title of respect)
ʔámr	order, command, yes sir	bináaye (ft)	building
ʔána	I	dáraže (ft)	step, class
ʔaššáaʔ	Qassaa or Assaa (place name)	daʔiiʔa (ft pl daʔáayeʔ)	minute
ʔáwwal (f ʔúula)	first	-ašal	arrive (la- at a place)
ʔel-	to, for, belonging to	fii	there is, there a in it
ʔáلكon	to you, yours	fiiha	in it (fem)
ʔáža or ʔáža	he came	ǧéer	other, else, except
ʔíza	if	hállaʔ	now
ʔrúuš	piastres	háʔʔ	price, value, right
ʔúula	see ʔawwal		
-bʔa	stay		

námra (f)	red	néss	half
nawáali	around, about	-nzal	go down, get off
-nébb	like, love	raha-	going to
kamáan	also, too, still	-ruuh	go, leave
kfáaye (ft)	enough	-ržaf	go back, return
kmáale (ft)	change, rest	šáayef (adj)	seeing, having se
-kon	you (pl) your (pl)	šáan	sake
-kuun	be	men_šáan	for the sake of for
-l-	to, for (suffix on verbs)	-stanna	wait
-li	for me	šéflak	I'll see (for you
-lak	for you	šii	somewhat, thing, at all
-lna	for us	t'axxárt	I'm late, you're late
-lkon	for you (pl)		
lámma	when	táni (f táanye)	second, other, ne
la-	to, until, so that	táksi	taxi
láfte (ft)	a turn	tfáddal (pl tfáddalu)	please (offering service
léek	behold, here (is, come)	tramwáay (pl tramwaayáat)	tram
lféet	turn (command)	-tlať	go up, get on, go out, amount to, become
lmárže	Marjeh (square in Damascus)		
mat'áxxer (adj)	delayed, late	-wa'ʔef	stop, stand
mén	from	-waddi	lead, take, send
mafžúu' (adj)	crowded	wáraʔa (ft pl waraʔaat or uráaʔ)	leaf, piece of paper, ticket
néma	we	waráaha	in back of it (feminine)

xábar	news, piece of information
-xallí	let, leave
xátt	line, handwriting
yaa_	oh (used in address)
yéma	or
-zhar	seem, appear
fan	from, than, about
féen (f)	eye
fala_féeni	yes, indeed! and how!

PART ONE

UNIT 3

MEETING PEOPLE

Section A. Basic Sentences

evening	mása
good	xéer
1. Good evening.	masa_lxeer .
2. Good evening (reply).	masa_lxeeráat .
hundred	miyye
3. Good evening (reply).	miit_masa .
health	šáħħa
4. How are you? (How's your health?)	kiif_šantak ?
5. Fine, thank you.	bxeer_lħamdu_ləllaa .
Khaled	xáaled
I like	bħébb
I introduce you	šárfak
6. Khaled, I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Smith.	yaa_xaaled 'bħébb_šárfak šala_mester_smis .
7. Glad to meet you. (We're honored.)	tšarrafná .
8. (Reply)	stáğfiru_lláa .
America	'améerka
9. Mr. Smith is from America.	mester_smis mən_'ameerka .
coming	žáaye
so that he'll visit	layzúur
our country	bláadna
10. He's here to visit our country.	žáaye layzuur_blaadna .
11. Welcome.	'ahla_wsahla fiik .
how many	kám
day	yoom

Syria

suuriyya

12. How many days are you going to stay in Syria?

kam yoom lahatēb'a bisuuriyya ?

sorrow

ʔāsaf

necessary

lāazem

I leave

ʔetrek or ʔetrok

13. Unfortunately I have to leave in ten days.

maf_lʔasaf laazem_ʔetrok bafid_ʔašr_tiyyaam .

it became for you

šārlak

Damascus

ššāam

14. How long have you been in Damascus?

ʔaddēš_šārlak_bēššāam ?

week

žēmfa

15. I've been here a week and a half.

šarli žēmfa_wnešš .

which

ʔānu

ship

baaboor

you came

ʔžiiit

your presence

ḥādrtak

16. What ship did you come on, sir?

ʔala_ʔanu_baaboor ʔžiiit_ḥādrtak ?

17. I came on the Khedive Ismail.

ʔžiiit ʔalxdeewi_smafiil .

trip

sāfra

18. How was your trip?

šloon_kaanet_safrtak ?

19. Fine, thank you.

mniiha lḥamdella .

state

wilāaye

20. What state are you from?

mən_ʔanu_wilāaye ḥādrtak ?

21. From California.

mən_kalifóornya .

my brother

ʔāxi

do you know him

btáʔrfo

22. My brother's in California, do you know him?

?axi_bkalifoornya, btafrfo ?

city

bálad

present

mawžúud

your brother

?axúuk

23. What city's your brother in?

b?anu_balad mawžúud, ?axuuk ?

24. In San Francisco.

bsáan_fraansiisko .

he works

byeštéḡel

25. What work does your brother do?

šuu_byeštéḡel, ?axuuk ?

I think

bžénn

that he

?énno

business man

táažer

26. I think he's in business.

bžennellak ?énno_taažer .

name

?ésm

27. What's his name?

šuu_?esmo ?

28. His name is Ameen.

?esmo ?amín

he

húwwe

cloth

?maaš

29. I think I know him. Is he a cloth dealer?

bženn bafrfo, huwwe taažer, ?maaš ?

you know for me

btafréflí

about him

fánno

30. Yes. What can you tell me about him? ("What do you know about him for me?")

?ee_nafam . šuu_btafrefli_fanno ?

man

režžáal

state

háale

31. He's a good man and he's well off.

huwwe_režžaal_tayyeb unaalto_mniina .

family

féele

32. Do you know his family?

btaʃref_ʃeelto ?

33. I know them all.

baʃrefhon kəlhon .

excuse me or please or beg your
pardon

daxlak

children

uláad

34. And how are his children?

daxlak kiif_ulaado ?

fine

ʃaal

35. Pretty good.

ʃii ʃaal .

son

ʔében

large, old

kbíir

36. What work does his oldest son do?

ʃuu_byəʃtəʒel ʔəbno_ləkbiir ?

carpenter

nažžáar

still

báʃd or léssa

student

təlmíiz

37. He's a carpenter and his other
son's still a student.

nažžáar . uʔəbno ttaani baʃdo_
təlmíiz . or lessaa_təlmíiz .

age

ʃémər

it became

sáar

38. How old have they gotten to be?

ʔaddeəʃ_saar_ʃemrhon ?

twenty

ʃəʃriin

year

séne

small, young

zǵíir

39. The old one is twenty years old
and the young one eighteen.

ləkbiir_ʃəro ʃəʃriin_sene
wəzzǵíir_tməntəʃ .

they help

bisáaʃdu or biʃáawnu

their father

ʔabúuhon

they are

bikúunu

empty or free

fáadi

40. Do they help their father when they can?
 everything
 they
 bisaafdu ?abuuhon_šii lamma_bikuunu_faadyiin ?
 kélši
 henne or hennen
41. Yes, they help him in everything.
 may he spare for him
 them
 ?ee_nafam . henne bisaafduu bkelši .
 ixalliilo
 yáahon
42. God spare them.
 may he keep you
 ?alla ixalliilo_yaahon .
 yənfazak
43. God keep you.
 it happened to us
 honor
 acquaintance
 ?alla_yənfazak .
 neşelna
 šáraf
 máfrife or máfrife
44. Very glad to have met you.
 (We were honored by your acquaintance.)
 neşelna ššaraf bmafrəftak . or
 şarlina ššaraf bmafrəftak .
45. The honor is ours.
 honor us
 house
 ššaraf_?elna .
 šarfúuna
 béet
46. Please come to see us.
 tfaddalu_šarfúuna_falbeet .
47. We'd be delighted. (The honor will happen to us.)
 may you reach morning
 byənsalna_ššaraf .
 téşbnu
48. Good night.
 teşbnu_fala xeer .
49. Good night (reply).
 u?əntu_bxeer .

Section B. Pronunciation

1. Pharyngeal spirants (ح, ع)

The two consonant sounds represented in our spelling by ح and ع are among the most characteristic sounds of Arabic. When you are listening to people speaking a foreign language and you hear these sounds, you can be practically certain the language they are speaking is Arabic. Both sounds occur with great frequency in the language, and you must pronounce these sounds well if you want to speak Arabic so that you will be understood.

The ح is like a very strong "h"; it sounds like a sigh uttered with great force, or, even better like the sound of a panting dog. Don't be afraid of the amount of energy and air it takes to say ح; it just does, and you cannot pronounce it acceptably without using a lot more energy and air than you use for an English "h". It differs from our "h" also in that the muscles of the top part of the throat (the "pharynx") are tightened. If you put your fingers lightly on your throat while saying ح properly, you can feel this tightness of the muscles.

Here are some examples of Arabic ح:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

حَال	'state, condition'
حَقٌّ	'right, value'
أُحِبُّ	'I go'
حَامِلَةٌ	'red (feminine)'
لَحْمٌ	'meat'
لِإِثْمِ اللَّهِ	'praise to God'

The Arabic sound represented in our spelling by ع is similar to the ح sound in that the pharyngeal muscles are tightened. The ع sound takes considerable effort to master, but careful imitation and intensive practice will make it second nature for you. The first trouble for an English speaker learning the ع is hearing and recognizing it. Often an English speaker does not hear a consonant at all in a word like عَاشِرًا or بَاعِثًا. Have your Guide say the example in the Pronunciation Practice again and again until you hear and recognize the ع in every word. Remember that it is not a vowel like our "ah", and it is not an accidental growl that got into the word; it is a full-fledged and very common consonant of Spoken Arabic.

The sound is made by tightening the muscles of the pharynx; the sound of retching you make before vomiting is also made by tightening the pharyngeal muscles. The two sounds are therefore very similar, and you can try to make a sort of retching noise as a first approximation to the ʕ. Another way to learn to produce this sound is to sing the lowest note you can then try to sing two tones lower; the resulting growl is very much the same as the ʕ sound. The best way to learn it, however, is to listen carefully until you hear and recognize it instantly in words, and then imitate as carefully as you can, trying to sound exactly like the Guide or the voice on the records.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

ʕiid	'repeat'	náʕam	'yes'
ʕándak	'with you'	máʕam	'restaurant'
ʕárabi	'Arabic'	maʕrúuf	'favor'
ʕášara	'ten'	sáaʕa	'hour, watch'
ʕaʕini	'give me'	báʕref	'I know'

Both these sounds are called "pharyngeal spirants"---"spirant" because the air passage is narrowed but not stopped, "pharyngeal" because the narrowing is in the pharynx.

2. Three-consonant sequences and the "helping vowel".

In English we often have three, or even four or five, consonants in a row in a single word, e.g. desks, artful, sharkskin. In Arabic there are often two consonants in a row, e.g. nanzel, bédna, máhlak, but rarely three and practically never more than three. Whenever three consonants come together in an Arabic word, Arabic speakers tend to put in a very short "helping vowel" between the first and second consonants. Sometimes this vowel is very clear, sometimes you can hardly hear it. In the following examples the position of the helping vowel is shown by ^ə, but this will not be done elsewhere in the Units.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

ʕal ^ə ma ^ə ʕáʕta	'to the station'
btáʕ ^ə rfo	'you know him'
ma ^ə d ^ə rtak	'you (polite)'
táʕ ^ə bhu	'you (pl) reach morning'

An English word may begin with a vowel or with one, two, or three or more consonants (e.g. apt, rapt, trapped, strapped). Arabic words very rarely begin with vowels (never with a); they usually begin with a single consonant, sometimes with two consonants, rarely with three, and never with more than three (e.g. ulaad, raah, rtaah, straah). When an Arabic word begins with two consonants or the preceding word ends with a consonant, this same helping vowel is usually heard. Examples:

THREE

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ~~TABLE~~ (Cont'd.)

ʔaddéesʔssàʔa ?	What time is it?
bèddakʔtláate ?	Do you want three?
maʔssaláame .	Goodbye
mniixʔktiir .	Very good.

Section C. Analysis

Note 3.1 Prefix Tense. In Unit 2 you learned three of the prefixes of the Prefix Tense. You meet another one in this Unit. Here are examples of "he" forms which have appeared in the Basic Sentences of Units 2 and 3.

2.3 byézhār	it appears
2.12 biwáddi	it leads
3.10 layzúur	in order that he visit
3.25 byəštáḡel	he works
3.42 ixallíilo	he keeps for him
3.43 yəhfazak	he keeps you

The prefix for "he" is yə- or i-, just as the prefix for "you" is tə- or t- and for "we" is nə- or n-. The longer form yə- appears whenever the stem begins with two consonants (e.g. yénzel, byézhār) and the shorter form i- appears when the stem begins with a single consonant (e.g. biwáddi, irúuh).

Notice that the shorter form of the prefix is y- instead of i- when preceded by a vowel, e.g. the prefix la- (layzúur, layšúuf) and when the stem begins with a vowel (e.g. yáakol, yəsal).

The b- prefix is added to this ye (i-) form just as to the other forms of the prefix tense. Here are the forms for most of the verbs you have learned in Units 1, 2, and 3. For convenience of reference, the number of the Unit (1, 2, or 3) in which the verb first appears is given in parentheses after the verb:

yásmel	byásmel	(1)	make, do
yáfref	byáfref	(3)	know
yáfti	byáfti	(1)	give
yéb'a	byéb'a	(2)	stay
yénfaz	byénfaz	(3)	keep, preserve
yénki	byénki	(1)	speak
yélfet	byélfet	(2)	turn
yénzel	byénzel	(2)	go down, get off
yéržaf	byéržaf	(2)	go back, return
yestánna	byestánna	(2)	wait for
yəsben	byəsben	(3)	reach morning
yəštəgel	byəštəgel	(3)	work
yətlaŋ	byətlaŋ	(2)	go up, get on, get out
yəzhar	byəzhar	(2)	seem, appear
yáakol	byáakol	(1)	eat
yáaxod	byáaxod	(2)	take
yəsal	byəsal	(2)	arrive
iʔul	biʔul	(1)	say, tell
idəll	bidəll	(1)	direct
inəbb	binəbb	(2)	like, love
ikúun	bikúun	(2)	be

irúun	birúun	(1)	go
isáafed	bisáafed	(3)	help
išáarref	bišáarref	(3)	honor
išúuf	bišúuf	(2)	see
iwáaddi	biwáaddi	(2)	take, lead
iwáʔʔef	biwáʔʔef	(2)	stop
ixállì	bixállì	(2)	let, leave, keep
izúur	bizúur	(3)	visit
izénn	bizénn	(3)	think
ižíib	bižíib	(1)	bring
išáarref	bišáarref	(3)	introduce, cause to know
išfid	bifid	(1)	repeat

Note 3.2 Plural -u The following forms of the Prefix Tense have appeared in Basic Sentences;

bikúunu	they will be	bisáafdu	they help
byáamlu	they make	təsbu	you (pl) reach morning

The "they" form of the Prefix Tense consists of the "he" form plus the plural ending -u;

byətlaʃ	he goes up	byətlaʃu	they go up
birúun	he goes	birúunu	they go
bižíib	he brings	bižíibu	they bring

This plural ending is also added to forms having the t(ə)- prefix:

btéržaʃ	you (sg) go back	btéržaʃu	you (pl) go back
betšúuf	you (sg) see	betšúufu	you (pl) see
betnébb	you (sg) like	betnébbu	you (pl) like

Here are additional examples:

byénfaz	he keeps	byénfaz <u>u</u>	they keep
bténfaz	you (<u>sg</u>) keep	bténfaz <u>u</u>	you (<u>pl</u>) keep
byénzel	he goes down	byénzlu	they go down
bténzel	you (<u>sg</u>) go down	bténzlu	you (<u>pl</u>) go down
byaakol	he eats	byáaklu	they eat
btáakol	you (<u>sg</u>) eat	btáaklu	you (<u>pl</u>) eat
bíʔúul	he says	biʔúulu	they say
betʔúul	you (<u>sg</u>) say	betʔúulu	you (<u>pl</u>) say

The characteristic vowel, which usually appears before the last consonant of the stem in the Prefix Tense, is called the STEM VOWEL. Notice that when the stem vowel is -a- (e.g. byétlaf) the -a- remains when the -u is added. When the stem vowel is -e- or -o- (e.g. byénzel, byáakol) it is dropped when the -u is added (byénzlu, byáaklu). Here are the "you (pl)" and "they" forms of most of the verbs you have learned:

(1) Stem vowel -a- (which remains):

ténfaz <u>u</u>	yénfaz <u>u</u>	keep
téržaf <u>u</u>	yéržaf <u>u</u>	return
těšrab <u>u</u>	yěšrab <u>u</u>	drink
tětla <u>f</u> u	yětla <u>f</u> u	go up
tězhar <u>u</u>	yězhar <u>u</u>	appear, seem
těšal <u>u</u>	yěšal <u>u</u>	arrive

(2) Stem vowel -e- (which is dropped)

táŋml <u>u</u>	yáŋml <u>u</u>	do
táŋrf <u>u</u>	yáŋrf <u>u</u>	know

tálftu	yálfu	turn
tánzlu	yánzlu	go down
teštéglu	yeštéglu	work
təsbu	yəsbu	reach morning
tətrku	yətrku	leave
tsáafdu	isáafdu	help
tšárfu	isárfu	honor
twá'fu	iwá'fu	stop
tíáawnu	ííáawnu	help
tíárfu	ííárfu	introduce

(3) Stem vowel -o- (which is dropped)

táaklu	yáaklu	eat
táaxdu	yáaxdu	take
tətrku	yətrku	leave

(4) Other verbs:

tʔúulu	íʔúulu	say
ddéllu	idéllu	direct
tnébbu	inébbu	love
tkúunu	ikúunu	be
trúunu	irúunu	go
tšúufu	íšúufu	see
dzúuru	izúuru	visit
džíibu	ížíibu	bring

Note 3.3 Pronoun endings. In Units 1 and 2 you learned the endings -i, -ni, -ak, -k; -na; -kon. In this Unit you meet two more such endings. Study the following examples which have appeared in Basic Sentences:

btáŕfo	do you know <u>him</u>
ʔésmo	<u>his</u> name
ʔánno	about <u>him</u>
uláado	<u>his</u> children
ʔébno	<u>his</u> son
báŕdo	<u>he</u> still
ʔémro	<u>his</u> age
ixallíilo	may he keep for <u>him</u>
ʔéelto	<u>his</u> family
kélhon	all of <u>them</u>
baŕréfhon	I know <u>them</u>
ʔémrhon	<u>their</u> age
ʔabúuhon	<u>their</u> father

The endings -o "his, him" and -hon "their, them" are used in the same way as the other suffixes of this kind you have learned.

Note 3.4 Alternants of the pronoun endings. Certain of the suffixes -i, -ak, etc., have alternant forms which are used under certain conditions. For example, the "you" suffix, as you know, has two forms: -ak, and -k. Study the following examples to see when each form is used:

háal	:	háalak	mása	:	masáak
bšúuf	:	bšúufak	ixállí	:	ixallíik
báŕref	:	báŕrfak	báŕti	:	baŕtiik

When a word ends in a consonant (háal, bšúuf, báŕref) the -ak form of the "you" suffix is used (háalak, bšúufak, báŕrfak). When the word ends in a vowel (mása, ixállí, báŕti) the vowel is doubled and the -k form of the suffix is

used (masáak, ixallíik, baftíik). Other suffixes have alternant forms; be on the lookout for them and try to figure out the conditions under which the various alternants are used.

The words ʔax 'brother' and ʔab 'father' have a special stem ʔaxu, ʔabu which is used when the word is followed by a pronoun ending or another noun, e.g. ʔixúuk 'your brother' ʔábu ʔáǧmad 'Ahmad's father'. The ending -i 'my' however is added to the shorter stem: ʔaxi 'my brother', ʔabi 'my father'.

Note 3.5 In Unit 2 you learned that, in general, the b- prefix is added to the forms of the Prefix Tense when they are used independently. There is, however, one independent use of the Prefix Tense in which the b- prefix is not used. Here are examples taken from the Basic Sentences of Units 1 - 3:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2.40 ... kúun_hoon ʔábl_bʔáǧr_daʔáaye . | I'll be here ten minutes ahead of time. ("May I be here...") |
| 3.42 ʔállá_ixallíilo_yáahon . | God keep them for him. |
| 3.43 ʔállá_yénfázak . | May God keep you. |
| 3.48 táǧbhu fála_xéer . | Good night. ("May you reach morning well.") |

The simple forms of the Prefix Tense are used independently with the meaning "may something happen", "let something happen". This use is very common in the third person ("he", "they") and very common in formulas, but you will also find it in other persons and in non-formulaic expressions.

Note 3.6 Prepositions. The preposition b- 'in, with, for, etc.' has occurred in various Basic Sentences and in Listening In conversations:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1.20 bʔaddéeš hàada ? | (For how much is this? |
| 2.40 ... ʔábl_bʔáǧr_daʔáaye . | ... ten minutes early ("ahead <u>by</u> ten minutes") |
| 3.5 b_xéer_lhámdu_lelláa . | Fine (" <u>in</u> well-being"), praise God. |
| 3.23 bʔánu_balad_mawǧúd_ʔaxduk ? | What city's your brother <u>in</u> ? |
| 3.41 ... bisaaʔdúu bkélši . | ... they help him <u>with</u> everything. |
| 3.44 neǧelna_ǧǧaraf_bmaʔreftak . | We're honored <u>by</u> your acquaintance. |
| 3.14 ... bisaaʔdúu bkélši . | ... they help him with everything. |

2.2 xalliina_nətlaf_fii .

Let's get on (it).

2(LI) ... mnáakol_fii .

... we'll eat in it.

2(LI) ʔána_mabşut_fiik .

I'm happy to see you ("I'm made happy by you").

3.11 ʔähla_wsähla_fiik .

Welcome to you.

2.29 lféet_fiiha .

Turn into it (feminine).

The preposition b- is very common in Arabic and has a wide variety of meanings, such as 'in, at, with, by means of, for, per etc.' It has several alternants: bə-, fii-, bi-, b-. They are used as follows:

bə- before a word beginning with two consonants
 fii- before a pronoun ending
 b- or bi- as used everywhere else, bi- only with the meaning 'in'

Examples:

bəlfárabí	in (the) Arabic	bséne	per year
bəššáam	in Damascus	bléera	for a pound, a pound's worth
bəlmátʃam	in the restaurant	bʔaméerka (or biʔaméerka)	in America
besséne	by the year	bbéetak (or bibéetak)	in your house
bəlbéet	in the house	bxáms_leeráat	for five pounds
	fiiik		in you
	fiiina		in us
	fii		in it, in him
	fiiha		in her

Here are additional sentences containing examples of b- with various meanings:

1. báakol_bəlmátʃam .

I'll eat in the restaurant.

2. btrébb_táakol_fii_máʃi ?

Would you like to eat there ("in it") with me?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 3. bʔaddéeš_llāhme_hāllaʔ ? | How much is meat now? |
| 4. bšūufak_bbeeto . | I'll see you in his house. |
| 5. ʔāxi_mawzūud_hāllaʔ biʔaméerka . | My brother's in America now. |
| 6. máa_fii_mīi_mniin bihalmátšam . | There isn't anything good in this restaurant. |
| 7. mnátlaš_šala_bēet_ʔāhmad belbāas . | We'll go up to Ahmad's house by bus. |
| 8. šaṭīini_bšāšr_ʔrūuš xēbz . | Give me ten piastres' worth of bread. |
| 9. baštēgel yoomēen_bēžžāmīa . | I work two days a ("the") week. |
| 10. mnāakol_bmātšamo . | We'll eat in his restaurant. |

The preposition šala has a variety of meanings, such as 'on, on top of, to, toward, for, etc.' It has several alternants: ša-, šalee-, šala.

ša- before l- 'the'

šalee- before pronoun endings

šala_ is used everywhere else

Many Arabic speakers, especially in Lebanon, use ša- almost always instead of šala even when there is no l- 'the' on the word.

Examples:

šalbēet	to the house	šalēena	on us
šaššāam	to Damascus	šalēekon	on you (pl)
šalbaabōor	on the ship	šalēehon	on them
šalʔoteel	to the hotel	šalēek	on you (sg)

šala_beerūt to Beirut

šala_māhlak slowly

šala_ʔānu_baabōor on what ship

šala plus -i 'me' is šaliyyi. (Many people, especially in Lebanon, say šalāyyi.) Here are additional sentences containing šala:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. bēddi_rūn_ſaššāam . | I want to go to Damascus. |
| 2. byētlaſ_ſalēek ſāšr_ʔrūuš . | It'll cost you 10 piastres. |
| 3. ʔēlak_ſaliyyi kūun_hōon ʔābl_ bsāafa . | I promise you to be here an hour early. |
| 4. ʔēnte_tʔaxxārt . lhaʔʔ_ſalēek . | You were late. It's your fault. |
| 5. ʔēhki ſala_māhlak . | Speak slowly. |
| 6. rūun_māfo ſassiinama . | Go with him to the movies. |
| 7. ʔziit_ſalbaabōormen_ʔamēerka . | I came by ("on the") ship from America. |
| 8. māa_fhēmt_ſalēena ? | Didn't you understand us? |
| 9. tēsben ſala_xeer . | Good night. |

The preposition mən is usually equivalent to English 'from' or 'then', with expressions of time it is equivalent to 'ago'. It has several alternants: mne-, menn-, mən.

- mne- before a word beginning with two consonants or with l- 'the'
- menn- before a pronoun ending beginning with a vowel (e.g. -i, -ak)
- mən is used everywhere else

Examples:

mnelbéet	from the house	mēnni	from me
mneššāam	from Damascus	mēnnak	from you
mnelulāad	from the children	mēnno	from him
	mēnkon		from you (pl)
	mən_ʔamēerka		from America
	mən_bēeti		from my house

Here are additional sentences containing mən:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. beddo_yāaxod_mēnna sābf_leerāat . | He's asking seven pounds. |
| 2. ʔēza mən_bēeto . | He came from his house. |

3. mən_hóon_bžiib_lfawáaki . I'll get the fruit here. ("bring the fruit from here")
4. mnassiinama_labéeti fii_ŷáir_daʔáaye?_
belbáas . From the movies to my house is ten minutes by bus.
5. hálla?_ʔžiit_mən_ŷándo ? Did you just come from his house?
6. ʔéža_mən_žemŷtéen_ŷaššáam . He came to Damascus two weeks ago.

The preposition ŷan is usually equivalent to English 'about, on, concerning' but occasionally means 'from' or 'than'. Like mən, it has a double -nn- before pronoun endings beginning with a vowel: ŷánni, ŷánnak, ŷánnno. Everywhere else it is ŷan. Sample sentences:

1. šúu_byəŷref_ʔəmmad_ŷánnak ? What does Ahmad know about you?
2. ʔána_máa_bəŷref_ŷanhon_šii . I don't know anything about them.
3. ʔaxúuk_byəŷki_ŷánnak mníin . Your brother speaks well of you.
4. šúu_btəŷref_ŷan_lháale_bəššáam ? What do you know about the situation in Damascus?

Note 3.7 Nine more Feminine -t nouns appear in the Basic Sentences of this Unit. Six of them are completely regular ft nouns; the others are ft* with various plural types. Here are the complete forms:

háale	háalti	haaltéen	haaláat	'condition, state'
hádra	hádrti	(hádrtéen)	hádráat	'presence'
sáfra	sáfrti	safrtéen	safráat	'voyage'
šánnə	šánti	šantéen	šannóat	'health'
wiláaye	wiláayti	wilaaytéen	wilaayáat	'state'
maŷrfe	maŷréfti	(maŷréftéen)	maŷáaref	'acquaintance'
səne	sánti	səntéen	sníin or sanawáat	'year'
žəmfə	žəmf̣ti	žəmf̣téen	žəmaf	'week'
ŷəole	ŷéelti	ŷeeltéen	ŷeeláat or ŷíŷl	'family'

After this Unit the forms of the new Feminine -t nouns will be given in the Vocabulary only.

Note 3.8 Feminine of adjectives. In Arabic adjectives are not a separate kind of word from nouns as they are in English. They are formed just like nouns and differ chiefly in having special feminine and plural forms. The feminine of an adjective consists of the masculine form plus the same feminine -t ending (-a or -e) that you have learned with nouns. Compare these Basic Sentences:

3.5 kiif_haalak ?

How are you?

3.8 lhámdu_lállaa, mniih .

Thank you, fine.

3.18 šlloon kaanet safrtak ?

How was your trip?

3.19 mniiha lhámdella .

Fine, thank you.

In the first sentences mniih 'fine, good' refers either to haal which is masculine or to the man who is speaking; in the other sentences mniiha 'fine, good' refers to sáfra which is feminine. So, you say

lmátšam_mniih .

The restaurant is good.

But l'áhwe_mniiha

The coffee house is good.

Here are the masculine and feminine forms of adjectives that have appeared in Units 1-3:

	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
(a)	kbíir	kbiire	large, old
	ktiir	ktiire	dense, much, a lot
	mabšúut	mabšúuta	well, happy
	mawžúud	mawžúude	present
	mašžúu?	mašžúu'a	crowded
	mniih	mniiha	good, fine
	zǧíir	zǧiire	small, young
(b)	láazem	láazme	necessary
	mæt'áxxer	mæt'áxra	delayed, late
	ṭayyeb	ṭaybe	good

<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
(c) fáadi	fáadye	empty, free
táani	táanye	second, other, next
(d) ?ámmar	hámra	red
?áwwal	?úula	first
žáaye	žáaye	coming, next

Notice that e or o before the last consonant drops out when the feminine -t suffix is added, just as e or o before the last consonant of a verb drops out when the plural -u is added. See group (b).

With some adjectives ending in -i, the -i is changed to -y- when the feminine -e is added. See group (c). A very few adjectives have changes in the stem when the feminine -t suffix is added. žáaye 'coming' is the same for masculine or feminine. See group (d).

From this Unit on, adjectives will be marked adj in the Vocabularies and any unusual feminine forms will be given.

Here are additional sentences with examples of adjectives:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. halmháṭṭa kbíire . | This station is large. |
| 2. lmáyye_ktíire bihalbáled . | Water is plentiful in this city. |
| 3. ?ènte fáadi trùuh màsi ? | Are you free to go with me? |
| 4. k'ianet_mabṣúuta_hòon . | She was happy here. |
| 5. lmàṭṣam_maṣṣúu?_ktiir . | The restaurant is very crowded. |
| 6. bàddi_dàraṣe_?úula . | I want first class. |
| 7. ṣaṭṭini_wàra?a_hámra . | Give me a red ticket. |
| 8. halbináaye zǵíire . | This building is small. |
| 9. lmháṭṭa mawžúude ?oddáam_lmàṭṣam . | The station is in front of the restaurant. |
| 10. ṣándhon_lámme_táybe . | They have good meat. |

11. ʔəʒa ʔala_baabɔr_kbɪr . He came on a large ship.
 12. tʔáɖdal . háyy_lèera_tàanye . Here's another pound.
 13. bʃúufak_ʒʒəmfa_ʒʒáaye . I'll see you next week.

3.9 Numbers. The numbers from 1-10 were discussed briefly in Note 1.6 and some differences between Arabic and English usage of numbers were noted.
 (a) Another important difference is the greater frequency of singular of nouns in number expressions:

- 3.3 miit_màsa . A hundred evenings
 3.12 kám_yóom ... How many days...
 3.39 ...ʔəʃriin_səne twenty years...

With the numbers from three to ten, as you already know, nouns are in the plural. With the numbers from 11 to 100, however, nouns are in the singular. The singular is also used with kam which means 'how many' in a question and means 'several, a few' in a statement. Notice that normally the number has primary stress and the noun which follows it has secondary.

1. hadɔol bʔəʃriin_ʔəʃ . These cost twenty piastres.
 2. ʔatʔina miit_lèera . Give us a hundred pounds.
 3. kám_lèera_mafo ? How many pounds does he have (with him)?
 4. beddi_rúun báɖd_kám_yóom . I want to go in a few days.

(b) In the Basic Sentences of this unit the expression ʔáʃr_tiiyyám 'ten days' occurred (sentence 3-13). The plural of the word yóom is ʔiiyyám. However, when the plural comes after one of the numbers from three to ten it drops the ʔ and replaces it with t. This t is actually part of the feminine -t ending of the number (tlaate, ʔarɓa, xamse, sette, sabɓa, tmaanye, tesɓ, ʔaʃara are all feminine -t nouns) but is said with the following word. There are very few of these plurals which require the t, and they will always be listed in the Vocabularies like this: yóom (pl (t-) ʔiiyyám). Here are all the forms: tlét_tiiyyám, xáms_tiiyyám, sét(t)_tiiyyám, sáɓ_tiiyyám, tmen_tiiyyám, téɓ_tiiyyám, ʔáʃr_tiiyyám, ʔarɓaf_tiiyyám.

Section D. Exercises

1. Transformation Sentences. Follow the same procedure you used for the transformation sentences of Unit 2, changing the verb forms (and anything else required by the meaning) to the corresponding plural forms:

1. bèddo_izúur bláadna .
2. rana yénzel_belmàrže .
3. byəštáğel_belbàlad .
4. bnəbb_ʔəšrab_ʔàhwe .
5. ranatšúuf_ʔamiin_ssàafa_wàande ?
6. šúu_ranatʔùul ?
7. máa_bèddo_ižfiib_luràaʔ .
8. byətlaʔ_belbàaʃ .
9. betnəbb_təřžaʔ_laʃàanna ?
10. tfáddal . šarrəfna ʃalbèet .
11. nšàalla_bzúurak žžəmfə_žžànye .
12. bèddo_yəlfet_bihallàfte .
13. bèddak_təštáğel ʃand_ʔáxi ?
14. máa_bfiid_yalli_ʔəltə_ʔànte .
15. làazem_tkùun_hniik ssàafa_ʃášara .
16. šúu_betʔùul_ʃan_lhàale ?
17. šúu_btəʃref_ʃànno ?
18. làazem_twáʔʔef bʔəwwal_làfte .
19. bèddo_išəřref_laʃàanna .
20. máa_ranayənfəz_yalli_ʔəltə_ʔàna .
21. bətrok_lbèet ssàafa_təʃa .

22. bətsáafed_ʔabduuk_šii ?
23. ranayəsal báfd žəmfa .
24. báʔmel_halli_báʔrfo .
25. byəzhar ʔənno byàakol ktíir .

2. Completion sentences. Fill in the appropriate adjective forms in the following Arabic sentences. When you are sure of the form, repeat the sentence several times until it sounds natural.

Sample: samako (good).

Complete to sāmako_ťáyyeb . His fish are good.

1. ssáfra_kāanet_ (good) .
2. ʔənte_bətkūun_ (free) _ssáafa_tlāate ?
3. ʔəbnak ləssāa_ (young) .
4. ʔāna_ (well) _ktíir .
5. lhāale_ (fine) bəššāam .
6. ssiinama_ (empty) .
7. bəddo_dāraže_ (first) .
8. ʔaxúuk (coming) _mneššāam ?
9. ʔəbno nažžāar_ (good) .
10. byəzhar_ʔənno lmhāṭṭa_ (crowded) .
11. ʔamíin rəžžāal_ (old) .
12. maʔ_lʔásaf ʔāna_ʔžíit_ (late) .

3. Numbers. Give the Arabic equivalents of:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. three years | 8. eight piastres |
| 2. five families | 9. two buildings |
| 3. four weeks | 10. ten days |
| 4. six states | 11. a hundred evenings |
| 5. two years | 12. two weeks |
| 6. how many weeks | 13. three turns |
| 7. seven trips | 14. two cigarettes |

- 15. nine hours
- 16. twenty years
- 17. five minutes
- 18. two families
- 19. eighteen
- 20. how many days

- 21. a hundred pounds
- 22. two days
- 23. one year
- 24. several hours
- 25. twenty minutes

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Ahmad wants to take Mr. Jones to visit a friend.

- A māsā_lxéer mēster_žōons
- J māsā_lxeerāat, kiifak_lyōom ?
- A lhāmdella sānti_mnīina uʔēnte_šlōonak ?
- J řāal_lhāmdella .
- A ʔžīit_ʔāaxdak lařānd_wāahed ʔēža_men_yooméen_men ʔamēerka .
- J māsā_bʔūul_lāʔ, hāllaʔ_merrūuh ?
- A ʔīza_kēnt_fāadi !!
- J řāyyeb, wēen_bēeto ?
- A ttraammwāay biwaddīina laʔeddāam_lbēet .
- J dāxlak rrežžāal_halli_bedna_nzūuro šūu_byeštēgel ?
- A māsā_bāřref . hūwwe_řārlo_řāřr snīin_biʔamēerka .
- J šūu_žāaye_yāřmel_hūwwe_hōon ?
- A bzennēllak ʔēža_layšūuf_řēelto .
- J řāndo_ulāad ?
- A halli_bāřrfo ʔēnno_řāndo_tlāate .
- J šūu_byeštēglu ?
- A lēkbīir_hāllaʔ mawžūud_biʔamēerka biřāawen_ʔabūu .
- J wetnēen_wēenhon ?
- A beššāam lwāahed_lēssāa_telmiiz wettāani_byeštēgel_nažžāar .
- J lēeš_māsā_byaaxēdhon_māřo lāmna_byēržař ?
- A bzennēllak_hēek_bēddo_yāřmel .

Conversation 2. At the friend's house.

A ssalāamu_řalāykom

Hasan wařalāykumu_ssalāam, řřāddalu řāřfu .

- A nšáalla_?axduk_belbéet .
- H náfam . ?áxi_hoon . šárfu .
- A ?ámrak, tfáddal_mèster_žbons .
- S ?àhlan_wasáhlán . šárfu .
- A háa márhaba . lhàmdella_šassaláame !¹
- S ?àlla_isálmak . šlónak ? šlón_ulaadak ?
- A šaal_ktiir . bnèbb_šárfak šala_mèster_žbons .
- A mèster_žbons bšárfak šala_saliim_béek .
- S tšarráfna_fiik .
- J u?ána_byenšálli_ššáraf .
- S háđrtak men_?anu_wilàaye_bi?amèerka ?
- J men_kalifóornya .
- S u?ána_mnehniik_kamàan .
- J btášref_sàan_fransiisko ?
- S béeti_fiiha .
- J kám_sène_šárlak_bi?amèerka .
- S tmén_sniin .
- H tfáddalu_l?àhwe .
- J mamnúun, šúu_hal?àhwe!² tàybe_ktiir !
- A šúu_bet?ùulu_nènzal_šalbàlad_hàlla? ?
- S mniin . brùuh_máškon .

¹ This formula (lhàmdella_šassaláame) is said to someone who has just returned from a long trip or occasionally to someone who has just passed through a dangerous time. Another formula of this kind is nšáalla_šala_saláame which is said to someone about to go on a long trip or about to undergo a serious operation. The usual response to either formula is ?àlla_isálmak.

² šúu_hal?àhwe! = What coffee!

Conversation 3. They go downtown.

- S uhalla? mnéen mærruun ? men hóon yemma mnèhnik ?
 J ?ána lessáani máa báref ššáam mniin .
 A mærruun men hóon la'eddáam ssiinama .
 S šuu byəshar pàalt lbálad mniina .
 J dáxlak šlóon lnaale hälla? bisáan fransiisko ?
 S mniina ktíir .
 J dáxlak báref wáaned ?əsmo xaliil byəštəḡel táažer btárfó ?
 S wá?ef faliyyi lašuuf .
 háa háada halli byəštəḡel bəl'máaš ?
 J ?ée náfam háada hūwwe .
 S bārfó táyyeb .
 J dáxlak šlóon náalto ?
 S ktíir mniina ušandə uláad bifaawnúu bkəlsí .
 J ?älla ixallíilo yàahon .
 S ?älla yənfazak .
 J dáxlak ?əbno ləkbiir lessáa təlmiiz ?
 S lá? . hūwwe hälla? byəštəḡel nažžáar .
 J u?əbno zəḡiir ?
 S báfdo təlmiiz .
 J bálla xallíina rrūun náakol .
 S ?ána bəddi ?éržaf fəlbəet, šarrəfna kamáan .
 J byənsállí ššáraf
 S təšbu fəla xéer
 J u?əntu bxéer

³ men hóon and mnèhnik in addition to meaning 'from here' and 'from there' also mean 'this way' or 'over here' and 'that way' or 'over there'.

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔáb (ʔabu-)	father (see Note 3.4)	béet	house
ʔaméerka	America	bláad (f)	country
ʔamiin	Amiin (pers name)	dáxlak	please, excuse me
ʔánu	which	fáadi (adj f fáadye)	empty, free (not busy)
ʔásaf	sorrow	hénne or hénnen	they
maf_lʔásaf	unfortunately	húwwe	he
ʔáx (ʔaxu-)	brother (see Note 3.4)	háale (ft)	condition, state
ʔée	yes	hádra (ft)	"presence"
ʔée_náfam	yes	hádrtak	you, (your "presence"
ʔmáaš	cloth	hósel	it happened (to someone)
ʔában (ʔábn-)	son	-hfaʔ	keep
ʔásam (ʔésm-)	name	-hʔal	happen (to someone)
ʔánn-	that	káanet	she was
ʔántu	you (pl)	kalifóornya	California
ʔʔʔit	I came, you came	kám	how many
baabóor	(steam) ship	kbíir (adj)	large, old (of persons)
bálad (f)	city, community	káll	all, every
báid	after, later~still	kálši	everything
báid_sáafa	after an hour, in an hour's time	láazem (adj)	necessary
báid bsáafa	an hour later (afterwards by an hour)	lása	still, yet
báido_talmiiz	he's still a student	lessáak_hoon?	are you still here?
		mása	evening

mawǵūd	present, found	telmiiz	student
máǵrfe (ft pl māǵáaref)	acquaintance, knowledge	-trek or -trok	leave
miit	hundred of (+ sg noun)	tǵarráfná	we're honored
máster	Mister	uláad	children
naǵǵáar	carpenter	wiláaye (ft)	state
reǵǵáal	man	xáaled	Khaled (pr name)
saan fransiisko	San Francisco	xaǵewi_smaǵfiil	Khedine Ismail
-saafed	help	xéer (pl xeeráat)	well-being, good
afra (ft)	voyage, trip	yaa-	sign of object
sáne (ft pl sniin or sanawáat)	year	yóom (pl (t) ʔiyyáam)	day
stáǵfiru_l_laa	reply to tǵarráfná	lyoom	today, the day
suuriyya (f)	Syria	-zuur	visit
sáar	it happened, became	zǵiir (adj)	small, young
sárlak	it happened to you	-zenn	think
sánna (ft)	health	ǵáaye (adj f also ǵáaye)	coming
-ǵben	reach morning, be- come in the morning	ǵámfa (ft pl ǵémaǵ)	week
ǵáraf	honor	ǵáal	fine, excellent
-ǵarref	honor	-ǵarref (ǵála)	cause to know, introduce (to)
ǵǵáam (f)	Damascus	ǵéele (ft pl -aat or ǵiyal)	family
-ǵtáǵel	work, be busy at	ǵámr	age
táaǵer	business man	-ǵref (yaǵref)	know
tmentáǵš	eighteen		

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| girl | bənt |
| she sits | bəʔʔod or bəʔʔod |
| maid | ʂaana |
| 1. Do you know a girl I could get for a maid? | bəʔʔrefli_ʂii_bənt bəʔʔod_ʂaana ? |
| 2. How old do you want her to be? | ʔaddees_beddak ykuun_ʂemra ? |
| between | bēen |
| 3. Between fifteen and twenty. | been_lxanʂaʔʂ wəʔʂriin . |
| she reads | təʔra |
| she writes | təktob |
| 4. Do you want her to [be able] to read and write? | beddak_yaaha təʔra_wtəktob ? |
| it concerns | biheem |
| she speaks for herself | təkiilha |
| English | ʔenglizi |
| 5. She should speak a little English.
(It concerns me that she speak her a little English!) | bihemni təkiilha_ʂwayyet_ʔenglizi . |
| 6. What do you want her to do? | ʂuu_beddak_yaaha_təʔmel ? |
| 7. Everything a maid has to do. | kelʂi_laazem təʔmlo_ʂʂaana . |
| she cooks | təʔbox |
| 8. Do you want her to know how to cook? | beddak_yaaha_təʔref_təʔbox ? |
| she irons | təkwɪ |
| she washes | təʂsel or təxsel |
| laundry | ʂasɪl or xasɪl |
| 9. I want her to cook and iron and do the laundry. | beddi_yaaha_təʔbox wtəkwɪ wtəʂsel_lʂasɪl . |
| she | hiyye |
| always | dāayman or dāaʔiman |

- | | |
|--|--|
| clean | ndiif |
| 10. And she'll have to keep the house
clean all the time. | whiyye_daayman_laazem_txalli_lbeet_
ndiif . |
| color | l6on |
| it is necessary | byelzam |
| woman | nāra |
| housekeeper | faššiyye |
| 11. In that case, you'll need an older
woman to be a housekeeper. | ʔala_halloon byelzamak_mara_kbiire
wetkuun_faššiyye . |
| under | tānt |
| hand | ʔiid |
| 12. I have one you couldn't beat.
(*Under my hand there is one than
which there is none better!) | tant_ʔiidi waande maa_fii_menħa . |
| thing, need | ḡarad |
| work | šēḡel |
| exactly | tamaaman |
| 13. Exactly what the work calls for. | ḡarad_ššēḡel_tamaaman . |
| self <u>or</u> same | zāat |
| required | matluub |
| 14. That's just what I need. | zaati, haada_matluubi . |
| I give back to you | reddallak |
| 15. Fine. I'll see her and let you
know. | tayyeb . ranašəflak_yaaha
wrəddallak_xabar . |
| but | laaken |
| she gets satisfied | bṭərda |
| cheap | rxiiš |
| 16. But I don't think she'll take too
little. | laaken_maa_bzənnəllak_yaaha
bṭərda_berxiiš . |
| it means | yāfni |
| approximately | taʔriiban |
| 17. Well, about how much will she want? | yafni, ʔaddeš_bədħa_taʔriiban ? |
| until | hātta |

I ask

18. I really don't know, when I see her,
I'll ask her for you.

when

19. When are you going to see her?

it's possible

the day or today

tomorrow

20. Possibly either today or tomorrow.

21. Thank you.

22. This is the girl I told you about.

23. Please have a seat.

24. What's your name?

25. My name's Nabiha.

who

you were (fem)

you work (fem)

26. Who did you work for before?

time

27. This is the first time I've worked.

I was

anyone

28. I haven't worked for anyone before.

you cook

cooking

Western or European

29. Do you know how to cook European style?

30. A little, not much.

you learned (fem)

31. Where did you learn?

bās'al

4.3r

walla_maa_ba'ref hatta_muufha
bās'allak_yaaha .

ʔeemta

ʔeemta_ranats'uufa ?

yamken

lyoom

bakra

yamken yaa_lyoom_yaa_bakra .

katter_xeerak .

hayye lbant yalli_ʔeltellak ʔaltellak
ʔanha .

tfaddalu striiku .

ʃuu_ʔasmek ?

ʔasmi_nabiiha .

miin or meen

kanti

taštāgli

ʔand_miin_kenti_təštāgli men_ʔabal ?

marra

hayy_ʔawwal_marra beštāgel_fiiha .

kent

hada

maa_kent_ʔəštāgel ʔand hada men_ʔabl .

təṭṭxi

ṭābx

ʔafranži

btaʔrfi_ṭəṭṭxi_ṭābx_ʔafranži ?

ʃwayye muu_ktiir .

tʃallamti

ween_tʃallamti ?

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| mother | ʔémm |
| sitting (fem) | ʔáafde |
| people | náas |
| French | frənsáawi |
32. From my mother, she used to work
for French people.
- men_ʔəmmi kaanet_ʔaafde
ʔand_naas_frənsaawiyiɪn .
- you make (masc or fem)
- tsáawi
- beds
- txúut
- you wipe (fem)
- təmsahi
- the ground
- lʔárd
33. Do you know how to make beds and
wash the floor?
- btaʔrfi_tsaawi_ttxuut wtəmsahi_lʔard ?
34. Of course, sir.
- lakáan_yaa_beek .
- you (fem)
- ʔánti
- you sleep (fem)
- tnáami
- or
- wélla
- people
- ʔáhl
35. Would you like to sleep in our house
or with your folks?
- ʔanti bathəbbi_tnaami_ʔanna
wəlla_ʔand_ʔahlek ?
- certain or certainly
- mʔakkad
- better
- ʔáhsan
36. It certainly would be better at
your house.
- mʔakkad_bikuun_ʔandkon ʔahsan .
- month
- ʃáhr
- only ~~or~~ but
- báss
37. But I'll go see them once a month.
- bass_bruuh_bʃuufhon beʃʃáhr_marra .
- you will be happy (fem)
- bʔəmbəʃti
38. Fine. I hope you're happy with us.
- ʔayyeb . nʃaalla_bʔəmbəʃti_ʔanna .
39. Thank you. (God keep you, sir.)
- ʔalla_yənfazak_yaa_beek .

Section B. Pronunciation

1. The velar spirants (x, ġ)

The consonant sounds represented in our spelling by x and ġ are not very similar to any English sounds. As briefly described in the Pronunciation Section of Unit 1, they sound like clearing the throat and gargling, respectively. To make them you raise the back part of the tongue as though you were going to make a k (as in "kit") or g (as in "get"), but instead of stopping off the air stream completely as for k and g, you just narrow the passage and let the air through. In other words k is a stop and x is the corresponding spirant. As with other speech sounds the best way to learn is to listen to the Guide and mimic him, practicing until you sound just like him. If you are listening to records, the x will sound more like the h than it is in actual speech so that you must be very careful to keep the two sounds quite distinct. Here are some examples of x:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

xəbz	'bread'	txúut	'beds'
xátt	'line'	met'áxxer	'delayed, late'
xámse	'five'	táaxod	'you take'
xéer	'well-being'	'áx	'brother'

The ġ sound is not very common in Arabic. So far you have met only a few words with ġ. Here are some examples of words with ġ.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

ġárad	'thing, need'	déġri	'straight'
ġasíil	'laundry'	šéġl or šéġel	'work'
ġéer	'other'	téġsel	'she washes'
byeštáġel	'he works'	zġíir	'small, young'

2. Mid front vowel (e, ee)

The vowel sound represented by e, ee in the spelling is similar to the vowel sound of English words like they, great, bay, etc. There are two major differences, however, between the Arabic e, ee and the similar English vowels: (1) the Arabic vowel is "pure", that is, without any y-glide at the end; and (2) the Arabic vowel comes both short and long, while the English vowel is always relatively long.

If you listen carefully while you say a word like they, bay, Wayne, you will notice that the position of your vocal apparatus changes while you are saying the vowel. Your tongue starts in a position somewhat like the position it is in for the e of bed and then shifts to the y-position which it has for the y of boy, high (really ha-y) etc. In Arabic words like ʕalee 'on him', ween 'where' there is no shift like this; you make a sound with the tongue a little higher in the front of the mouth than for the e of bed and then you HOLD IT without allowing your tongue to slide up into the y-position. Listen to the following Arabic words and compare them with the English words given beside them which have a similar vowel sound. Notice that the English vowel is sometimes a little shorter than the Arabic vowel (e.g. lake, fate), sometimes as long as or longer than the Arabic ee (e.g. Wayne, male). The Arabic double ee is about the same length in all words. Pay attention to all the differences and imitate the Arabic ee carefully.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

Arabic	meeting	similar English word
ʕméel	'do'	a <u>ma</u> le
wéen	'where'	<u>Way</u> ne
ʔotéel	'hotel'	no <u>fa</u> il
léera	'pound'	<u>sha</u> re a
ʕaléek	'on you'	a <u>la</u> ke
héek	'so'	<u>a</u> che
lféet	'turn'	ill <u>fa</u> te

In Damascus Arabic, in addition to the long (double) ee, there is also a very short single e. It is simply the Arabic ee cut very short. There is no sound like this in English and you will have to practice this a great deal in order not to hold it too long. Here are examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FOUR

sétte	'six'
kbíire	'old (fem)'
ʕaššíyye	'cook' (fem)
žáaye	'coming'
húwwe	'he'

lāazem	'necessary'
wāahed	'one'
bisāaʔed	'he helps'
btāʔref	'she knows'
btāḡsel	'she washes'

This short e is especially hard at the end of a word where the English speaker has a tendency either to hold it too long (then it sounds like ee to the Arab) or have his tongue too high (then it sounds like i to the Arab). Here are some words ending in e, ee, and i for practice:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FIVE

sétte	'six'	ʔéele	'family'
sétti	'my grandmother'	ʔalée	'on him'
béddi	'I want'	ʔénte	'you (masc)'
*médde	'period of time'	ʔénti	'you (fem)'

3. Automatic word-stress.

Whenever an Arabic word is said by itself one syllable is louder than the others, i.e. one syllable has primary stress ('). The position of this loudest syllable in an isolated word is almost completely automatic: you can almost always tell where the primary stress will fall from the combinations of consonants and vowels in the word.

(a) If a word consists of only one syllable, the primary stress falls on that syllable, no matter what consonants and vowels compose it. Examples: béet 'house', xébz 'bread', múu 'it is not', kbíir 'large'.

(b) For a word of more than one syllable, if there are no long vowels in the word, and no clusters of two or three consonants together after a vowel anywhere in the word, the primary stress is on the first syllable. Examples: séne 'year', wára 'behind', bálad 'city', ktébu 'write (pl)', *kátabu 'they wrote', *xédari 'grocer'.

(c) In all other words the automatic primary stress falls on the LONG VOWEL OR VOWEL FOLLOWED BY TWO OR THREE CONSONANTS NEAREST THE END OF THE WORD. Examples: maháll 'place', waráa 'behind him', baládna 'our city', baabóor 'ship', mafréftak 'your acquaintance', bináam 'he sleeps', bišúufu 'they see', bišuuufúu 'they see him', bišuuufúuna 'they see us', rahayesʔalúuki 'they're going to ask you (fem)'.

In words of the kinds described under (a) (b) (c) the word-stress is automatic. From Unit 7 on, automatic primary stress will not be marked when a word is cited alone, as in the build-up of new words before each Basic Sentence.

(d) In a few words the primary stress is on the next to the last syllable even though the vowel of that syllable is short and is followed by a single consonant. Examples: byəštégel 'he works', rahanəsal 'we're going to arrive', *saafadéto 'she helped him', *yatára 'I wonder'.

In words of this kind the stress is non-automatic and will always be marked.

When a word occurs with other constituents in a phrase, it may have the primary stress on the same syllable as when the word is in isolation, or it may have a secondary stress (˘) on that syllable, or it may have no stressed syllable at all. This matter of PHRASE-STRESS will be discussed in Unit 11.

Section C. Analysis

Note 4.1 In Units 1, 2, and 3 you learned the endings -i, -ni; -ak, -k; -o; -na; -kon; -hon. In this Unit you learn the remaining endings of this kind. Study the following forms which occurred in the Basic Sentences of this Unit:

ʔəm̩rha	<u>her</u> age	rahaʔšúufha	you're going to see <u>her</u>
mən̩ha	from <u>her</u>	tən̩kiil̩ha	she speaks for <u>her</u>
bád̩ha	<u>she</u> wants	yáaha	<u>her</u>
ʔán̩ha	about <u>her</u>	fiiha	in <u>it</u> (fem)

The suffix for "her" is -ha. Now study the following forms which also occurred in the Basic Sentences of this Unit:

ʔəsmek	<u>your</u> (fem) name	ʔáhlek	<u>your</u> (fem) folks
--------	------------------------	--------	-------------------------

The suffix for "you, your" when speaking to a girl or woman is -ek. You now know all the suffixes. Here are several examples:

béd̩di	I want	ʔeddáami	in front of me
béd̩dak	you want	ʔeddáamak	in front of you
bád̩dek	you (fem) want	ʔeddáamek	in front of you (fem)
béd̩do	he wants	ʔeddáamo	in front of him

bédha	she wants	ʔeddáamha	in front of her
bédna	we want	ʔeddáamna	in front of us
bédkon	you (pl) want	ʔeddáamkon	in front of you (pl)
bédhon	they want	ʔeddáamhon	in front of them

Note 4.2 Suffix alternants. As mentioned in Note 3, some of the pronominal suffixes have alternant forms. Study the following examples:

masáayi	my evening	fiiyi (=fiiyi)	in me
masáak	your evening	flik	in you
masáaki	your (fem) evening	fiki	in you (fem)

You have learned that the "you" suffix is -ak after a consonant and -k after a vowel. Likewise the "my" and "your (fem)" suffixes have one alternant (-i, -ek) after a consonant, and another alternant (-yi, -ki) after a vowel. Notice that the vowel is always doubled before the ending is added. This is true in general: a word ending in a vowel doubles the vowel when any suffix is added. Here are further examples:

- (1) baʔtiik_leertéen . I'll give you two pounds.
 baʔtiiki_leertéen . I'll give you (fem) two pounds.
 baʔtiikon_leertéen . I'll give you (pl) two pounds;
- (2) lassáak_bəlbéet ? Are you still at home?
 lassáaki_bəlbéet ? Are you (fem) still at home?
- (3) bxallfik_trúun . I'll let you go.
 bxallfiki_trúuhi . I'll let you (fem) go.

As mentioned in Note 3.6, the word "on me" is unusual: it is ʔaliyyi instead of the expected *ʔaléeyi (like ʔaléek, ʔaléeki).

Note 4.3 In previous Units you learned most of the prefixes of the Prefix Tense. In this Unit you learn the last one. Study these forms which appeared in the Basic Sentences:

btéʔod	she sits, stays	tékwi	she irons, presses
tkúun	she will be	txállí	she keeps, leaves
ténki	she speaks		
táʔmel	she does		
tétbox	she cooks		

The prefix for "she" is t(ə)-. As you know, the prefix for "you (masculine)" is also t(ə)-. This means that the second person masculine singular form and the third person feminine singular form of the Prefix Tense are always IDENTICAL.

The following second person feminine singular forms appeared in the Basic Sentences:

təštəgli	you (fem) work
btáʔrfi	you (fem) know
tétboxi	you (fem) cook
trátbi	you (fem) arrange
tnáami	you (fem) sleep

The "you" forms of the Prefix Tense used when speaking to a girl or woman have the "you" masculine prefix t(ə)- plus a feminine ending -i added to the word. Note that the stem vowel in such forms behaves the same way it does in the plural forms described in Note 3.2, i.e. -a- remains, -e- and -o- are dropped. Here are the "he", "she", and "you" (fem) forms of the new verbs in this Unit. You will have no trouble making the corresponding forms of other verbs you know.

<u>he</u>	<u>she</u>	<u>you (fem)</u>	<u>meaning</u>
yéʔod	téʔod	téʔdi	sit, stay
yéktob	téktob	téktbi	write
yélzam	télzam	télzami	be needed, necessary
yémsah	témsah	témsahi	wipe
yəštəgel	təštəgel	təštəgli	work
yetsállēm	tetsállēm	~~tetfálmi~~ tətfállami	learn

<u>he</u>	<u>she</u>	<u>you (fem)</u>	<u>meaning</u>
yétbox	tétbox	tétbxi	cook
yémken	-----	-----	be possible
yéḡsel	téḡsel	téḡsli	wash
yés'al	tés'al	tés'ali	ask
yestriin	testriin	testriini	rest, be seated
ihémm	thémm	thémmi	be important
ikátter	tkátter	tkátri	increase
ináam	tnáam	tnáami	sleep
irédd	trédd	tréddi	return, give back
irátteb	trátteb	trátbi	arrange

Note 4.4 Verb stems ending in a vowel. In Units 1-4 there have been a few examples of prefix tense verb stems ending in a vowel. For example:

<u>word</u>	<u>meaning</u>	<u>stem</u>
2.5 ...nestánna...	we wait	-stanna
4.4 ...té'ra...	she reads	-'ra
4.9 ...utékwi...	and she irons	-kwi
4.10 ...txállli...	she keeps, leaves	-xalli
4.33 ...tsáawi...	she makes	-saawi
2.12 ...biwáddi...	it leads	-waddi
1.35 ...rahanéb'a...	we're going to stay	-b'a
1.10 ...btéḡki	you speak	-ḡki
4.16 ...btérda	she gets	-rda

Verbs of this kind are fairly numerous in Arabic. The stem ends in -a or -i:

-'ra, -b'a, -rda, -stanna
-ḡki, -kwi, -xalli, waddi, saawi

When the -i for feminine or -u for plural is added to these stems the -a or -i of the stem is dropped. So, the forms are:

<u>he</u>	<u>they</u>	<u>you</u>	<u>you (fem)</u>	<u>you (pl)</u>
byé?ra	byé?ru	bté?ra	bté?ri	bté?ru
byéb?a	byéb?u	btéb?a	btéb?i	btéb?u
byérda	byérdu	btérda	btérdi	btérdu
byestánna	byestánnu	btéstánna	btéstánni	btéstánnu
byéhki	byéhku	btéhki	btéhki	btéhku
byékwi	byékwi	btékwi	btékwi	btékwi
bixállli	bixállu	betxállli	betxállli	betxállu
biwáddi	biwáddu	betwáddi	betwáddi	betwáddu
bisáawi	bisáawu	betsáawi	betsáawi	betsáawu

Notice that when the stem ends in -i the second person masculine and feminine are identical (e.g. btéhki).

The prefix tense stem of the verb "come" is -ži and the full set of forms is:

	m.	f.	p.
you	btéži	btéži	btéžu
he, she, they	byéži	btéži	byéžu
I, we	béži	-	mnéži

Note 4.5 Study the -l- suffixes in the following forms which have appeared in Units 1-4:

wa?éflkon	I stop (for you)	ixallfílo	may he keep (for him)
btafréfli	you know (for me)		
bes'allak	I'll ask (for you)	tərkíilha	she speaks for her

The suffix -l- is added to verb forms and has the meaning 'to, for'. The pronominal suffixes -i, -ak, -ek, etc. are then added to the -l-. Note that although this is a verb the "me" ending is -i and not -ni. The -l- suffix is added to any verb form. In certain cases, however, either the verb form or the -l- suffix has a special alternant, as in the following examples:

Verb form	Verb form with -l-	Meaning
sáar	sárlí	it happened to me
žíib	žébli	bring me
lašúuf	lašéflak	so that I see for you
bžénn	bžennállak	I think for you
rédđ	reddéllak	I return to you

In verb forms having a long (double) vowel before the last consonant the vowel is shortened when the -l- suffix is added. If the vowel is aa (e.g. sáar) it is shortened to a (sárlak); if it is ii or uu (e.g. žíib, lašuuf) it is shortened to e (žébli, lašéflak).

With verb forms ending in a double consonant the -l- suffix has the alternant -all- (e.g. bžénn, bžennállak). Here are further examples of verb forms with the -l- suffix. Study them carefully until you are sure you can repeat the sentences without hesitation and until you understand the form with the -l- suffix.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1) ?éemta_betšéfli_lbènt ? | When will you see the girl for me? |
| 2) sšàanfa_betrattəblkon_ttxdūt . | The maid will make the beds for you (pl). |
| 3) bēdna_yáaha təmsəhlna_l?árd . | We want her to wash the floor. |
| 4) šúu_bet?əllo ? | What will you tell him? |
| 5) šéflo_yáaha . | See her for him. |
| 6) btařréflo_šii_bènt ? | Do you know a girl for him? |
| 7) bařmello_lmařrúuf . | I'll do him the favor. |
| 8) bžəblak_yáaha_békra ? | Shall I bring it (fem) to you tomorrow? |
| 9) bšəflak_yáaha . | I'll see her for you. |
| 10) šúu_bədkon_?ətbəxlkon ? | What do you want me to cook for you? |
| 11) bi?əllo mārra_táanye . | He'll tell him again. |
| 12) b?əlha_hèek . | I'll tell her so. |

This -l- suffix on verbs is another form of the preposition or prefix la- 'to' which may be used with both nouns and verbs. This preposition has the following alternants:

la - before l- 'the'

ʔel- before pronoun endings

la - is used everywhere else

Examples:	labéeti	'to my house'
	lɛlbéet	'to the house'
	laʔámmad	'to Ahmad'
	ʔélo	'to him'
	lanšúuf	'to see = so that we see'
	lahniik	'(to) there'

Here are additional sentences:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. ʔéža lablâadna layzúurha . | He came to our country to visit it. |
| 2. betrúuh_mâfi_ləlmâtʃam ? | Will you go to the restaurant with me? |
| 3. békra rana ʔéktob_laʔáxi . | Tomorrow I'm going to write to my brother. |
| 4. lawéen_bədkon_trúuhu ? | Where do you (pl) want to go? |
| 5. ʔáxi_byésal_lahoon báʔd_békra . | My brother will get here day after tomorrow. |
| 6. rúuh_dəğri latšúuf_lbináaye . | Go straight ahead to see the building. |
| 7. men_hoon_ləlmārže fii_néss_sáafa_bəlbáas . | From here to the Marje is a half hour by bus. |
| 8. laazémni kām_ğarad_ləlbéet . | I need a few things for the house. |
| 9. halwáraʔa laméen ? ʔéli . | Whose ticket is this? Mine. |
| 10. ʔélak_faliyyi kúun_hniik báʔd_sáafa . | I promise you to be there in an hour. |
| 11. ʔámmad bəddo_yéži_laʔanna . | Ahmad wants to come to our house. |
| 12. báʔti lakéll_wáaned leertéen . | I'll give everyone two pounds. |

13. ʔálo_māsi ʔəšrīn_lēera . I owe him twenty pounds.
14. šūu_bethəbbu_təšrābu ? ʔəli_bīira What would you (pl) like to drink?
uʔálo_ʔāhwe . A beer for me and coffee for him.

Note 4.6 In Syrian Arabic there is a prefix meaning 'going to' which may be added to the forms of the Prefix Tense. Here are examples from Basic Sentences:

- 2.34 nēmma rahanəbʔa hōon_hawāali_ We're going to stay here about two
saaʔtēen . hours.
- 4.15 tāyyeb . ranašəflak_yāaha Fine. I'm going to see her and let
ureddəllak_xābar . you know.
- 4.19 ʔéemta ranašūufha ? When are you going to see her?

Notice that this prefix like la- 'to, in order to' is added directly to the forms of the Prefix Tense without the b- prefix, and is completely unstressed. The form of the prefix given in the sentences you have learned is rana-. This is not the only form of the "going to" prefix. You will hear ran-, lana-, lan-, and na- in Syrian Arabic. Sometimes the same speaker will one time say one and another time another. The use of the particular prefix may also depend on the place--people from Damascus more often use lana- or lan-, people from Beirut usually use ran-. Notice that, as in English, the prefix is not repeated for two verbs in a row (see sentence 4.15). Here are five more examples:

- 1) šūu_lanataʔmel ? What are you going to do?
- 2) lananənki_ʔarabi māʔo . We're going to speak Arabic with him.
- 3) ʔéemta lanayəsʔālha ? When's he going to ask her?
- 4) lanayəštəǧlu ʔāndo . They're going to work for him (at his place).
- 5) ʔabūu lanayʔallo . His father's going to tell him.

Note 4.7 The Arabic word šii 'thing' has a variety of uses. Here are Basic Sentences with šii:

- 2.21 šūu_hāada ? šii_ktiir . What's that? It's a little steep.
- 3.33 šii_ʔaal . Pretty good.
- 3.38 bisāaʔdu_ʔabūuhon_šii ... ? Do they help their father ...?
- 4.1 btaʔrəfli šii_bənt ... ? Do you know a girl ...?
- 4.7 kəlši_lāazem tāʔmlo_ššāanfa . Everything a maid has to do.

When *šii* is used by itself or as a suffix (e.g. *kālšii*) it can often be translated 'thing'. It is often used before another word in the meaning 'some, somewhat, some ... or other' and may be translated in a variety of ways (e.g. pretty good, a little steep, a girl). Also, *šii* is sometimes used at the end of a question where it seems to "tone down" the question and make it a little less abrupt. In cases like that there is usually no English equivalent, (e.g. sentence 3.38). The following are additional examples of *šii*:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1) <i>ʔatʔini šii_xáms_leeràat .</i> | Give me about five pounds. |
| 2) <i>ʔaddées_ʔəmro ? --šii_ʔəšriin_səne.</i> | How old is he? About twenty. |
| 3) <i>šii_rxiiš .</i> | Pretty cheap. |
| 4) <i>lawaʔésʔal šii_bént ʔanno .</i> | I'm going to ask some girl about him. |
| 5) <i>btaʔrēf_ʔaxúuhon šii ?</i> | Do you know their brother? |
| 6) <i>rahanébʔa šii_kám_yóom .</i> | We're going to stay a few days. |

Note 4.8 Formulas. Several Arabic formulas correspond to English "please". Six such formulas have appeared in Basic Sentences:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1.15 <i>betražžáak ʔəhki_ʔala_máhlak .</i> | Please speak slowly. |
| 1.16 <i>ʔméel_maʔrúuf_ʔiid_yalli_ʔəlto .</i> | Please repeat what you said. |
| 2.19 <i>ʔfáddalu .</i> | Please (get into the taxi). |
| 2.31 <i>bállā máʔak_kmàalet xáms_leeràat ?</i> | (Please) do you have change for five pounds? |
| 2.34 <i>ʔfáddal .</i> | Here (=please, handing the man the five pound note). |
| 3.34 <i>dáxlak kiif_ulàado .</i> | (Please) how are his children? |
| 3.46 <i>ʔfáddalu šarfúuna_ʔalbèet .</i> | Please come to see us. |
| 4.23 <i>ʔfáddalu stríimu .</i> | Please have a seat. |

When you ask someone to do something the Arabic expression for please is usually *ʔméel_maʔrúuf* or *betražžáak*. On the other hand, if you are offering someone else a service, the Arabic expression is *ʔfáddal* or, especially in Damascus, *šárref*. This is used, for example, whenever you hand someone something, offer someone something to eat, request someone to be seated or go ahead of you, etc. Finally *dáxlak* and *bállā* are used when you're asking for information, such as "How are their children?" "Where is his office?" etc. In addition, *dáxlak* and *bállā* are sometimes used as more informal equivalents of *ʔméel_maʔrúuf* and *betražžáak*. Note that all these expressions have special forms for feminine and plural.

Sample sentences:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. fmeel_mafruduf zebli_šwayyet_xəbz . | Please bring me some bread. |
| 2. betražžāak lfēet_mən_hōn . | Please turn this way. |
| 3. fmeel_mafruduf ?əhki šwayye_šwayye . | Please speak slowly. |
| 4. betražžāak fiid_kəlši_?əlto . | Please repeat everything you said. |
| 5. fmeel_mafruduf rūuH_māfo latšūufu_?əhmad. | Please go with him and see Ahmad. |
| 6. tfāddal_?eddāami . | Please (go) ahead of me. |
| 7. šārref . striin . | Please have a seat. |
| 8. tfāddal_lafāndi . | Please (come) to my house. |
| 9. tfāddal_māfna fassīname . | Please (come) with us to the movies. |
| 10. tfāddal . háyy_luraa? . | Here are the papers. |
| 11. tfāddal šarrāfna_falbēet . | Please come to see us. |
| 12. tfāddal ?əhki . | Please (go ahead and) speak (it's your turn). |
| 13. dāxlak šlōon_lhāale_hālla?_beššāam ? | (Please) how's the situation in Damascus? |
| 14. dāxlak fēen_lmāṭṭa ? | And where's the station? |
| 15. bālla fatīini_lwāra?a . | Would you mind giving me the paper, please. |

Sometimes dāxlak or bālla may be translated simply 'and' or 'by the way' since we often don't say "please" in asking information in English.

In Note 1.1 it was pointed out that many formulas have a stereotyped response. Several important responses of this kind have appeared in Units 1-4. One of them is ?ālla isālmak 'God keep you in safety'. This is used as a response to many formulas, chiefly to those containing the words salāam or salāame. The salāam(e) is echoed in the verb isāllem. Responses of this kind will be called echoic and will be discussed with further examples in later Units. Examples:

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. maf_ssalaame . | Goodbye (said by person staying). |
| --?ālla_isālmak . | --Goodbye. |
| 2. lhāmdella_fassalaame . | I'm glad to see you're back safely. |
| | --Thank you. |

3. nšaalla mənšuufak bessalaame .

--ʔalla isálmak .

I hope you get back safely and we see you again. ("God willing we see you in safety.")

--Thank you.

4. šúu_sárló ? saláamto !

--ʔalla isálmak .

What happened to him? I hope everything turns out all right ("His safety!")

--Thank you.

Section D. Exercises

1. Transformation sentences. The following sentences are all in the third person masculine, the "he" form. Read through them, make sure you understand them, and then go through them again changing all the forms to feminines, i.e. replacing "he" with "she".

1. byéʔra_ʔárabí .
2. byéštáǵel_maf_ʔaxúu .
3. byéktob laʔabúu_uʔəmmo .
4. byéži_máʔna ʔassiinama .
5. bisáafed ʔaxúu_nnažžáar .
6. byékwí_lǵasiil .
7. byéržaf_ʔalbēet .
8. byáakol bəlmáʔfam .
9. byáʔmel_kélši_mniin .
10. byéšrab_bíira_bəʔáhwe .
11. byéŋki_ʔárabí ʔáyyeb .
12. byéʔlaf_máʔna .
13. byaʔʔiina_leertēen .
14. biʔúul_ʔənno ʔaxúu_múu_žáaye .
15. byetʔállam_lʔárabí .
16. byánzel_bəlmárže .
17. binébb_ʔáhlo ktíir .

18. biŋaawen_ʔabuu lamma_biklun_faadi .
19. biŋlib_ŋraado men_ŋand_xaliil .
20. biŋuuf_ʔammo káll_ŋamŋa .

2. Transformation sentences B. Change these questions from second person masculine to feminine, then answer them. Don't forget to use feminine forms of adjectives when appropriate.

1. btáŋref_tətbox_təbx_ŋarabi ?
2. ʔeemta_betklun_faadi ?
3. ŋuu_rana təŋmel_bəkra ?
4. mǎŋ_miin_betruun_lehniik ?
5. ŋuu_ʔəsmak ?
6. kiif_ŋaalak ?
7. bəŋəbb_tetŋállam_frensaawi ?
8. ŋuu_bəddak_tsəawi ?
9. btáŋref_təʔra ?
10. bəŋəbb_təbʔa_hoon ?
11. btəŋki_ʔəŋgliizi_ŋii ?
12. nŋáalla_mabŋuut ?
13. laween_bəddak_truun ?
14. kám_yoom_ranataʔod_ŋandhon ?
15. ʔanu_saaŋa_btəŋi ?
16. ŋand_miin_bəŋəbb_təŋtəŋel ?

3. Questions and Answers.

1. wéen_btəŋtəŋel ?
2. ʔeemta_biŋlibu_ləŋraad ?

3. šúu_bëddak_yàaha_tàfme1 ?
4. ?ánti wéen_tfállàmti_tè?ri_utèktbi ?
5. ?éemta_ranatèržafu ?
6. mīin_ranaysàawi_ttàxt ?
7. ?éemta_ranatsšufha ?
8. kām_sàafa_btèb?u_hòon ?
9. ?addéeš_šèmrak ?
10. la?ánu_bèet_mèrruun ?
11. ?énte ?éemta ?žīit ?
12. wéen_bëddak_tnàam ?
13. ?éemta_ranatèži ?
14. šand_mīin_bèdkon_tèštèglu ?
15. b?addéeš_halžràad ?
16. šúu_bèdo^d_yàahon_yàfmlu ?
17. fhémt_šaléena ?
18. ?axúuk wéen bèddo inàam ?
19. ?ánu_tàbx_bethèbb_?áktar ? l?afránži yèmma_lšárabi ?
20. mīin_?àafed_šàndkon ?

4. Sentence building. Make up five sentences containing each expression below, that is a total of twenty-five sentences:

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. šala_hallóon | 'in that case' |
| 2. ta?riiban | 'about, approximately' |
| 3. báss | 'only, but' |
| 4. léek | 'behold!, etc.' |
| 5. yáfnī | 'that is, well' |

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Two friends meet.

J. marnaba_yaa_ʔaḥmad .

A. marnabtéen . kiif_ṣṣāḥna ?

J. mniina . uʔante_kiif_ḥāalak ?

A. ʔāal . lawéen_bèddak_trūḥ_ḥāllaʔ ?

J. bèddi_šūuf_rəžžāal rūḥ_māʔo šūuf_béet .

A. xéer_nšāalla ? šuu_bèddak_tətrok_lʔotéel ?

J. ʔée_nāʔam . ʔəžžāni_xābar_mən_mārti, lanatəṣal bāʔd_žəmʔa .

A. ʔala_hallōon byəlzamak_ṣāanʔa .

J. ʔée, dāxlak . btəʔréfli_šii_wāande_mniina ?

ʔāna maa_bāʔref bāss_bžənnəllak ṣaanəʔti_btəʔref .

J. lāaken_bèddi_wāande təʔref_təḥki_šwāyyet_ʔənglīzi .

A. ʔāna bʔəlha_ḥèek .

J. kätter_xèerak . ḥāllaʔ_lāazem_rūḥ . xāaṭrak .

A. maʔ ssalāame .

J. ʔālla_isālmak .

Conversation 2. They meet again later.

A. māsa lxéer .

J. māsa_lxeerāat, šūu_ṣāar_māʔak ?

A. saanəʔti_bəʔtəʔul fii_tānt_ʔīidha wāande_mniina .

J. hīyye_ḥāllaʔ ʔāaʔde_ʔand_ḥāda_šii ?

A. nāʔam . bāss_lanatətrok_nnāas ḥālli_ʔāaʔde_ʔāndhon .

fii_ʔāndhon ulāad_ktīir .

J. ?éemta_bèddak_džiiba ?

A. yémken yaa_bèkra yaa_báfd_bàkra .

J. láa_twaaxèzni ?àna_ktiir_mamndunak .

A. stáǵfiru_llàa . ?àna_bèddi_ǵárad_?èlak .¹

J. ?àlla_yénfazak .

Conversation 3. Jones interviews the maid.

A. háyy_lbènt yalli_?eltéllak_?ànha .

J. tfáddalu strínu, šúu_?èsmek_yaa_bènti ?

N. nabíiha yaa_béek .

J. ?addéeš_?émrek ?

N. ?ešríin_sène .

J. btá?erfi_yaa_nabíiha ?àna_?amerkáani . bènki_?àrabi_šwayye bàss_márti máa_btènki_?àrabi_?ábadan .

N. hàada_máa_bihèmm_yaa_béek ?àna_bá?ref_šwayyet_?enǵlizi . ubá?ra ubéktob_?àrabi_táyyeb .

J. héek_?áal, wešlòonek_bšèǵl_lbèet ?

N. wálla_yaa_béek máa_bèddi_?ènki_?an_nàali . láaken_b?éllak_?ànni_bá?ref_kálši_btá?mlo_ššàanfa .

A. yaa_nabíiha, márt_méster_žòons mára_ndiife_ktiir_ubetnèbb_iklun_bèetha_dáa?iman_ndiif .

N. m?ákkad, u?àna_?èlkon_?aliyyi_?eštáǵel_mniin .

J. yaa_nabíiha_btá?erfi_tàtboxi_tàbx_?afrànzi ?

N. bá?ref_šwayye, láaken_yaa_béek_tàtbox_múu_šèǵl_ššàanfa . ?iza_betnèbb_b?úul_la?àmmi_tèži_tàtbox .

la?ànha_hiyye_?aššiyye_mniina .

J. welǵasíil ?

.. ?àna_yaa_béek_béǵsel_ubékwi_ubémsan_websáawi_ttxdut . yá?ni_káll_šèǵl_lbèet .

¹?àna_bèddi_ǵárad_?èlak . I want to do something for you.

J. ṭayyeb mniin . ʔaddées_bèddek_beššàhr ?

N. hálli_btaʔtii bikúun_mniin .

J. láʔ . bèddi ʔáʔref . láazem_tʔuuli_ʔénti .

N. xamsiin_lèera .

J. mniin, baʔtiiki káll ʔáwwal_šàhr .²

ʔénti_betnèbbi_tnàami_ʔanna wèlla_ʔand_ʔàhlek ?

N. ʔandkon_ʔánsan bàss_brúunbšúuf_ʔánli beššàhr_marra .

J. ʔaal . ʔàna_bèddi_yáakibáʔd_šii žemʔteen .

N. ʔámrak_yaa_bèek . xáaʔrak .

J. maʔ_ssaláame .

²káll ʔáwwal_šàhr 'the first of every month'.

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔáasəd (f ʔáasde)	sitting	hiyye	she
ʔafránʒi (adj)	Western, European, Occidental	háda	anyone
ʔáhl	people	hátta	until
ʔáhsan	better	-katter	increase
ʔárd (f)	ground, floor	kénti	you (fem) were
ʔéemta	when	-ktob	write
ʔénti	you (fem)	-kwi	iron
ʔíid (f; pl ʔidéen, ʔayáadi)	hand	láaken	but
ʔémm (f; pl ʔémmáat or ʔémmaháat)	mother	lakáan	therefore, then, of course
ʔangliizi (adj)	English	lóon	color, form
-ʔra	read	ʔála_hallóon	according to that, in that case
-ʔʔod or ʔʔod	sit down, stay	-lzam	be necessary
báss	only, but, when	mʔákkad (adj)	certain, certainly
békra	tomorrow	mára (ft; pl neswáan)	woman, wife
bént (f; pl banáat)	girl, daughter, maid	márra (ft)	time
dáayman or dáaʔiman	always, frequently	matlúub	requested, required
frénsáawi (adj)	French	-mbeset	be happy
ǵárad	thing, need	miin or méen	who, whom
ǵasiil or xasiil	laundry	-mken	be possible
-ǵsel or -xsel	wash	yémken	it's possible, maybe
-hemm	concern, be of importance to	-msah	wipe
		-naam	sleep

náas (<u>pl</u>)	people	yáa ... yáa	either ... or
nabíiha	Nabiha (pr. name)	záat	self, same
ndíif (<u>adj</u>)	clean	ʔaššiyye (<u>ft</u>)	housekeeper, cook
-rda	be satisfied (b-with)	-ʔni	mean, signify
-redd	give back, bring back, return (something)	yáʔni	it means, that is; well, mmm...
rxíiʃ (<u>adj</u>)	cheap, reasonable		
-saawi	do, make		
-striih	rest, be seated		
-sʔal	ask		
śáanʔa (<u>ft</u> ; <u>pl</u> -aat or sennáaf)	maid		
śáhr	month		
śéǵl	work, job		
taʔriiban	approximately		
táht	under, underneath, down		
tamáaman	perfectly, exactly		
táxt (<u>pl</u> txút)	bed		
-tʃallam	learn		
tábx	cooking		
-tbox	cook		
wálla	(by God), indeed, certainly		
wélla	or		

SPOKEN SYRIAN ARABIC

UNIT 4 - Additional Sentences

1. benti ʒʒgiire lessaaha telmiize || My little girl is still a student.
2. ʔemmi betnaam ssaaʔa ʔaʕara lmasa. || My mother goes to sleep at ten p. m.
3. ʕaanʕetna maa btaʔref laa teʔra || Our maid doesn't know how to read or
wlaa tektob || write.
4. baʔd ʕwayye berʕaʔ baakol || I'll come back and eat in a little while.
5. xaliil beddo iwaddi lfawaaki ʔalbeet || Khalil wants to take the fruit home.
6. laazmak ʔaʕʕiyye teʔbox taʔx ʔarabi || You need a housekeeper to cook Arabic
wʔafranʕi || and European style.
7. lbeet lyoom muu ndiif || The house isn't clean today.
8. hallaʔ ʕsaanʔa bteʕi wbetaawii || The maid will come and do it right away.
9. byetlaʔabiʔidha teʔbox ? || Will she be able to cook? (Will it go
up in her hand that she cook?)
10. lakaan, bteʔbox mniif || Sure, she cooks well.
11. stannaani taht hallaʔ benzal || Wait for me downstairs, I'll be right
down.
12. ʔemha mara kbiire maa bteʔder || Her mother's an old woman. She can't
teʔbox || "cook.
13. ʕuu bedʕenn xaliil byerʔa yeʕi maʕna || What do you think? Will Khalil be
willing to come with us?
14. nʕalla beʕi webzuurak maʔ ʔabi || I hope I can come and visit you with my
father.
15. ʔiza bterʕa beʕʕahr ʔeʕrin leera || If she'll be satisfied with 20 pounds a
bikuun mniif || month, that'll be fine.
16. laa twaaxezni ʔana tʔaxxart ktiir || Excuse me, I'm quite late.
17. ʔeemta beddo yerʕaʔ men saʔrto || When will he come back from his trip?
18. maʔak taʕtiini ʔaʕr leeraat ? || Can you give me ten pounds?
19. breddellak yaahon baʔd ʕamʔa || I'll give it back to you in a week.
20. marto bedha beet kbiir || His wife wants a large house.
21. bteʔder taaxod halʕraad ʔalbeet ? || Can you take these things home?
22. nabiha ndiife ktiir bʕeʕlha || Nabiha is very clean in her work.
23. bass byelzam taʔref tekwi mniif || But she'll have to know how to iron well.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 24. m'akkad 'iza btafref 'engliizi
bikuun 'ansan | Of course if you know English it will
be better. |
| 25. beddak taakol hoon wella hniik ? | Do you want to eat here or over there? |
| 26. zaat ššii hoon wella hniik | It's all the same - here or there. |
| 27. byezhar bedha tetrok la'anno ššēgel
ktiir | It looks as though she wants to leave
because there's too much work. |
| 28. ta'riiban kam yoom beddak teffod
bbeeruut ? | Approximately how many days do you want
to stay in Beirut? |
| 29. 'addeš beddak ikuun fəmrha ? | How old you want her to be? |
| 30. bihemni ššēgel 'aktar mnelfəmr | I'm more concerned about work than
about age. |
| 31. 'ana daa'iman baakol bihal matfam | I always eat in this restaurant. |
| 32. hal'maaš loono muu mniin | The color of this cloth is no good. |
| 33. kelši b'ellak yaa laazem tafmlo | Everything I tell you, you have to do. |
| 34. lbass byemro' men 'eddaam baabna | The bus passes in front of our door. |
| 35. tfaddalu lafanna bekra | Come and see us tomorrow. |
| 36. šebila waande tsaa'edha | Bring her someone (fem.) to help her. |
| 37. hayy 'awwal marra beši fiha fala
hassinama | This is the first time I have gone to
this movie. |

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| morning | sabáan |
| 1. Good morning, Abu Afif. | sabaan_lxeer 'abu_fafiif . |
| light | núur |
| sir | siidi |
| 2. Good morning, sir. | sabaan_nnuur yaa_siidi . |
| service | xédme |
| 3. What can I do for you? | 'amr . xedme |
| vegetables | xédra |
| fresh | táaza |
| 4. Are your vegetables fresh today? | taaza_xedrtak lyoom ? |
| I contain | bəhwa |
| shop | dəkkāan or dəkkāane |
| 5. You know I keep only fresh things in my shop. | btafrefni yaa_beek maa_bəhwa_bdəkkaanti |
| from where | 'ella_ttaaza . |
| 6. Where do you get your vegetables? | mneen |
| places | mneen_bedfiib xedrtak ? |
| 7. From the best places in town. | maḥallaat |
| prices | mən_?ansan_lmaḥallaat bihaibalad . |
| 8. What are the prices today? | 'asfaar |
| kilo | šuu_l'asfaar lyoom ? |
| beans | kíilo |
| fifty | luubye |
| Italian squash (koosa) | xamsiin |
| seventy | kúusa |
| 9. Beans are 50 a kilo and Italian squash 70. | sabfiin |
| | kiilo_lluubye bxamsiin welkuusa_ |
| | bsabfiin . |

expensive

gāali

10. What's this? That's quite expensive.

Šuu_haada ? Šii_gāali_ktiir .

eggplants

beetanžaan

tomatoes

banadoora

11. Do you have eggplants and tomatoes?

fii_fandak beetanžaan wbanadoora ?

command!

ʔmōor

12. We have everything, sir. Just ask for it.

ʔanna_kalši_yaa_beek . bass_ʔmōor .

choose

nāʔʔi

two kilos

kiiloyēen

face

wāšš

13. Pick out about two kilos of tomatoes from on top for me.

naʔʔiili_manʔalwəšš Šii_kiiloyeen_banadoora .

14. Anything else, sir?

geero_yaa_beek ?

weigh

ziin

15. And weigh me out about three kilos of Italian squash.

wzanli_kamaan_Šii_tlat_kiiloyaet kuusa .

container

wāafa

16. Do you have something to carry the things in?

fii_fandak_waafa ?

basket

sālle

seeing for you

šaayəflak

it has room for

tāsaʔ

17. I have this basket, but I don't think it's going to hold them.

maʔi_hassalle bass_šaayəflak
maa_lanatasəʔhon .

18. It doesn't matter.

maʔlee_Šii .

I put

bəʔtʔ

remaining

bāaʔi

bag

kʔis

because they

laʔānhon

light

xaffiʔ

19. I'll put the rest in a paper bag,
because they're light.

I send

she buys

20. Tomorrow I'll send you the maid to
buy a little fruit (for us).

you want

21. What fruit will you want?

I order

22. So I can order them for you today.

watermelons

heavy

23. I want a heavy watermelon weighing
about five kilos.

bananas

apples

24. And also four kilos of bananas and
two of apples.

you forget

over or above or up

25. Don't forget to put the bananas on
top of the apples.

I pay

advance

26. Would you like me to pay for them
in advance?

why?

hurry

27. And why the hurry, sir?

whatever

28. You can pay at any time.
enter (on a list)

account

29. All right. Put them on the account
then.

5.3r
107
bneettellak_lbaa?i bkiis_wara?
la?anhon xfaaf .

?abfat

teſtəri

bekra lana?abfatlak_sſaanfa
lateſtriilna_ſwayyet_fawaaki .

betriid

ſuu_lfawaaki yalli_betriidha ?

wagſſi

lanatta_wagſſiilak_ſaleeha mnaalyoom .

battifx

t?fil

beddi_battifxa_t?iile teſlaſ ſii_xams_
kiiloyaſat .

mooz

teffaan

wkamaan ?arbaſ_kiiloyaſat_mooz
wetneen_teffaan .

tansa

f6o?

laa_tansa_maa_tneſt_lmoozaſat foo?
ttaffaanaſat .

?adfaſ

ſalaſ

betnebb_?adfaſlak_ha?hon ſalaſ ?

leeſ

ſaſale

wleeſ_halfaſale_yaa_beek ?

makaan .

?eenta_makaan bteſfaſli .

?ayyed

naſab

ſayyeb . ?ayyedhon_lakaan_ſaluſaab .

fifteen
 sixteen
 seventeen
 eighteen
 nineteen
 twenty
 thirty
 forty
 fifty
 sixty
 seventy
 eighty
 ninety
 hundred

uqiya (200 gr.)

stuffing

31. I want an uqiya of meat for stuffing.

you can

you cut

shank pieces

soup

32. Can you cut me an uqiya of soup meat?

33. Yes, indeed.

you remove

xamsat

satat

sabat

tmant

tasat

rafiin

tlaatiin

arbiin

xamsiin

settiin

sabfiin

tmaaniin

tasfiin

miyye

w'iyye

maññi

baddi_w'iit_lahme lalməññi .

btəder or btağder or btənsen

tə'ta

moozaat

šooraba

bta'der_tə'ta'li šii_w'iyyet_moozaat
 laššoorabā ?

ʔala-ʔeeni .

tʔiin

aside	ʕāla_ʕānab
steak	bəftēek
34. And put aside two uqiyas of steak for me, too.	wʔamli ʕāla_ʕānab ʕii_wʔiiteen_bəfteek kamaan .
cattle	bāʔar
sheep	ʕānam
35. Do you want beef or lamb?	bəddak_yaahon_baʔar wella_ʕānam ?
36. Which do you think would be better?	ʔanu_bəʕʕuuf biq <u>uun</u> _ʔaħsan ?
you (pl)	ʔəntu
Americans	ʔameerkāan
more	ʔaktar
37. You Americans like beef better.	ʔəntu_lʔameerkaan bəʔəbbu_lahm_lbaʔar
he sells	ʔaktar .
few <u>or</u> a little	bibīiʕ
	ʔallil
38. But here they don't sell very much beef.	laaken_ʕanna_hoon maa_bibīiʕu lahm_lbaʔar ʔalla_ʔallil .
they prefer	bifādlu
39. And people prefer lamb.	wənnəas bifādlu_lahm_lʕānam .
40. Saturday	ssābt
Sunday	lʔāħad
Monday	ttanēen
Tuesday	ttalāata
Wednesday	lʔārbʕa
Thursday	lxamīis
Friday	lʕāmaʕa

Section B. Pronunciation

5.7

1. Light and heavy consonants (t, d, s, l; ṭ, ḍ, ṣ, ḷ, etc.)

As you have learned, in Arabic most consonants come in pairs, light and heavy. The heavy (hooked letter) sounds, as you remember, are lower in pitch and usually have a characteristic "hollow" sound. The nearest parallel in English is the pair of sounds spelled "l". For example, the l of "Bill" is quite different from the l of "Billy". The l sound of "Billy" is similar to the Arabic light l (e.g. sālle 'basket'). Try to say the two English l sounds by themselves. Notice that the l of "Bill" sounds a little as though you were saying a "oo" or "w" at the same time; this is characteristic of most heavy consonants in Arabic. It is the result of raising the back part of the tongue while you are making the consonant sound; while the tip of your tongue is making the necessary stoppage or narrowing of the air passage to produce the consonant, the back of the tongue rises too, adding this "u-coloring" to the sound produced. The technical name for this process is velarization and heavy consonants may also be called velarized consonants. This action of the tongue and the resulting timbre of the voice often carries over into the vowel preceding or following a heavy consonant and modifies the sound of the vowel as well.

Here are pairs of words with light and heavy consonants; only t, d, s, and l examples are listed here; other light-heavy pairs are discussed in Unit 10.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

*ṭiin	'figs'	*ṣāam	(pr. name)
*ṭiin	'clay'	*ṣāam	'fasted'
bisīir	'goes'	*bāllaṣ	'began'
bisīir	'becomes'	bāllaṣ	'please'
*ḍāll	'directed'	*ṭāalet	'third'
*ḍāll	'stayed'	*ṭāaleṭ	'going up'

2. Mid back vowel (o, oo)

The vowel sound represented by o, oo in the spelling is similar to the vowel sound of English words like low, go, ch, etc. As in the case of e, ee, however, (see 3B) there are two major differences between Arabic o, oo and the similar English vowels: (1) the Arabic vowel is "pure", that is, without any w-glide at the end; and (2) the Arabic vowel comes both short and long, while the English vowel is always relatively long.

As in making the ee, you put your tongue in the right position and HOLD IT. For the oo you must also hold your lips steady; if they come together at the end of the w-sound, you are saying the English vowel and not the Arabic one. Compare the following Arabic and English words and practice the differences.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

<u>Arabic</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Similar English word</u>
l ^o on	color	lo <u>an</u>
had ^o ol	these	the do <u>le</u>
ʔ ^o oor	order	a mo <u>re</u>
h ^o on	here	ho <u>ne</u>
y ^o om	day	ro <u>am</u>
m ^o oz	bananas	kn <u>ows</u>

In Damascus Arabic there is also a very short single o (i.e. o and oo parallel to e and ee). It is the Arabic oo cut very short. Examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

ʔot ^o el	hotel
y ^o ʔbox	he cooks
ʔ ^o asmo	his name
ki ^o ilo	kilo
ba ^o akol	I eat
bt ^o ʔʔod	she sits
ki ^o loyaat	kilos

This short o is especially hard at the end of a word where the English speaker has a tendency either to hold it too long (then it sounds like a long oo) or have his tongue too high (then it sounds like u). Here are words for practice:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FOUR

ʒi ^o ibo	'bring it'	bi ^o ʒu ^o fo	'he sees him'
ʒi ^o ibu	'bring (pl)'	bi ^o ʒu ^o fu	'they see'
	b ^o ento		'his daughter'
	ʔ ^o antu		'you (pl)'

3. The neutral vowel e.

The sound represented in the spelling by a is very variable. It is always somewhere between i and u, but the exact value depends on the consonants on either side of it and on the vowel of the following syllable. Often this a vowel sounds very much like the English vowel of "just now" as said in ordinary conversation—a sound unlike the i of "gist", the u of "put" or the u in "a just man". At other times it sounds like the i of "bit" said with rounded lips (i.e. about like the German i in "Hitte"). The only way to master this sound is to listen to an Arabic speaker and imitate him.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FIVE

ʔ <u>ā</u> mmi	'my mother'	bi <u>r</u> ʔu <u>h</u>	'goes'
ʔ <u>ā</u> mmo	'his mother'	*zu <u>h</u> éer	'Zohair'
by <u>ā</u> lzam	'it's necessary'	te <u>s</u> āʔhon	'it holds them'
by <u>ā</u> ʔbox	'he cooks'		

In a large part of the Syrian area this a vowel does not exist and instead there is either i or u. In many places (e.g. Beirut) there is i almost everywhere where there is a in Damascus. For this reason it is usually better to err on the side of having your a sound too much like i rather than too much like u.

The most important thing to note about this vowel is the appearance in stressed syllables. A statement that holds true almost without exception is: **WHENEVER (from related forms) YOU WOULD EXPECT A SHORT VOWEL OTHER THAN a (i.e., e, i, o, u) IN A STRESSED SYLLABLE, YOU FIND INSTEAD THE NEUTRAL VOWEL a (in Beirut i).** You have seen some instances of this:

wāʔʔ <u>ā</u> ef + -l <u>a</u>	=	waʔʔ <u>ā</u> fl <u>a</u>
btāax <u>o</u> d + -n <u>i</u>	=	btaax <u>ē</u> d <u>n</u> i
šāay <u>e</u> f + -l <u>a</u> k	=	šaay <u>ā</u> fl <u>a</u> k
zī <u>i</u> n + -l <u>i</u>	=	z <u>ē</u> n <u>i</u> (for zinli see Note 4.5)
šū <u>u</u> f + -l <u>a</u> k	=	š <u>ē</u> fl <u>a</u> k (for šuflak see Note 4.5)

BUT

šā <u>a</u> r + -l <u>a</u> k	=	š <u>ā</u> rl <u>a</u> k
bt <u>ā</u> ʔt <u>ā</u> ʔ + -l <u>a</u>	=	bt <u>ā</u> ʔt <u>ā</u> ʔl <u>a</u>

Section C. Analysis

5.10

Note 5.1 Command forms. Scattered through the Basic Sentences of Units 1-5 have been about twenty Command Forms of verbs. The masculine singular Command Form of many verbs is identical with the stem of the Prefix Tense. This is true when the stem begins with a single consonant followed by a vowel. Examples from previous units:

- | | | |
|------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1.41 | <u>ruu</u> g-dəgri . | Go straight ahead. |
| 1.16 | ʔiid_yalli_ʔəlto . | Repeat what you said. |
| 2.32 | wāʔʔef_lašəflak . | Wait till I see. |
| 1.18 | dəlni_ʔalʔotəel . | Direct me to the hotel. |

In this unit ziin 'weigh', nāʔʔi 'choose', ʔəyyed 'charge' occurred.

For verbs of which the Prefix Tense stem begins with two consonants the masculine singular command form consists of the stem with the STEM VOWEL LENGTHENED. Examples from Basic Sentences:

- | | | | |
|------|-------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1.16 | <u>ʔmeel</u> _maʔruuf . | Please. | (stem -ʔmel) |
| 2.29 | lfəet_ffiha . | Turn into it. | (stem -lfet) |
| 5.12 | bəss_ʔmoor . | Just ask for it. | (stem -ʔmor) |

With the verbs "eat" or "take" the ʔ is dropped in the command forms: kool 'eat!', xood 'take!'

One command form was a little different:

- | | | |
|------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1.15 | ʔəhki_ʔala_məhla . | Speak slowly. |
|------|--------------------|---------------|

Verbs with a stem consisting of two consonants plus a vowel such as - ki, - ra, etc. (see Note 4.4) have a command form consisting of - plus the stem. Examples:

- | | | | |
|-------|--------------|-------|-------|
| ʔəʔra | read | ʔəhki | speak |
| ʔəbʔa | stay | ʔəkwī | iron |
| ʔərda | be satisfied | | |

The command form of the verb "come" is irregular: tāʔa or taʔaal

Several examples of plural Command Forms have appeared in Basic Sentences:

- | | | |
|------|--------------------|------------------|
| 2.19 | tfəddalu . | Please (get in). |
| 3.46 | šarfūuna_ʔalbeet . | Visit us. |
| 4.23 | striimu . | Be seated. |

The -i and -u suffixes for feminine and plural are added to the Command Forms just as they are to the second person forms of the Prefix Tense. For example:

Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Pl.
rúuH	rúuHi	rúuHu
dəll	dəlli	dəllu
wáʔʔef	wáʔfi	wáʔfu
ziin	ziini	ziimu
náam	náami	náamu
sáafed	sáafdi	sáafdu
ʔméel	ʔmeli	ʔmolu
ʔmóor	ʔmori	ʔmuru
tláaf	tláfi	tláfu
kóol	káli	kálu
xóod	xédi	xédu

Notice that in words like wáʔʔef, sáafed, etc. where the masculine singular Command Form is identical with the stem of the Prefix Tense, a stem vowel e drops when -i or -u is added. In the case of verbs of which the stem vowel is lengthened, such as ʔméel, ʔmóor, tláaf, etc. the stem vowel is shortened when -i or -u is added. In such cases -aa- is shortened to -a-, making the stem of the Command Form identical with the stem of the Prefix Tense (e.g. tláfi, byətláʔ). But -ee- and -oo- are shortened to -e- (e.g. ʔmeli but byəʔmel, ʔmori but byəʔmor) in accordance with the change described in the Pronunciation section of this Unit.

As in the prefix tense forms (see Note 4.4) verb stems ending in a vowel drop this final vowel when the -i for feminine or -u for plural is added. Examples:

ʔéʔra	ʔéʔri	ʔéʔru
ʔéHki	ʔéHki	ʔéHku

The full imperatives for "come" are:

táʔa (taʔáal) táʔi (taʔáali) táʔu (taʔáalu)

The following sentences contain Command Forms:

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1) nzəlu māfna . | Go down (pl) with us. |
| 2) ʔməli maʔruuf ʔiidi yalli ʔəlti. Please repeat (fem) what you said. | |
| 3) betražžāak wəʔʔef hoon . | Please stop here. |
| 4) ruuh žəbli ssagāʔyer . | Go get me the cigarettes. |
| 5) wəʔsi ʔaləehon hāllaʔ . | Order them now. |
| 6) tʔaddal, ʔʔood ¹ . | Please sit down. |
| 7) nətʔ lkiis hniik . | Put the bag over there. |
| 8) msəhi lʔārd . | Wash (fem) the floor. |
| 9) bʔaat ʔsāanfa lʔāndo . | Send the maid to his place. |
| 10) saaʔadli ʔāxi ʔiza btəʔder . | Help my brother for me if you can. |
| 11) ʔuulha mārta taanye. | Say it again. |
| 12) ʔayyed kəlši ʔaləsāab . | Charge everything. |
| 13) ʔʔədu warāahon ¹ . | Sit (pl) in back of them. |
| 14) ʔaʔiina yāahon . | Give them to us. |
| 15) ʔməlu maʔruuf dʔaʔdulna lyoom . | Please pay us today. |

Note 5.2 Feminine T-nouns. In previous Analysis sections (on Notes 2.6 and 3.7) Feminine T-nouns have been discussed, and it has been pointed out that they end sometimes in -e, sometimes in -a. The factor which determines whether the ending is -e or -a is the nature of the immediately preceding consonant. Familiar examples of both:

¹ the command forms of the verb "sit" are usually said without the ʔ at the beginning : ʔood, ʔədi, ʔədu instead of ʔʔood, ʔʔədi, ʔʔədu.

ʔaa <u>s</u> de	s <u>e</u> ne	ʔarb <u>ʃ</u> a	sáb <u>ʃ</u> a
ʔáh <u>w</u> e	šwáy <u>y</u> (e)	batá <u>a</u> ʔa	sá <u>f</u> ra
bina <u>a</u> ye	tá <u>a</u> nye	battí <u>i</u> xa	siigá <u>a</u> ra
dára <u>ʒ</u> e	tlá <u>a</u> te	daʔii <u>ʔ</u> a	šáan <u>ʃ</u> a
há <u>y</u> e	tráan <u>(y)</u> e	há <u>d</u> ra	šá <u>h</u> ha
há <u>a</u> le	uʔí <u>y</u> e	há <u>m</u> ra	tés <u>ʃ</u> a
kbí <u>r</u> e	wá <u>h</u> le	le <u>r</u> a	wá <u>a</u> ʃa
kfa <u>a</u> ye	wila <u>a</u> ye	ma <u>r</u> a	
lá <u>f</u> te	xá <u>m</u> se	ma <u>r</u> ra	wá <u>r</u> aʔa
lá <u>h</u> ne	xá <u>d</u> ne	nabíi <u>h</u> a	žán <u>ʃ</u> a
ma <u>y</u> ye	ʃašši <u>y</u> e	sa <u>a</u> ʃa	
salá <u>a</u> me	ʃáz <u>a</u> le		
sá <u>l</u> le	ʃé <u>e</u> le		

When the immediately preceding consonant is a throat consonant (x, ǧ, ɣ, ʕ, h, ʔ) or a heavy (velarized) consonant (ṭ, ḍ, ṣ, ẓ,) the Ft ending is -a. After r the ending is usually -a but sometimes (especially after -ii-) it is -e. After any other consonant (b, d, f, g, k, l, m, n, s, š, t, w, y, z,) is -e. Notice that after -ayy/the ending -e is often dropped in Damascus and other areas.

or -aay

There are a few ft nouns which do not fit the -e/-a statement above. For example:

ʔaméer <u>k</u> a	siinama
ʔuul <u>a</u>	šóoraba
bíir <u>a</u>	

There are very few Ft nouns like this, and they are usually either foreign loan words (ʔaméerka, bíira, siinama, šóoraba) or else are irregular, in some other way too (ʔuula as feminine of ʔawwal instead of an expected ʔáwwale).

Note 5.3 Collectives. Study the following phrases from Basic Sentences paying special attention to the underlined words:

<u>kiis_wára?</u>	a paper bag
<u>ʃatʃina_warʔtæn</u>	give us two tickets (= piece of paper)
<u>battʃix</u>	watermelons
<u>bəddi_battʃixa</u>	I want a watermelon
<u>lám_lbaʔar</u>	beef (cow-meat)
<u>uʔiyyet_lámme ləlməhʃi</u>	an uqiya of meat for stuffing

Notice that wára?, lám, and battʃix denote 'paper (in general)', 'meat (in general)', watermelons (in general)' respectively and that the corresponding ft nouns wáraʔa, lámme, and battʃixa denote 'a (single piece of) paper', '(a specific quantity of) meat', 'a watermelon'.

In English every noun is either singular or plural (e.g. book: books; man: men) and any given noun has only these two forms, although a few nouns are only plural (e.g. scissors, oats), a very few are only singular, and a handful have two plurals (e.g. brother: brothers, brethren).

- (1) sáʃr: ʔasʃár masculine singular with corresponding plural
- (2) sáaʃa: saʃáat regular ft and plural
- (3) daʔiiʔa: daʔaayeʔ ft* with irregular plural
- (4) sáalle: sálal or salláat ft* with irregular plural
- (5) wáraʔ: wáraʔa: waraʔáat, uráaʔ masculine singular with collective meaning and Feminine T-noun singular and plural.

Nouns of this last type are called COLLECTIVES and will be entered in the Vocabularies under the masculine singular form marked (coll). Irregular plurals of the Feminine-T noun will be given.

Here are further examples of (coll) nouns:

báʔar 'cattle': báʔara 'cow': baʔaráat 'cows'

beetnžáan, 'eggplant(s) (in general)': beetnžáane 'eggplant':
beetnžáanaat 'eggplants'

battʃix 'watermelons (in general)': battʃixa 'a watermelon':
battʃixaat 'watermelons'

móoz 'bananas (in general)': móoze 'banana': moozáat 'bananas'

sáfar 'travelling': sáfra 'trip': safráat 'trips'

sámak 'fish (in general)': sámake '(one) fish': samakáat 'fishes'

teffáan apples (in general)': teffáana 'apple': teffaanaat 'apples'

xábz 'bread': xébbe 'piece of bread':

Here are sample sentences containing collectives:

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) bathebbi lbattíix ? | Do you (fem) like watermelons? |
| (2) máa fíi sanna wára? | We have no paper. |
| (3) byáaklu láam lbá'ar ktiir . | They eat beef a lot. |
| (4) halbattíixa múu táyybe . | This watermelon is no good. |
| (5) btaftíini xáms moozaat bnəss léera ? | Will you give me five bananas for half a pound? |
| (6) lwára' rxíis hóon . | Paper is cheap here. |
| (7) maa byáaklu teffaanaato . | They don't eat his apples. |

Note 5.4 Roots. Study the following groups of words you have learned:

(A) <u>šarfak</u>	(B) <u>tšarráfná</u>	(C) <u>mabšíut</u>	(D) <u>t'áxxart</u>
<u>byášref</u>	<u>ššáraf</u>	<u>btembəsti</u>	<u>met'áxxer</u>
<u>mášrfe</u>	<u>šarfúuna</u>	(E) <u>byeštšgel</u>	(F) <u>btšgšl</u>
		<u>šššgel</u>	<u>lšasílil</u>

Arabic words, as you have learned, often have prefixes and suffixes. The rest of the word, the STEM, may also be analyzed. The words in each group above have three consonants in common, e.g. š, r, f in šárfat, byášref, mášrfe. Notice also that all the words in each group have a certain meaning in common. Thus, all the words whose stem contains š, r, f have something to do with "knowing": šárfak "I cause you to know", byášref 'he knows', mášrfe 'knowledge, acquaintance'. This structure is characteristic of Arabic words. Most words in the language have a nucleus of this kind, usually consisting of three consonants, which has a fairly definite meaning. Such a nucleus will be called a ROOT and will be abbreviated √. Here are the roots and their meanings for the groups above:

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| A. √ šrf knowing | D. √ 'xr delay |
| B. √ šrf honor | E. √ šgl work |
| C. √ bšt happiness | F. √ gšl washing |

Note 5.5 Separate Personal Pronouns. You have learned the personal pronoun endings -i, -ak, -o, etc. From time to time you have also learned personal pronouns which are used separately as full words. The following expressions have occurred in the Basic Sentences of Units 1-5:

- | | | |
|------|--|--|
| 2.15 | u <u>ʔana</u> kamaan . | I do too. |
| 3.49 | u <u>ʔantu</u> bxéer . | And (good night) to <u>you</u> (p.) |
| 3.29 | <u>húwwe</u> taažer <u>ʔmáaš</u> ? | Is <u>he</u> a cloth dealer: |
| 1.9 | šlónak <u>ʔante</u> ? | How are <u>you</u> ? |
| 5.37 | <u>ʔantu</u> lʔameerkáan betnəbbu
laam lbaʔar . | <u>You</u> Americans like beef. |
| 2.35 | <u>nəna</u> lahanəbʔa hoon... | We're going to stay here... |
| 3.41 | ʔée <u>naʔam</u> <u>həne</u> bisaaʔduu bkélši . | Yes <u>they</u> help him in everything. |
| 4.35 | <u>ʔenti</u> betnəbbi tnaami ʔanna ? | Would <u>you</u> (fem) like to sleep in our house? |

Here is the complete list:

húwwe	he	ʔante	you	ʔana	I
hiyye	she	ʔenti	you (fem)		
həne	they	ʔantu	you (pl)	nəna	we

In Damascus the form hənnen and ləna are often used instead of həne and nəna.

Notice that these separate personal pronouns are used in two different ways. They are used independently as in the first three sentences above and they are used to emphasize a personal pronoun ending a prefix of the Prefix tense as in the remaining three sentences. Here are further examples of both uses.

- | | | |
|----|---|--------------------------|
| 1. | ʔana <u>nažžáar</u> . | I'm a carpenter. |
| 2. | <u>húwwe</u> <u>mawžúud</u> hállaʔ ? | Is he here now? |
| 3. | <u>həne</u> <u>mnéen</u> ? | Where are they from? |
| 4. | <u>šúu</u> <u>bədkon</u> <u>ʔantu</u> ? | What do you (pl) want? |
| 5. | <u>hiyye</u> <u>ʔaaʔde</u> <u>ʔandhon</u> . | She's staying with them. |

Note 5.6 Plurals. The plural of feminine t-nouns has been discussed in various notes. The regular feminine plural ends in -aat although often some other plural form exists, either in place of or in addition to this regular plural. The situation with masculine nouns is somewhat different. The kinds of plurals are so varied and hard to predict, that the best way to learn them is simply to find out the plural whenever you learn a new noun. Some nouns have no plural, some have one plural, some have several plurals. This is not quite as haphazard as it sounds ~~or~~ various aspects of the plural system will be described in following Units. For the time being, however, just try to learn the plurals as they come - there will be frequent exercises on them.

Adjectives have the most regular plurals. Most adjectives have a plural ending in -iin, for example:

m.	f.	pl.
1 mabsuut	mabsuuta	mabsuutiin
3 mawzuud	mawzuude	mawzuudiin
2 mamnuun	mamnuune	mamnuuniin
4 mafzuu?	mafzuu'a	mafzuu'iin
5 met'axxer	met'axra	met'axriin
1 laazem	laazme	laazmiin
2 šaayef	šaayfe	šaayfiin
3 žaaye	žaaye	žaayiin
3 taani	taanye	taanyiin
1 faadi	faadye	faadyiin
2 gaali	gaalye	gaalyiin
1 frensaawi	frensaawiyve	frensaawiiyyiin

Adjectives like kbiir (i.e. with -ii- between the second and third consonant of the root) have two plurals. Sometimes people say kbiiriin like other adjectives, but usually they say kbaar (i.e. with -aa- between the second and third consonants of the root). Examples:

kbiir	kbiire	kbaar
mniin	mniina	mnaaH
ndiif	ndiife	ndaaf
rxiiis	rxiiisa	rxaaS
t'iif	t'iife	t'aaI
xafiif	xafiife	xfaaf
zgiir	zgiire	zgaar

(a) Some masculine nouns have a plural in -aat like the feminine noun:

maḥall	place	maḥalláat
xéer	goodness, well-being	xeeráat
báas	bus	baaṣáat
'oteel	hotel	'oteeláat

(b) Some have a plural in -iin like adjectives:

nažžáar	carpenter	nažžaaríin
---------	-----------	------------

- (c) Probably the most frequent plural form contains a long vowel between the second and third consonant, most often -aa- (as with adjectives like kbiir), less often -uu-, rarely -ii-:

báab	door	bwáab
kíis	bag	kyáas
wálad	boy, child	uláad
loon	color	lwáan
rǎǎaal	man	rǎaal
sáir	price	ʔasʔaar
béet	house	byúut
xátt	line	xtúut

- (d) Some nouns, like yoom have a plural form beginning with ʔ which takes a t with the numbers 3-10:

yóom	day	ʔiyváam (xáms_tiyváam)
šáhr	month	ʔešhor (xáms_tāšhor)

- (e) Two feminine nouns which have a root consisting of only two consonants, have unusual plurals:

səne	year	sníin or sanawáat
māra	woman	nəswáan

Note 5.7 Numbers. In this Unit the numbers from eleven to one hundred are presented. The numbers from eleven to nineteen all end in -aʔš, which corresponds to English -teen and like English -teen (cf. ten) resembles the full form of the number ten (ʔašara). This -aʔš has two special features which must be noted: (1) it velarizes the immediately preceding -t- (the feminine t) of the numbers 3 to 9 and sometimes other consonants as well, (2) it has a special alternant ending in -ar when the number is followed immediately by the noun. Examples:

xámstáʔš	15	xámstáʔšar_səne	15 years
tǎntáʔš	18	tǎntáʔšar_səne	18 years

Notice that the words for 14, 17, 19 usually are said with only one ʔ, i.e. the ʔ of the basic number is dropped and the ʔ of the -aʔš remains:

ʔārbaʔáʔš	(less often ʔārbaʔtáʔš)
sabataʔs	(less often sábaʔtáʔš)
tasaʔaʔš	(less often tʔsaʔtáʔš)

Also - these "teens", like English "teens" may have the primary stress on either the first syllable or on the -aʔš syllable. You may use xámstáʔš, which is more usual when reciting the numbers, say from 10 to 20, or xámstáʔš which is more usual when actually telling how many of something.

The numbers 20, 30, 40, etc. are listed in full in the Basic Sentences of this Unit. The numbers in between 21-29, 31-39, etc. are formed by the unit number first and then the ten joined by "and": five-and-twenty, seven-and-thirty, etc. In these combinations the feminine t- ending of the numbers 3-10 is lengthened to -aa- (no matter whether it is -e or -a is the simple number)

and this -aa- has the principle stress. Here are the thirties, for example:

wáahed_wetlaatiin
 tnéen_wetlaatiin
 tlaatáa_wetlaatiin
 ʔarbíáa_wetlaatiin
 xamsáa_wetlaatiin
 settáa_wetlaatiin
 tmaanáa_wetlaatiin (less often tmaanyáa_wetlaatiin)
 tasíáa_wetlaatiin

In the numbers 21-29 the Arabic speakers of Damascus usually drop the w- 'and':

tlaatáa_ʔešriin (less often tlaatán_uʔešriin)
 xamsáa_ʔešriin (less often xamsáa_uʔešriin)

5.8 Relative Clauses. Study the following sentences carefully, paying special attention to the difference between the Arabic and English method of expressing "who, which, that", etc.,

- 4.1 btaṣraḥli šii bant btaʔʔod saanfa ? Do you know a girl who would be a maid?
- 4.22 hayy lbant yalli ʔaltallak ʔanha . This is the girl (that) I told you about.
- 4.12 tant ʔiidi waakde maa fii manha . I have one (that) you couldn't beat.
- 5.21 šuu lfawaaki yalli batriidha . What fruit (is it that) you will want?

All these sentences consist of two parts or clauses of which one, the relative clause, is related to a word in the main clause. Thus, ʔaltallak ʔanha and "I told you about" are relative clauses relating to lbant and "the girl." Arabic and English differ in that the relative clause in English is often incomplete, i.e. could not stand alone as a full sentence (e.g. "I told you about") while in Arabic the relative clause is always independent, i.e. could stand alone as a full sentence (e.g. ʔaltallak ʔanha "I told you about her".) In other words Arabic relative clauses often contain pronouns referring back to the noun of the main clause; English relative clauses do not. Examples:

hayy lwaraʔa yalli ranaʔaṣṭiik yaaha . This is the ticket I'm going to give you.

btaṣref lmaṣam yalli byaaklu fii ? Do you know the restaurant they eat in?

hayy ʔawwal marra baṣtaḡel fiiha . This is the first time I've worked.

Another difference between Arabic and English sentences with relative clauses lies in the use of yalli and "who, which, that", etc. In English we use "who, whose, whom" for people, "which" for things, and "that" for either; but we often don't put in any of these words at all. Most English sentences of this kind can be said in two or three ways:

- ... the girl I told you about
- ... the girl about whom I told you
- ... the girl that I told you about

and so on, all meaning about the same thing. In Arabic yalli is used for persons or things and is always used when the noun referred to is definite, i.e. has "the" with it. It is not used when the noun is indefinite, i.e. does not have "the." Read over the four examples at the beginning of the note again and be sure you understand this. The Arab says:

- "... a girl I told you about her." or
- "... the girl yalli I told you about her."

Here are additional examples:

1. hayy lhalla? halli bəhle? fando .
2. haada lbeet yalli bəddak yaa ?
3. šuu lfawaaki yalli bəthəbha ?
4. šloon lmaṭṭam yalli btaakol fii ?
5. baakol balmaṭṭam halli fala žanab l'oteel .
6. haada lbəṣṣ halli bənzal fii falbalad .
7. ššaanaṣa halli bafattelli yaaha mniina ktiir .
8. šaayof halbinaaye halli 'əddaam ləmmatṭa ?

Note that yalli and halli are used interchangeably in Damascus and that another form lli is widely used in Syrian Arabic. But all three of these have exactly the same meaning and are used in a sentence or not in accordance with the explanation given above.

Sometimes yalli is used in the sense of "he who, who(ever)" or "that which, what(ever)" as in the sentence:

šiddi yalli 'əlto

Repeat what ("that which") you said.

In this case there is a "him" pronoun ending referring back to the yalli itself . Here are further examples:

1. yalli maa byəži mafak tafa mafo .
2. maa bsaawi 'əlla halli birlido 'abi .
3. halli binəbb iruun fassiinama, yəki .

SECTION D. Exercises

1. Completion sentences A. Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the command form of the verb given in parenthesis in English. Then repeat the same sentence as though you were speaking to a woman, then to more than one person.

Sample sentence: (go) labeeto.

Answers: rúuh_labèeto.
rúuhi_labeeto.
rúuhu_labeeto.

1. (write) laʔabúuk..
2. (choose) fásr_kuusaayàat..
3. (drink) ʔáhwe..
4. (say) šúu_sàar_màʔak..
5. (pay) háʔʔ_ləgràad .
6. (visit) ʔámmad bbéeto..
7. (come) màʔi lanšúufo..
8. (give) hassáafa lanabiiha..
9. (repeat)_yalli_ʔelto .
10. (put)_lxàʔra bassáalle..
11. (order) ʔala_baṭṭiixa .
12. (greet) ʔala_ʔaxuuk .
13. (send) ššaansa ladžiib_ləgràad .
14. (see)_halbinaaye ʔaddáamak .
15. (cut) kiilo_lámme .
16. (be) režžaal_mniin .
17. (wait) balmháṭṭa .
18. (take) halbaṭṭiixaát laʔaxúuk .
19. (read) lwáraʔa ,
20. (bring) lfawàaki men_ʔándo.

2. Completion Sentences B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the appropriate forms of -l- 'to, for' as indicated by the English equivalent given in parenthesis, making any necessary changes in the preceding stem.

Sample sentence: ziin (for me) kiilo_mòoz .

Answer: zénli kiilo_mòoz .

1. naʔʔi (for me) kiiloyéen_teffāan .
2. ʒaar (him)_baʒʒāam ʒāʒr_təʒhor .
3. ʒiibo_(to the) bēet .
4. wassi (her) ʒala_ʒwāyyet_sāmak .
5. ʔtaaʒ (for us) uʔiitēen_lāume .
6. btaʔra (to me) ʒūu_fii_bəlwəraʔa ?
7. btəŋki (to them)_hāllaʔ yəmma_bəkra ?
8. bʒiib (to you) mən_ʒāndo sāmak ?
9. hiyye btaaxod (to him) halbatʔtiixāat .
10. ʒaayef (to you) rrəʒʒāal mūu_ʒāaye .
11. ʒūu_ranahʔuul (to him) ?
12. byəktob (to me) káll_ʒāhr .
13. tāʒa(let's)_nruuh(to) ʒāndo .
14. byəbʒat (to us) ləʒrāad bəkra .
15. mnədfaʒ (him) naʔʔ_lxəbz .
16. bʔuul (you feminine) bāʒd_bəkra .
17. (whose)méen_hassiigaarāat ?
18. baʒtiihon (to) ʔahmad .
19. kəlhon (mine) .
20. (to him) māʒna xamsiin_leera .

3. Completion Sentences C. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form (collective, singular, plural) of the noun equivalent to the English given in parenthesis.

1. bʔaddēēʒ_l(eggplant)_lyðom ?
2. fii_ʒāndak_(fish) ?
3. fii_ʒānna tmān (apples) . lakéll_waahed_mənna (apple) .
4. lāa_tānsa_təʒt l(bananas) fəoʔ_t(apples) .
5. laazəmni tlāt_(fish) .
6. ʒəfli kam (ticket) fii_mafak ?
7. bəddi_ʔəʒtəri ʒii_ʒəʒriin_(pears) .
8. xood hal(two plums) .
9. zənli kiilo_(pears) .
10. ʒatʔini xams_(eggplants) .

4. Numbers. Give the Arabic equivalent of the following:

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. four houses | 26. several days |
| 2. two years | 27. six doors |
| 3. nine carpenters | 28. five prices |
| 4. a hundred men | 29. four hotels |
| 5. three lines | 30. a hundred years |
| 6. six watermelons | 31. one Kusa |
| 7. five kilos | 32. two places |
| 8. two uqiyas | 33. five bananas |
| 9. ten colors | 34. seven days |
| 10. two houses | 35. twenty fish |
| 11. six children | 36. one tomato |
| 12. ten baskets | 37. four uqiyas (see Vocab. for pl) |
| 13. three bags | 38. three years |
| 14. eight months | 39. two apples |
| 15. two months | 40. five women |
| 16. seventy-two days | 41. twenty-five times |
| 17. twenty-six cigarettes | 42. fifty-seven minutes |
| 18. forty-five hours | 43. twelve students |
| 19. eighty-nine men | 44. forty-one pears |
| 20. sixty-four tickets | 45. sixty-nine years |
| 21. ninety-three women | 46. two hundred piastres |
| 22. seventeen piastres | 47. thirteen girls |
| 23. fourteen kilos | 48. eighteen children |
| 24. thirty-three pounds | 49. fifty-eight fish |
| 25. nineteen tomatoes | 50. sixteen hours |

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1.

- A. sabāah_lxээр mæster_žoons
 J. sabāah_nnúur ?ahmad_béek , šlóonak_lyòom ?
 A. bxээр_lhándella , u?ante kiif_háalak ?
 J. mniiv_ktiir lhándella , lawéen_merrúuh_haššabāah ?
 A. ?ábl_kálši láazem_?aštári šwáyyet_žráad_lalbéet .
 J. ššu_ləžráad_halli_laazəmtak ?
 A. šii ktiir , xədra ufawéaki uláhme .
 J. men_šánd_miiin_bedžiib_žráadək ?
 A. wállə fii_?ábu_šafiif u?ábu_xaliil . halli_xədrto_?ahsan beštári_manno .
 J. wéen_dakakiinhon ?
 A. lwáahed šánd_bəeti wettáni bášdo batmán_dakakiin .
 J. ləkaan_rúuh_žiiib halli_bəddək_džiibo . u?ána_bəstannák_hòon latəržaf .
 A. léəš !! táfa_rúuh_məfi .
 ?ána_briidak tášref_mniiv kálši_bihəlbálad .
 J. mamnəunak_ktiir , nəšállə_btəži_la?aməerka u?ána_kamāan bšərfək_šala_kálši_hniik .
 A. nəšállə_brúuh_ššəne_žžəaye wəbšúufək_hniik .
 A. hállə?_šəšref_məfi
 J. táyyeb . brúuh_məfək .

Conversation 2. They go to ^bAlu Khalil's shop.

ʔálla_yaštiik. May God give it to you! Thi is a way of saying no, e.g. to a buyer making an offer or to a beggar asking for alms.

- A. sabāah_lxээр ?ábu_xaliil .
 A.K. sabāah_lxeerənt . ?ahla_wsáhla , ?amr xədme ?
 A. nəšállə_xədertək_təaza_lyòom ?
 A.K. btašrafni_táyýeb_yaa_béek , ?ána_maa_bəhwa_bidəkkāanti
 ?állə_ttāza .
 A. b?addéəš_lkúusa ?
 A.K. bsabšāašəšriin_?əš
 A. ?əff! . léəš_kəll_hāada ?
 A.K. men_?állə , mneštəri_žāali umenbiiv_žāali .
 A. btaštiini_lšāšara_bšəšriin ?
 A.K. ?állə_yaštiik .¹
 A. táyyeb bəclaataa_šəšriin .
 A.K. ?əmrak, ná?i . ušəéro_yaa_béek ?
 A. léssa bəddi_žráad_ktiir ,
 A. . zənli_halbeštiixa lašúufha kām_kiizo btaštlaš ?
 A.K. šətte_kiilo .

A. na[?]iili šii tlát kilooyàat_mòoz

A.K. ^šala[?]eeni .

A. dāxlak hallūubye b[?]addēš ?

A.K. yaa[?]ahmad_bēek , [?]asfāari_dāa[?]iman_rxliša . xōod ulāa_tās[?]al .

A. tayyeb . hētt[?]alli kilooyēen_lūubye wtlāate_beetanžāan .

A.K. [?]amrak siidi .

A. šm_byažhar_lbanaddōora [?]āndak mūu_ktiir_tāaza !!

A.K. hāada[?]ānsan_šii mawžūud_balbalad .

A. na[?]iili mēn [?]alwēšš šii tlāt banadooraayaat .

A. [?]addēš[?]lēnsāab ?

A.K. kēll_halağrāad betlēt_leerāat usabfiin[?]ērs .

A. hāyy [?]āsr[?]leerāat .

A.K. wālla_yaa_siidi māa_māfi kmāale , [?]ēemta_makāan_btēdfāfli .

A. tayyeb [?]ayyēdhon lakaan [?]alēnsāab xaatrak .

A.K. btriidni [?]b[?]āthon halla[?] ?

A. lā[?] . hālla[?] [?]b[?]ātlak ššāanfa taaxēdhon .

A.K. raša tēb[?]at_māfa_wāafa ?

A. nāfam . u[?]iza_māa_btēsā[?]thon hētt lbāa[?]i bkīs wāra[?] .

A.K. mā[?]ssalāame .

A. [?]alla[?]isālmak .

Conversation 3. Ahmad and Jones speak.

J. uhālla[?] lawēen_mərrūu[?]h[?]?

A. la[?]ānd[?] [?]ābu[?] [?]afiif bzənnēllak lāmto[?] [?]ānsan .

J. [?]anna[?] bi[?]amēerkafii[?] manallāat btēštēri[?] manha . kēlši[?] laāzmak .

A. uhōon[?] kamāan[?] hēek bass nnaas hōon[?] wəhniik bifādlu yēštēru[?] l[?]ānsan .

J. mā[?]ak-hā[?] ?

Conversation 4. They go to A^bu Afif's Shop.

A.A. 'ahla_umar_haba .

A. šuu_by'zhar dakk'iantak_maf'šuu'a_ktiir .

A.A. lhaamdella ššəgal_mniin..

A. balla_yaa_ʿabu_ʿafiif ba'di_šwayyet_lāmma_laššooraba .

A.A. ya'ni 'addēš ?

A. 'arba'waa' .

A.A. šuu_bt'ə'mər_ğəero_yaa_bēek ?

A. ʿtā'li šii_u'itteen lālmānsi wu'lye unəss_bəftēek .

A.A. hālla' byəşalfuk_ʿalbēet , šuu_batwaşṣiini_labākra ?

A. bšūuf_belbēet šuu_bādean ubab'atlak_xābar maf_şşāan'a..

A. 'ābəl_maa_ʿānsa . ha'ttēlli šii_kilooyeen_xəox wetlāate_nāaš .

A. ʿala_ʿeeni .

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔaḥad	Sunday	-ḥsen	be able (Damascene)
ʔaktar	more	-ḥett	put
ʔaliil (adj pl ʔlaal)	little, a few	-ḥwa	contain, include
ʔameerkāan	Americans	kiilo (kiiloyéen, pl kiiloyáat)	kilo
ʔarbatášš	fourteen	kiis (pl kyáas)	bag
ʔarba	Wednesday	kúusa (coll; sg kuusáaye)	Italian squash
ʔarbfiin	forty	laʔann-	because
ʔasfáar	see sáfr	lāa	not
-ʔayyed	register, charge (to someone's account)	leeš	why
-ʔder (also -ʔder)	be able, can	lúubve ft	string beans
ʔalla	but, except	maḥáll (pl maḥalláat)	place, shop
ʔidašš	eleven	makāan	-ever, whatever
-ʔiim	remove	ʔéemta makāan	at any time
-ʔmor	command	mášlee_šii	never mind
-ʔtaf	cut	miyye (ft miit-)	hundred
báʔar (coll. sg báʔara)	cows, cattle	mnéen	from where
lāhm_báʔar	beef	móoz (coll)	bananas
bāaʔi (adj baaʔy-)	remaining, (the rest)	moozáat	shank strips
banadoora (f coll; sg banadoo raaye pl -aat)	tomatoes	mésši (pl maḥáaši)	stuffed dish (e.g. stuffed squash, stuffed eggplant)
battfiix (coll)	watermelons	-naʔʔi	choose
beetnžāan (coll)	eggplants	-nsa	forget
-biif	sell	nóur	light
baftšek	steak	-riid	want
-bšat	send	sabaṭášš	seventeen
-dfaš .pay (for) (-l- someone)		sábt	Saturday
dakkaan(e) (m or ft; pl dakakiin)	shop, store	sabfiin	seventy
-faḍḍel	prefer	sálaf	advance payment
fšoʔ	over, above, on top, upstairs	-dfaš sálaf	pay in advance
ḡāali (adj ḡaaly-)	expensive	sálle (ft pl reg or sálal)	basket
ḡānam (coll)	sheep		
lāhm_ḡānam	lamb		
-ḡder	see -ʔder		
ḥsāab	account, bill		

siid-	lord, sir	xédra (ft)	vegetables
siidi	sir	wáafa (ft pl waaŋáat 'container' pl 'awáafi 'clothes')	
settlin	sixty		container (=bag, box, basket)
sáŋr (pl 'asŋaar)	price		
sabáan (pl sabaanáat)	morning	wára? (coll)	paper
settáŋŋ	sixteen	-wassi.	order (not command, but place an order for something) ŋala
šóoraba (ft)	soup		
-šteri	buy		
tʔiil (	heavy	wéšš (pl ušúuh)	face
táaza	fresh		
talá-ŋa	Tuesday	-ziin	weish
tanéen	Monday	žámb or žánab (pl žnáab)	side
tlaatiin	thirty	ŋala_žánab	aside
tmaaniin	eighty		
tmentáŋŋ	eighteen	žémŋa (ft)	Friday
teffáan (coll)	apples	ŋaffiif	Afif
tesatáŋŋ	nineteen	ŋážale (ft)	hurry
tesŋiin	ninety		
tleŋtáŋŋ	thirteen	ŋešriin	twenty
tnáŋŋ	twelve		
uʔiyye (ft pl waaʔ)	uqiya (=200 grams)		
-eseŋ	have room for, contain		
xaffiif (adj pl xfaaf)	eight		
xamiis	Thursday		
xamsiin	fifty		
xamstáŋŋ	fifteen		
xédme (ft)	service		

SPOKEN SYRIAN ARABIC

UNIT 3 - Supplementary Sentences

1. xood hattlat leeraat šterilli fiihon . Take these three pounds and buy me something with them.
2. waʔʔef lašeflak ʔiza ʔabi belbeet . Wait till I see if my father's at home.
3. šarref kool mafi teffaah . Please have some apples with me.
4. ʔiza maa šaleeki šegel, saaʔdi ʔemmek beṭṭabx . If you don't have any work, help your mother with the cooking.
5. btaʔref ʔaddeš rana yebʔa ʔuxuuk beššāam ? Do you know how long your brother will stay in Damascus?
6. seṭṭalli yaahon bkiis ʔakbar men heek . Put them in a larger bag than this for me.
7. šuu sefr llaame lyoom ? What's the price of meat today?
8. llaame lemniisa wʔiitha bfašara . The good meat is ten (piastres) an uqiya.
9. fhemt menno ʔenno bedde ibiif beeto. I understand from him that he wants to sell his house.
10. laa truuh lafando xedarto muu ktiir taaza.. Don't go to him; his vegetables aren't very fresh.
11. byedfaʔuulo beššahr tmaaniin leera . They'll pay him eighty pounds a month.
12. laa tensa tʔuul laʔabu ʔafiif yebʔatli kiilo teffaah . Don't forget to tell Abu Afif to send me a kilo of apples.
13. ʔana baaʔi belbeet bekra . I'm staying at home tomorrow.
14. ʔemli šala šanab šii ʔašr kuusaa- Set aside for me about 10 fresh kusas.
15. ʔahmad fooʔ . ʔiza beddak ʔlaaʔ šuufo . Ahmad's upstairs; if you want, go up and see him.
16. bfaḍḍel lyoom nsaawi kuusa mašši . I'd rather we'd make stuffed kusa today.
17. rana ʔebʔatlak yaa ha bekra . I'm going to send it to you tomorrow.
18. xood hal xamsiin leera šalhsaab . Take these 50 pounds on account.
19. šaar nsaabak kbiir, ʔeemta lana tedfaʔli ? Your account has gotten large. When are you going to pay me?
20. betšarfu lafanna bekra ? Will you visit us tomorrow?
21. muu faadyiin; šeer marra nšaalla, mamnuuniin . We won't be free. Another time I hope, thank you.
22. šuu beddak yaani ʔello ? What do you want me to tell him?
23. šarli settešhor bihalbeet . I've been in this house six months.
24. baʔd xamstaššar yoom ʔaxi beddo yeši . My brother wants to (will) come in 15 days.

25. fii fando sabef ganamaat wetlet ba'araat . He has seven sheep and three cows.
26. ſuuf haada halli ſaay, haada 'abu fafiif.. Look at that (man) coming - that's Abu Afif.
27. ſuu byezhar maa fandak laham ba'ar ? Well, it looks as though you don't have any beef.
28. maa byeſteri ſii 'ella byedfaſ ha''o salaf . He only buys things by paying in advance. ("He doesn't buy a thing except he pays for it in advance.")
29. treko 'abu fafiif 'asfaaro daa'iiman ſaalye . Leave Abu Afif. His prices are always " high.
30. ſala ſanab beetna fii tmen dakak'in . Beside our house there are eight shops.
31. 'iimi halewraa' men been 'ideen lowlaad . Take these papers out of the children's " hands.
32. 'addeſ ſmrha bentak ? 'idaſſar sene. How old is your daughter? Eleven years " (old.).
33. 'asfaar lebyuut ſaalye biha'iyyaam . Prices of houses are high these days.
34. binaayetna 'elha 'arbaſ bwaab . Our building has four doors.
35. lha'' maſak; nenna laazem nzuurak bel'awwal . You're right. We should visit you first.
36. 'ente bteſki frensaawi 'ansan menni . You speak French better than I do.
37. zenli battiixa tkuun been lkiiloyeen wetllaate . Weigh me out a watermelon between two and three kilos.
38. ween nabiiha ? men faſr da'aaye? kaanet hoon . Where's Nabiha? She was here ten minutes ago.
39. 'uuli lahalwlaad inaamu . Tell those children to go to sleep.
40. miin halli 'eſu lafandak ? Who are the people who came to see you?
41. maa bzenn yerda 'alf leera ha'' beeto . I don't think he'll be satisfied with 1000 pounds for his house.
42. ſkiili ſuu biſiir maſak, wbaſdeen 'ana bſuuf . Tell me what happens with you, and then I'll see.
43. zenli tlaate kiilo moez . Weight me out three kilos of bananas.
44. betkuun faadi bekra latenzel maſi ſalbalad ? Will you be free tomorrow to go downtown with me?
45. halegraad xfaaf , bte'der tnethon bkiis wara' ? These things are light; you can put them in a paper bag?
46. fando tmen mahallaat mnaam . He has eight good places (shops).
47. seſr tteffaam hoon wehniik zaat ſſii . The price of apples is the same here and there.
48. 'ana beddi men zaat le'maaſ . I want some of the same cloth.
49. ruuk laſand nnaſſaar zaato . Go to the same carpenter's.
50. beddi ſuuf bezzaat . I want to see him in person.
51. zaat ſſi fandi 'iza betnaama: ſanna walla ſand 'ahlek . It's all the same with me if you sleep at our house or with your own folks.
52. halli bihemni huwwe ſeſlek . What I care about is your work.

REVIEW

UNIT 6

This Unit will furnish you with a thorough review of the work you have done so far, and enable you to test your understanding of the material you have studied. If you can work out all the problems in this Unit without getting stuck, and if your answers are mostly correct, you may assume that you have really mastered the first five Units. But if you have trouble, or if your answers turn out mostly wrong, you need more practice on the Units of Part One before going on to new material.

In this Unit, whenever you are called on to do any talking in Arabic, pay close attention to your pronunciation. Let the Guide act as critic of everything you say; if you have no Guide, the group as a whole should correct each man's mistakes. Go back to the phonograph records for authority whenever you are in doubt.

Section A. True-False Test

The purpose of this test is not to give you a grade on your work, but to let you see for yourself how well you can understand Arabic when you have no spelling to follow with your eye.

Each member of the group should take a sheet of paper and write down along the side the numbers from 1 through 20. Then the Guide or the speaker on the phonograph records will say twenty statements in Arabic. Each statement will be spoken twice, with a pause after it; and each statement will be identified by its number. When you hear a statement, decide whether it is usually true or usually false. Don't go into particular cases, but simply decide whether it is ORDINARILY true or false. If it is true, write down a capital T after number corresponding to the statement; if it is false, write down a capital F, if you understand the Arabic, you will have no trouble in deciding which letter to write.

After the first statement, the Leader will stop the Guide, or lift the needle from the phonograph record, and ask whether everyone understands what he is supposed to do. From that point on to the end of the test, there should be no interruptions.

After you have finished the test, the Leader will go through it with you and give you the answers. If you got 16 or more of the answers right, you have done well. If you got less than 16, you need more practice in listening to spoken Arabic.

Section B. Exercises1. Word Review

These two exercises will give you a chance to test your understanding of the words you have learned. You should prepare each exercise by yourself, reading over the instructions and working out the answers alone. When all

members of the group have done this, the group should assemble under the Leader's direction to check up on the results. The Leader will take up one question at a time, and call on various members of the group to give their answers. As each man calls out his answer, the others should compare it with their own results, and should supply whatever corrections or criticisms are necessary. If there is any doubt about the answer to a particular problem, the Guide can act as judge, or the Leader can look it up in the Guide's Manual.

(a) Here are twelve groups of words. In each group, there is one word whose meaning does not fit in with the meaning of the other four. First decide which word should be crossed out in each group. Then make up a simple Arabic sentence in which the other four words can be used interchangeably. For instance, if the four words that belong together are mōoz, teffāaz, battfix, you can make up the sentence nnāas hnīik byāaklu mōoz (or teffāaz, or battfix) ktīir. This will give you forty-eight sentences in all; practice them to yourself out loud, and be ready to rattle them off when the Leader calls on you.

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1.(a) mnāṭṭa | 2.(a) naẓẓāa | 3.(a) sāmak |
| (b) sāaṣa | (b) tālmīiz | (b) lāhme |
| (c) ʔotēel | (c) bōoṣṭa | (c) bāaṣ |
| (d) sīinama | (d) tāaẓer | (d) rézz |
| (e) māṭṣam | (e) ṣāanfa | (e) banadōora |
| 4.(a) ʔaddāam | 5.(a) bināaye | 6.(a) šlōonak ? |
| (b) wāra | (b) ulāad | (b) kiif_ṣāntak ? |
| (c) tānḥ | (c) náas | (c) kiif_xèḍṛtak ? |
| (d) fōoʔ | (d) māra | (d) kiif_ḥāalak ? |
| (e) mnīih | (e) banāat | (e) šlōon_ṣṣāḥḥa ? |
| 7.(a) néḥna | 8.(a) bākra | 9.(a) daʔīiʔa |
| (b) byūuṣal | (b) kbīir | (b) sāaṣa |
| (c) ḥīyye | (c) zḡīir | (c) yōom |
| (d) ʔēnte | (d) tʔīil | (d) ẓēmṣa |
| (e) ʔāna | (e) xafiif | (e) salāame |

6.3

10.(a) ʔábi

(b) ǵaali

(c) márti

(d) ʔáxi

(e) ʔəbni

11.(a) byərʒaʃ

(b) biṛtun

(c) byitrok

(d) bibéeto

(e) byéʒi

12.(a) mašǵūl

(b) maʃǵūʔ

(c) mətʔaxxer

(d) mamnúun

(e) maḥáll

(b) Here are two groups of words fifteen in each group. For every word in Group 1, there is a word in Group 2 that has an exactly opposite meaning. First match up the opposites. When you have done this, make up a sentence in Arabic for each pair of opposite words, in such a way that either of the two words could be used in the sentence. For instance, if the opposite words are ʔəddaam and wara, you can make up the sentence fii sīnama mnīna ʔəddaam (or wara) laḥatta. This will give you thirty sentences in all; practice them to yourself out loud, and be ready to rattle them off when the Leader calls on you.

GROUP I

(a) ǵaali

(b) tʔiil

(c) ʔábl

(d) ktīir

(e) fóoʔ

(f) ʃárabī

(g) ʔəddáam

(h) byəštəri

(i) šmáal

(j) hóon

(k) byənzəl

(l) ʔáb

(m) kbīir

(n) xóod

GROUP II

(a) báʃd

(b) hnīik

(c) bíbīiʃ

(d) zǵīir

(e) xafiif

(f) šwáyye

(g) yamīin

(h) ʔafránʒi

(i) rxīis

(j) ʃáti

(k) ʔémm

(l) byəʔlaʃ

(m) tánt

(n) wára

2. Sentence Review

Go through the following lists of English sentences by yourself and turn them into Arabic. Don't try to translate the English word for word; instead, make up Arabic sentences that will mean the same thing. DON'T WRITE ANYTHING DOWN, but practice your Arabic sentences out loud until you know them cold. Be ready to speak them without hesitation when the Leader calls on you.

After the members of the group have prepared equivalents of the first fifty sentences, the group should assemble under the Leader's direction for a check-up. The Leader will read out one English sentence at a time (not necessarily in the order in which they are printed) and will call on various members of the group to give the Arabic versions. As each man calls out his answer, the others should compare it with their own results, and should supply whatever corrections and criticisms are necessary. For some of these sentences, there are several possible Arabic equivalents, all equally good. The Guide will act as judge, or the Leader can look up the answers in the Guide's Manual.

When the group has worked through the first list of fifty sentences, follow the same procedure with the second list. Prepare your Arabic sentences alone, and check up on yourself when the group gets together.

List I

1. Please speak slowly.
2. How much are two and two?
3. I'll give you two pounds.
4. It's one o'clock.
5. What are these?
6. Where's the toilet?
7. Go straight ahead.
8. I don't want potatoes.
9. Do you have fish?
10. Please repeat what you said.
11. Wait, I want to get off here.
12. When do you (pl) want me to stop?

13. It's not at all too much, sir.
14. Do you have change for five pounds?
15. A little in back of it there's a turn on your right.
16. I promise you, I'll be here for you ten minutes ahead of time.
17. Let's get on it (mas), it looks as though the train's late.
18. Would you like to come back and pick me up at 5:30?
19. We'll be staying here about two and a half hours.
20. Let me introduce you to Mr. Smith.
21. What ship did you come on?
22. I hope you had a nice trip.
23. What does his oldest son do?
24. He's a carpenter, and his second one is still a student.
25. How old are they?
26. What city is your brother in?
27. I know all of them.
28. I've enjoyed meeting you.
29. What state are you from?
30. How long have you been here?
31. To tell you the truth, I don't care about her age.
32. Do you want her to know how to cook, too?
33. Do you (fem) want to sleep in our house or with your folks?
34. How many days a week do you (fem) want off?
35. This is the girl I spoke to you about.
36. It makes no difference to me - do what suits you.

37. It depends on when you can see her.
38. Well, about how much will she want?
39. All right, when shall I see you to tell you the result?
40. She'll certainly ask a lot.
41. All right, leave it (fem) here and take something light.
42. I only put fresh things in my shop.
43. We prefer lamb here.
44. Do you want to pay for them now?
45. Tomorrow I'll send the maid to you to buy fruit.
46. You can pay at any time.
47. Pick out some good ones for me from on top.
48. Where do you buy your vegetables?
49. I want 200 grams of meat for stuffing.
50. Do you have something to put the things in?

LIST II

1. He wants matches.
2. This restaurant is very good.
3. I don't speak Arabic well.
4. Direct him to the station.
5. I want to go to the movies.
6. The bread is in front of you.
7. We want to eat there.
8. I didn't understand what you said.

9. The hotel is on your left.
10. I don't have a cigarette.
11. The train is crowded.
12. They cost fifteen piastres.
13. Where does this line go?
14. Do you see the building there?
15. I want to go back to the hotel.
16. Let me know when I get there.
17. Give me five tickets.
18. Where does he want to get off?
19. Let's wait for the next bus.
20. Stop at the red door on your right.
21. I've been here $2\frac{1}{2}$ years.
22. We think he's a cloth dealer.
23. He doesn't want to help his father.
24. He does everything we tell him.
25. Let's take him with us.
26. He wants to introduce me to his oldest son.
27. My brother will let you know when he gets there.
28. I came on the best boat.
29. The children are busy today.
30. It seems they want to visit your country.
31. When shall we see him to tell him the result?
32. These are the children I spoke to him about.
33. You (fem) have to learn French.
34. She makes the beds before she leaves the house.
35. Who was she working for before?

36. Can you direct me to his house?
37. All right. Put them on the account then.
38. I hope they'll be easily (- cheaply) satisfied.
39. Then he'll need a maid older than that.
40. Do you (fem) know how to wash and iron?
41. Let me order the vegetables today.
42. Put (fem) the things in your basket.
43. I want a heavy watermelon weighing about five kilos.
44. They don't eat meat on Friday.
45. Weigh us out three kilos of tomatoes.
46. Give us two uqiya of meat for stuffing.
47. The people in the city prefer beef.
48. Charge everything, I'll pay you the day after tomorrow.
49. Pick out a nice eggplant for me.
50. I buy my meat from the best place in the city.

3. Transformation Sentences A. Following the usual procedure, change the sentences of Group I from "he" to "they"; sentences of Group II to "you (fem)" and "you (pl)"; Group III "we" to "I".

Group I.

1. láazem yáakol ?ábl_maa_yétrok_lbèet .
2. bédde_ŷəštáŷel bbéeto .
3. máa_byáŷref yékwi_mniin .
4. bibiiŷ_saŷáayer_bdəkkáanto .
5. ʒáaye layzúur_ləpláad .
6. bixálli_uláado hoon.
7. byáŷmel_kəlši_halli_mən?əllo_yaa .
8. byáakol ?áktar mən_?əbno .
9. láazem yáb?a_hoon layšúuf_ləŷrəad .
10. húwwe ?aaŷed_bəlbèet .

Group II

1. btáki_frensáawi_mníin .
2. btáaxod_mænna_ktiir .
3. wáʔʔef ʔábl_maa_túusal_lahniik .
4. šéfli_yáaha urəddélli_xábar .
5. lawéen_bəddak_trúuh ?
6. bəthébb_təštəri_lfawáaki_mən_fándo ?
7. kiifak ukíif_ulaadak ?
8. sméel_mafruuf_tláaf_máfi .
9. bəddak_tʔélli_kəlši ?
10. kool ʔábl_maa_trúuh .

Group III

1. mnəštəri xədrətna mən_fándo .
2. ʔiza_máa_mənhəbbo mnáaxod_šéero .
3. xallína_nəřžař_lařándhon .
4. mənđəlhon_kəlhon řalʔotəel .
5. mnáaxdak_mářna ʔiza_bətriid .
6. řáblna_yáaha_lanřúufha .
7. mnářmel_kəlři_byəřtlař_biʔiidna .
8. bədna_nzúuro bářd_bəkra .
9. nəhna_mənfáđđel lářm_lbəʔar .
10. ʔiza_máa_fhəmt_řaləena mənřiid kəlři .

4. Transformation Sentences B. Following the usual procedure, change the sentences of Group I from masculine singular first to feminine, then to plural. To the sentences of Group II add -li 'for me', -lna 'for him', -lo 'for him', -lha 'for her', -lhon 'for them' to the command forms.

1. ʃatʃini_nàʔʔ_lbattʃixa .
2. rúuŋ_maf_ʔaxúuk ʃalbéet .
3. botražžáak ʔəŋki_ʃala_màhlak .
4. ʃméel_maf_rúuf ʔə́llo_yéžɪ .
5. láa_tənsa_maa_dzúurna_békra .
6. nzéel_latənt betʃúuf_ʔánmad .
7. ʔtáʃli_ləŋmet_moozáat .
8. kóol ʔəbl_maa_trúuŋ_ʃalmháʃta .
9. ʃtəğel_ʃəğlak_mniin .
10. dʃáʃlo nsáabo .

Group II

1. ziiŋ uʔiitéen_ləŋme .
2. ʃiib_lkuusaayáat .
3. ʔúul_dəğri .
4. ʃúuf ʔaddéeʃ_ssáaʃa .
5. tróok_halğrəad hóon .
6. wáʔʔef ʔəddáam_lbáab .
7. sʔáal ʃan_ʔaxúuk .
8. ʃméel_lənsáab .
9. xóod mən_ʃəndo kiilo_móoz .
10. háʃt halxədra bəssáalle .

5. Substitution Sentences

(1) láazem	náakol ʃwáyye ʔabl maa_	nəʃlaʃ .
		nruuŋ ʃassiinama .
	nsáawi ttxuut	nətrok lbeet .
	nəmsan lʔard	

(2) bédidi	šunuf	ha baŋd saafa bəl	beet
brəbb		o	balad
brīd		ak	maṭṭa
		ek	maṭṭam
		kon	ʔoteel
		hon	

6. Number Review (a) Read off the following numbers in Arabic, first going horizontally left to right, then vertically top to bottom, or other ways until you can rattle off the numbers with no hesitation.

64	21	37	58	16	2	49	73	95	80
57	13	5	92	41	69	86	20	74	38
35	62	56	24	97	10	71	48	89	3
12	77	68	83	25	39	50	1	46	94
40	55	22	17	64	98	4	36	31	79
8	96	43	75	32	84	27	59	60	11
91	88	64	30	54	26	42	14	7	52
83	49	70	69	9	33	15	54	28	47
29	100	19	41	78	51	33	8	99	66
76	34	91	6	0	47	68	65	18	23

- (b) Practice counting from 2 to 100 by two's and from 1 to 99 by two's, then from 5 to 100 and from 100 to 5 by two's, and so on, until you have no hesitation using these numbers for counting.

Arithmetic

- (c) Read the following additions in Arabic.

1. $13 + 7 = 20$

2. $5 + 5 = 10$

3. $3 + 6 = 9$
4. $14 + 4 = 18$
5. $21 + 5 = 26$
6. $9 + 6 = 15$
7. $1 + 2 + 3 = 6$
8. $7 + 7 + 2 = 16$
9. $8 + 12 = 20$
10. $30 + 50 = 80$

(d) Read the following questions and answer them.

1. $3 + 5 = ?$
2. $2 + 7 = ?$
3. $6 + 4 = ?$
4. $20 + 30 = ?$
5. $60 + 30 = ?$
6. $45 + 45 = ?$
7. $8 + 9 = ?$
8. $25 + 25 = ?$
9. $80 + 15 = ?$
10. $10 + 15 = ?$

7. Questions and Answers.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. 'addeeš fəmrak ? | 5. feen lmanattā ? |
| 2. laween bəddak truuh ? | 6. 'addeeš btaaxod mənna ? |
| 3. fašara uxamse 'addeeš ? | 7. šuu byəšteḡel 'əbno lkbiir ? |
| 4. kam leera mafak ? | 8. b'anu balad mawžuude 'əmmak ? |

9. ?addeeš sarlkon hoon ?
10. šuu bəddak yaa yaʃmel ?
11. ?eemta bteži lanəstannaak ?
12. mneen bədziib lanmtak ?
13. kam walad ʃandak ?
14. mneen tʃallamt lʃarabi ?
15. ?anu saafa btaakol ?
16. šuu fii ʃandak ġeer ssamak ?
17. ʃala ?anu baabocr ?əža ?axuuk ?
18. šuu ?asʃaar lxədra ʃandak ?
19. ?anu fawaaki bətnəbb ?aktar ?
20. kiif lnaale bəššaam ?
21. kam daʔiiʔa fii bəssaafa ?
22. feen lmatʃam yalli fii lanme mniina ?
23. ?eemta btežu dzuuruuna ?
24. kam təlmiiz ?əntu ?
25. ?eemta ranayərʒaʃ laʃanna ?abuuk ?
26. feen lbinaaye yalli ?əltəlli ʃanha ?
27. šuu bətriid ?əbʃatlak ?
28. ?anu saafa bətkuun faadi bəkra ?
29. ?addeeš bəddak lataaxədna ʃalmarʒe ?
30. miin ʒaaye laʃandak lyoom ?
31. laween bəddak yaani ?aaxədhon ?
32. ?eemta bəʃarrefni ʃala ?axuuk ?
33. šuu ?əsm ʒaanaʃa yalli ?aaʃde ʃandhon ?
34. miin ?əža maʃak ʃaššaam ?
35. mneen btaʃref ?əsmo ?
36. šloon naalet ?axuu ?
37. kam yoom lanatəbʔa bəššaam ?
38. lameen halğraad ?
39. šuu ranatəšteri mən ʃanna lyoom ?
40. ʃand meen kaanet təštəğel mən ?abl ?
41. kiif maa lanatəži maʃ ?axuuk tšuufna ?
42. kiif hənnen mətʔaxriin lyoom ?
43. miin biʔuul ?ənno ʒaanaʃa maa btaʃref tətbox ?
44. ?anu lanme bətfaddel ?aktar ?
45. ?eemta ranatəʃalha ʃan ?axuuha ?
46. kam saafa ranatəbʔa bəssiinama ?
47. mneen btaʃref ?ənno ?abuuhon mawžuud bəššaam ?
48. ?eemta bəʔder ruun maʃak ʃalmatʃam ?
49. ?anu saafa bətkuun belbeet lanatta ?əži zuurak ?
50. ?addeeš btaaxod ssaʃra belbaaboer mən beeruut lanyoork ?

8. Formulas. Practice the following formulas aloud and be sure you know when each one is used. Then be prepared to give an appropriate response without hesitation.

- (1) ʔálla ixalliilo yáahon .
- (2) tfáddal . (offering food)
- (3) tɛʃben ʃalaxeer .
- (4) xaatrak .
- (5) ʃabáan_lxéer .
- (6) ssalàamu_ʃaláykom .
- (7) kiif_ʃántak ?
- (8) maʃ_ssaláame .
- (9) ʔálla_máʃak .
- (10) mása_lxéer .
- (11) lhámdella_ʃassaláame .
- (12) kiif_náalak ?
- (13) mágnaba .
- (14) tšarráfna .
- (15) nšáalla_ʃala_saláame .

DEPARTMENT OF STATE
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES AND LINGUISTICS

Unit # 9 149

Section A. Basic Sentences

KEEPING COOL

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Good morning, Rafiq. | gabaan_lxeer yaa_rafii' . |
| 2. Good morning. | sabaan_lxeeraat . |
| weather | ta's |
| sweet, nice | hēlu |
| 3. Isn't the weather nice today?
("Are you seeing on the nice
weather today?") | šāayef (šala_) haṭṭa's lēlu_lyoom ? |
| unusual, extraordinary | mahuul |
| as if we | ka'anna |
| spring | rabiis |
| 4. It's unusual! It's just though
it were spring. | šii_mahuul . wallaahi ka'anna_berrabiis . |
| appearing | bāayen |
| school | mādrase |
| 5. Hey, it looks as though you're late
for school today. | šuu baayentak_mət'axxer_šala_madrastak
lyoom ? |
| professor | 'estāaz |
| comes | yēži . |
| class, lesson | dārs |
| 6. Right. Because the professor
isn't coming to the first class. | 'ee_walla la'anno_l'estaaz maaraha.
yēži šaddars_l'awwal . |
| occasion | munaasabe |
| past | māadi |
| 7. By the way where were you
last week? | wbiha_l_munaasabe 'ente_ween_kent
ššemša_lmaadye ? |
| I took | 'axātt or 'axādet |
| opportunity, leave, vacation | fērša |
| I went up | šāw |

I spent (time)

maddéet

8. I took a vacation and spent it up
in Bludan.ʔaxatt_fersa wetleŋt maddeetha
bebluudaan .

mountains

ʔbáal

9. How was the weather where you were
in the mountains?

kiif_kaan_ttaʔs ʔandkon_bəʔʔbaal ?

believe

sáddeʔ

cold

bárd

10. Believe me it wasn't very cold.

saddeʔni maa_kaan_fii_bard_ktiir .

oh that!

yaaréet

11. I wish you could see the spring we
have in Beirut.

yaareetak_tʃuuf_rrabiif ʔanna_bbeerun

sweeter, nicer

ʔahla

12. There's nothing nicer (than that).

ʔahla_mən_heck maa_fii .

you saw

ʃéft

13. You haven't seen anything yet.

ʔee_lakaan maa_ʃéft_ʃii .

thousand

ʔálf

14. It's a thousand times better here
in Damascus.

ʔanna_bəʃʃaam ʔahla_bʔalf_marra .

humidity, moisture

rtuube

15. And we don't have the humidity you
get there.

wmáa_fii_rtuube metl_maa_bisiir_ʔandk

truth, fact

naʔiiʔa

wind, air

háwa

Lebanon

ləbnáan

dry

náaʃef

healthful

ʃənni

16. But really (in truth) the air on
Mount Lebanon is dry and healthful.bass_bəlnaʔiiʔa lhawa_biʔabal_ləbnaan
naaʃef uʃənni_tamaaman .

sun

ʃáms

early

bakkfir

heads

rúus

17. And the sun comes up early over
the mountains.

wəššams_btətlaf_bakkiir ʔala_ruus_
ššbaal .

views

manáazer

valleys

wədyáan

enchants

btəšher

human being

ʔənsáan

18. And the views of the valleys are
beautiful ("enchant mankind").

wmanaazer_lwədyaan btəšher_lʔənsaan .

I summered

sayyáft

Dhour Choueir

dhúur_ššwəer

19. I spent the summer in Dhour Choueir
once.

ʔana_sayyáft bədhúur_ššwəer marra .

I was healthy

saḥḥéet

I had a good time, I was happy

mbasátt or mbasátət

20. I was very healthy and happy there.
("How much I was healthy and happy.")

ʔaddeēš_saḥḥéet_wəmbasátt

we became exhausted

hləkna

quantity

kətr

heat

ššob

21. But in Beirut we were exhausted
from the heat and humidity.

laaken_nəḥna_bbeeruut hləkna_mən_kət.
ššob_werrtuube .

sea, ocean

təsbahu baḥar

22. But don't forget you have the sea.

bass_laa_tənsa ʔənnə_ʔandkon_lbahr .

you swim

təsbahu

you are refreshed

tətráttabu

23. You can swim any time and get
refreshed.

bteʔdru_təsbahu ʔeemta_maa kaan
wtətráttabu .

if

láww

climate

manáax

drier

ʔánšaf

24. Anyway if the climate were a little
drier it would be much better.

ʔala_kəll_haal laww_kaan_lmanaax_
ʔanšaf_bəšwayye bikuun_ʔansan_bəkt

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| summer | sēef |
| fall | xariif |
25. I prefer to spend the summer and fall in the Mountain.
- ʔana bfaddel maddi sseef walxariif
bežžabał .
- | | |
|--------|----------|
| winter | šetwiyye |
|--------|----------|
26. You're right. But there's nothing nicer than winter in Beirut.
- mařak_ħa?? . bass ššetwiyye_bbeeruut
maa_fii_ʔaħla_mən heek .
- | | |
|----------------------|----------|
| idea | fēkr |
| summer | seefiyye |
| toward | šōob |
| north | šmāʔl |
| time, period of time | zamaān |
27. This summer we think we'll go up north for about a month.
- fēkrna hašseefiyye nruuħ_šōob_ššmaāl
šii_šahr_zamaān .
- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| return | rāʔfa |
| pass by, stop at | mroo? or mērr |
| way | ṭarii? |
| summer resorts | mařāayef |
| south | žnuub |
28. And on the way back stop at the summer resorts in the south.
- wbarražfa mreʔu (or mērru) biṭariiʔkon
fala_mařāayef_žžnuub .
29. Have you (pl) ever gone to Alay?
("Your life have you gone to Alay?")
- řamrkon_rentu_lařaalēe ?
30. Yes, we went last year and stayed a week.
- nařam řaħna_bessane_lmaadye eʔařadna_žamfa .
- | | |
|---------------------|--------|
| father's brother | řāmm |
| spending the summer | māyyef |
31. Our cousins were spending the summer there.
- wlaad_řaħna kaamu_māyfiin hniik .
- | | |
|------|------|
| lady | šātt |
|------|------|
32. Did the ladies go with you?
- wraaħu_mařkon_ssattaat ?
- | | |
|---------|---------|
| natural | ṭabiifi |
|---------|---------|

without

bála

33. Naturally, we don't go without them.

tabiifi . maa_menruuh_balaahon .

I find

bláa'i

it began

báda

it changes

yetgáyyar

34. What's this! I see the weather's
changing.šuu haada ? 'blaa'i_tta's_bada_
yetgáyyar .

clouds

gēem

suddenly

šála_ḡafle

35. And where did all these clouds
come from so suddenly?

whalḡeem mneen_ʔəža_kello_šala_ḡafle ?

rain

máṭar

strong

ʔáwi

36. It looks as though there's going
to be a heavy rain.

byežhar_lahatenzel maṭar_ʔawiyye .

outside

bárra

inside

žúwwa

37. We can't stay outside; let's go in.

maa_mneʔder neššod barra xalliina
nruuh lažúwwa .

come

táfa

together

sáwa

room

ʔúuda

38. Come on, let's go to my room together. taša_mafi lanruuh_sawa_šala_ʔuutti .

Section B. Pronunciation1. The vowel a.

The short a vowel in Arabic varies considerably depending on the kind of consonants around it. The best way to understand this variation is in terms of two tendencies (1) the BACKING tendency of velarized consonants, and (2) the LOWERING tendency of the pharyngeal consonants.

(1) Backing. What might be called the normal or basic sound of Arabic a is a sound between English e of bet and u of but. When a velarized consonant is near it, however, the sound is made further back, i.e., much nearer to the u of but or even a little further back. Here are many examples, most of them words you don't know, just for practice:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

(towards e of bet)

bass	only
*mass	he touched
*fazz	he got up
*dabb	he knocked down
dall	he guided
*damm	blood
*taxx	he spit
*taff	he spit
*tall	hill
*mayyez	distinguish
*ballas	he began

(towards u of but)

bass	bus
*mass	he sucked
*fazz	nude
*dabb	he packed
*dall	he stayed
*damm	he threaded
*taxx	he hit
*taff	it overflowed
*tall	he looked
mayye	water
balla	please

In Damascus r is midway between the plain velarized consonants in its effect on the sound a. In a large part of the Syrian Arabic area there are two "r" sounds, plain and velarized, and a word may have one or the other e.g. žaari 'flowing' but žaari 'my neighbor'. In Damascus, however, this is not the case. Just listen to the vowel sounds (especially a and aa) around r and imitate the Guide you are working with.

(2) Lowering. When a pharyngeal sound (ح or ع) comes next to short a the sound of the a is made with the tongue a little lower. In other words, it sounds a little more in the direction of the English a in bat, or if in addition to the ح or ع next to the a there is also a velarized consonant in the vicinity, it is more in the direction of the a of father or the usual American o of not. This sounds complicated but actually is very easy to get used to. In fact you will find that all this variation in vowel sounds offers a good set of clues as to the neighboring consonants, since for the speaker of English it is usually easier to hear these vowel differences than to tell the plain and velarized consonants apart. But don't forget that the Arabic speaker usually doesn't hear these vowel differences at all--what he notices is the difference in the consonants.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

(towards a of bat)

baʔd	after, still
*byesmaʔ	he hears
baħr	'sea'
*byeftaħ	he opens

(towards o of not)

*baʔd	some
*byeʕraʔ	it strikes
saħħ	he was healthy
*byeṭraħ	he subtracts

2. The vowel aa.

The long aa vowel in Arabic also varies considerably depending on the kind of consonants around it. The exact sound of this aa varies also from place to place in the Arab world. One thing that just about all dialects have in common is the difference of sound in the long aa depending on whether a velarized consonant is near it or not. In Damascus the "normal" aa, i.e. aa with no velarized consonant nearby, sounds something like the English a of bat but stretched out a little longer. The aa near a velarized consonant on the other hand sounds more like the a of father. With the long a the presence of ح or ع has a special effect in Damascus.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

*baas	he kissed	baas	bus, passport
*faad	he benefited	*faad	it was left over
*taab	he repented	*ṭaab	it became good
*saar	he went	saar	he became
*daam	it lasted	*daam	he injured

There is one other tendency worth noting: if there is no velarized consonant nearby and the vowel aa is followed by i, or to a lesser extent e, in the next syllable the sound of the aa is usually made somewhat higher in the mouth; i.e. it sounds a little more like the e of bet, but stretched out a little bit.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FOUR

(towards a of bat)

smaal	left, North
kaan	he was
baab	door

(towards e of bet)

smaali	northern
taani	second
baabi	my door

The best way to master these vowel variations, as with everything else in language learning, is to imitate the native speaker and practice incessantly.

Section C. Analysis

Note 7.1 Comparatives. The following three forms have appeared in the Basic Sentences of Units 1-7:

ʔanšaf	drier
ʔansan	better
ʔahla	sweeter, nicer

This is the regular Arabic equivalent of English adjective forms in "-er". Such forms will be called COMPARATIVES. A comparative consists of a root (e.g. √nšf, √hsn, √hlV, etc.) plus ʔa- prefixed and -a- inserted between the second and third consonants of the root. This could be abbreviated ʔACCaC where each C indicates a place for one consonant of the root.

A set of vowels of this kind which interlocks with a root and has a special grammatical meaning (e.g. "comparative") will be called a PATTERN.

Here is a list of comparatives:

<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Root</u>	<u>Noun of Same Root</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
ʔabkar	earlier	bkr	bakkiir	early
ʔabrad	colder, cooler	brd	bárd	coldness
			báared	cold (things)
			bardáan	cold (people)

<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Root</u>	<u>Noun of Same Root</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
ʔákbar	larger, older	kbr	kbīr	large, old
ʔáktar	more	ktr	ktīr	a lot, much
ʔánšaf	drier	nšf	nāšef	dry
ʔárxas	cheaper	rxs	rxīs	cheap
ʔášwab	hotter	švb	šōob	heat
ʔátʔal	heavier	tʔl	tʔīl	heavy
ʔátyab	better, more delicious	tʔb	táyyeḅ	good, good-tasting
ʔázḡar	smaller, younger	zḡr	zḡīr	small, young
ʔáhla	sweeter, nicer	hʔv	hálu	sweet, nice
ʔáḡla	more expensive	ḡʔv	ḡáali	expensive

Notice that there is usually a corresponding adjective (or even several adjectives) of the same root, but sometimes the only corresponding form is non-adjectival noun of the same root (e.g. šōob). In other words, an Arabic comparative is usually not a comparative of a particular adjective as in English, but is the comparative for a particular root.

Notice also that ʔáḡsan 'better' serves as a comparative for mniin 'good' although the roots (ḡsn, mnḡ) are different; no form like *ʔámnaḡ is in use.

The Arabic equivalent of English "than" after a comparative is men. For example:

ʔahmad ʔakbar men ʔaxuuk . Ahmad is older than your brother.

When a pronoun follows, it is added to men as a pronoun ending and the separate pronoun is used, if at all, only for additional emphasis (cf Note 5).

ʔahmad ʔakbar mēnni . Ahmad is older than me (I).

Sample Sentences:

1. ʔaxi ʔazḡar mēnnak bšašr sniin . My brother is 10 years younger than you.
2. manaax ššaam ʔanšaf men manaax beeruut . The climate of Damascus is drier than the climate of Beirut.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. lbataata 'arxaš mnəlxəbz . | Potatoes are cheaper than bread. |
| 4. zenli baṭṭiixa 'at'al mən hayye . | Weigh me a watermelon heavier than this one. |
| 5. l'əstaaz 'əʕa ʕalmadrəse 'əbkar mnəttala miiz . | The professor came to school earlier than the students. |
| 6. ššaam 'abrad mən beeruut bəššete . | Damascus is colder than Beirut in winter. |
| 7. lmoc. 'aḡla mnətteffaah . | Bananas are more expensive than apples. |
| 8. 'aḡsanlak 'iza bteb'a ʕanna . | It will be better for you if you stay with us. |
| 9. šuu haṭṭa's 'aḡla mən heek maa biṣiir . | There can't be anything nicer than this weather. |
| 10. ʕaalee 'akbar mən dhuur ššweer . | Aley is larger than Dhour Choueir. |

Note 7.2 Suffix Tense. Study the underlined verb forms in the following Basic Sentences of this and preceding Units:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 7.9 kiif <u>kāan</u> ṭṭā's ʕāndkon bəzzbaal ? | How was the weather where you were in the mountains? |
| 7.10 ...māa <u>kāan</u> fii bārd ktiir . | ...It wasn't very cold. |
| 2.1 léeko 'əʕa <u>lbáas</u> . | Here comes the bus! ("Behold the bus has come.") |
| 3.38 'addéeš <u>sāar</u> ʕəmrhon ? | How old have they gotten to be? (How much has their age become?) |
| 3.18 šlōon <u>kāanet</u> sāfrtak ? | How was your trip? |
| 4.32 ... <u>kāanet</u> 'āaʕde ... | ...she was staying ... |
| 7.31 ulāad ʕāmma <u>kāanu</u> mšáyfiin hniik . | Our cousins were spending the summer there. |
| 7.32 <u>urāanu</u> māʕkon ssettāat ? | Did the ladies go with you? |

7.11

- 7.7 ... ?énte wéen_ként_žžémfa_lmáadye ? ...where were you last week ?
- 1.12 fhémt_ŷaliyyi ? Do you understand? ("Did you understand or me?")
- 2.38 u?iza_t?axxárt ŷan_ssàaŷa_sétte... ...And if you're later than six o'clock...
- 3.16 ŷala_?ánu_baabòor_?žžit_hàdrtak ? What boat did you come on?
- 7.13 ?ee_lakàan máa_ššéft_šii . You haven't seen anything yet.
- 4.26 ŷànd_míin_kènti_təštəğli_men_?abl ? Who were you (fem) working for before?
- 4.31 wéen_tŷallàmti ? Where did you (fem.) learn it?
- 7.29 ŷémrkon_rəntu laŷaalée ? Did you ever go to Alay?
- 4.27 máa_ként_?əštəğel ŷand_háda . I haven't worked for anyone.
- 1.13 náŷam, fhémt_ŷalèek . Yes, I understood you.
- 3.13 ?žžit ŷalxdeewi_smaŷíil . I came on the Khedive Ismail.
- 7.19 ?àna_ŷayyáft bəddhúur mǎrra . I once spent the summer in Dhour.
- 7.6 ?axatt fərsə wətləŷt maddeetha bəbluudaan . I took a vacation and spent it up in Bludan.
- 3.7 tšarráfna . I'm glad to meet you. ("We've been honored.")
- 7.21 láaken nəhna_bbeerúut hlákna... But in Beirut we were exhausted.
- 7.30 réhna bessène_lmáadye u?aŷádna_žžémfa . We went last year and stayed a week.

In addition to the forms of the Prefix Tense, there is one other set of verb forms in Arabic, characterized by suffixes (-et, -u, -t, etc.), which will be called the SUFFIX TENSE.

Here are sample third person forms:

káan	he was	káanet	she was	káanu	they were
téleʕ	he went up	ʔéžet	she came	ráanu	they went
máraʔ	he passed	féhmet	she understood	ǧásalu	they washed
sáar	he became				

The third person singular masculine, the "he" form, consists of the stem (root plus pattern) with no prefixes or suffixes. This is the simplest form of the verb, and from this Unit on verbs will be entered in the Vocabularies under this form. The suffix -et is added to the masculine form for the feminine singular, and the -u plural ending already familiar from the Prefix Tense is added for the plural. Notice that stem vowel -e- is always dropped when -et or -u is added (nézel: nézlet: nézlu). Stem vowel -a- generally remains, but there is some variation. In Damascus the -a- is dropped before -et but kept before -u in verbs like kátab (kátbet: kátabu) and kept before both in verbs like saafad (saafadet: saafadu).

Here are further examples of third person forms of the Suffix Tense:

téleʕ	he went up	télʕet	she went up	télʕu	they went up
nézel	he went down	nézlet	she went down	nézlu	they went down
féhem	he understood	féhmet	she understood	féhmū	they understood
ʕéref	he knew	ʕérfet	she knew	ʕérfu	they knew
ʔáxad	he took	ʔáxdet	she took	ʔáxadu	they took
kátab	he wrote	kátbet	she wrote	kátabu	they wrote
káan	he was	káanet	she was	káanu	they were
šáaf	he saw	šáafet	she saw	šáafu	they saw
žáab	he brought	žáabet	she brought	žáabu	they brought
náam	he slept	náamet	she slept	náamu	they slept
dáll	he directed	dállet	she directed	dállu	they directed
hább	he loved	hábbet	she loved	hábbu	they loved
sáafad	he helped	sáafadet	she helped	sáafadu	they helped
ʔéža	he came	ʔéžet	she came	ʔéžu	they came

Here are sample second person forms:

fhémt	you understood	kénti	you (fem) were
ʔélt	you said	tʃallámti	you " learned
tʔaxxárt	you became delayed	réntu	you (pl) went
ʔžiit	you came	maráʔtu	you " passed

The second person suffix is -t, to which are added the feminine ending -i or the plural ending -u, both familiar from the forms of the Prefix Tense. Notice that the stem of the second person is not always the same as the stem of the third person, e.g. kān: kénti; ʔəža: ʔžiit.

Here are further examples of second person forms:

fhémt	you understood	fhémti	you (fem) understood	fhémtu	you (pl) understood
tlést	you went up	tlésti	you " went up	tléstu	you (pl) went up
nzélt	you went down	nzélti	you " went down	nzéltu	you (pl) went down
katábt	you wrote	katábtu	you " wrote	katábtu	you (pl) wrote
maráʔt	you passed	maráʔti	you " passed	maráʔtu	you (pl) passed
ḡasált	you washed	ḡasálti	you " washed	ḡasáltu	you (pl) washed
ként	you were	kénti	you " were	kéntu	you (pl) were
ʔélt	you said	ʔélti	you " said	ʔéltu	you (pl) said
šéft	you saw	šéfti	you " saw	šéftu	you (pl) saw
ʔžiit	you came	ʔžiiti	you " came	ʔžiitu	you (pl) came
ṣayyáft	you summered	ṣayyáfti	you " summered	ṣayyáftu	you (pl) summered
habbéet	you loved	habbeeti	you " loved	habbéetu	you (pl) loved

Here are sample first person forms:

fhémt	I understood	tšarráfná	we were honored
tlést	I went up	rénna	we went

maráʔt	I passed	ržéina	we returned
ʔžíit	I came	hlákna	we were exhausted
maddéet	I spent (time)	tabáxna	we cooked

The first person singular suffix is -t. This means that the first singular and second masculine singular (the "I" and "you"-masc.) forms of the Suffix Tense are always identical. The first person plural suffix is -na. Notice that this suffix is identical with the first person plural ending -na 'us, our', and is the only instance of similarity between these two different sets of suffixes. The stem of the first person forms is always the same as the stem of the second person forms, i.e. if there are more than one stem in the Suffix Tense of a verb, there are only two - one for the third person (kaan, -et, -u) and one for the second and first (kən-t, -ti, -tu, -t, -na).

Here are further examples of first person forms:

nzélt	I went down	nzélna	we went down
fhémt	I understood	fhémna	we understood
ržéit	I returned	ržéina	we returned
rét	I went	rénna	we went
žébt	I brought	žébnna	we brought
maddéet	I spent (time)	maddéena	we spent (time)
habbéet	I loved	habbéena	we loved
ṣayyáft	I summered	ṣayyáfnna	we summered
ḡasált	I washed	ḡasálnna	we washed

All these suffixes are the same for all verbs. There is some variation however in the stem structure of verbs, and this will gradually be explained in succeeding Units.

The Arabic verb system is fairly complex, but it is REGULAR. This means that you have a lot of facts to learn about stem variation, but once you learn the system any new verb that comes up will fit into the system: there are practically NO IRREGULAR VERBS in Arabic. The only verb that is irregular in the Suffix Tense is ʔəža.

Here are the full lists of Suffix Tense forms for typical verbs. For the time being accept the stems as they are and concentrate on mastering the suffixes. Gradually you will get to understand the stems:

kátab	'write'	nézel	'go down'	káan	'be'
kátbet		názlet		káanet	
kátabu		nézlu		káamu	
katábt		nzált		kánt	
katábtí		nzáltí		kántí	
katábtu		nzáltu		kántu	
katábt		nzált		kánt	
katábna		nzálna		kánna	

Like kátab are: ġásal, láfat, ʔáʔad, háfaz, másah, dáfaʔ, and others.

Like nézel are: ʔámel, ʔáref, féhem, réʔeʔ, and others.

Like káan are: ʒáab, náam, záan, sáar, ráad, and others.

Note 7.3 Nisbes. Many adjectives in Arabic end in -i. In some cases (like faadi) the -i is part of the root. In most cases, however, this -i is a special adjective suffix which is added to nouns very much as -y or -ish is added in English (fish; fishy; man; mannish). The meaning of this Arabic -i suffix is 'pertaining to, relating to, connected with' and adjectives of this kind are sometimes called RELATIVE ADJECTIVES. The Arabic name of this adjective is násbe (ʔt 'relation, proportion'), and in this manual they will be called NISBES, the English form of this word. Several examples have occurred in Units 1 - 7:

<u>nisbe</u>	<u>meaning</u>	<u>basic noun</u>	<u>meaning</u>
ʔárabi	Arabic, Arabian	ʔárab	Arabs
ṭabíiʔi	natural	ṭabíiʔa	nature
ṣáħħi	healthful	ṣáħħa	health
šátwi	winter (adj)	šáte	winter

Notice that a feminine t- ending is dropped before adding the -i nisbe suffix. Here are further examples:

maħállí	local	maħáll	place
beerúutí	Beirutí, from Beirut	beerúut	Beirut
báladí	municipal	bálad	city
šáamí	Damascene	ššáam	Damascus

šmáali	northern	šmáal	North
žnúubi	southern	žnúub	South
šéefi	summer (adj)	šéef	summer
šáhri	monthly	šáhr	month
báhrri	sea (adj), sailor	báhr	sea
šámsi	solar	šáms	sun
teffáani	apple-colored (= pale golden yellow, not red like most American apples)	teffáan	apples
neswáani	women's, feminine	neswáan	women
lebnáani	Lebanese	lebnáan	Lebanon

Notice that if the basic noun regularly has l- 'the' this is dropped (ššáam: šáami) and that sometimes the nisbe is formed from the plural (neswáan: neswáani).

The feminine of a nisbe always ends in -íyye. Sometimes this feminine form of the nisbe is used as a noun itself, e.g.:

šetwiyye	winter season
baladiyye	municipality
šamsiyye	parasol, umbrella

The plural of a nisbe usually ends in -iyyiin, but other plurals also occur, especially if the nisbe is being used as a noun in its own right. Occupation names often have a plural just like the feminine singular in -íyye; nationality names often use the basic noun on which the nisbe is formed as a plural or have a quite unpredictable plural. Examples:

<u>nisbe</u>	<u>feminine</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>meaning</u>
frənsáawi	frənsaawíyye	frənsaawíyyiin	French
tabiiši	tabiišiyye	tabiišiyyiin	natural, Naturalist
báhrri	(báhrriyye)	báhrriyye	sailor

<u>nisbe</u>	<u>feminine</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>meaning</u>
ʔamerkáani	ʔamerkiyye or ʔamerkaaniyye	ʔamerkáan	American
ʔenglíizi	ʔengliiziyye	ʔenglíiz	English
ʔafránʒi	ʔafranžiyye	ʔafránʒ	Western, European
beerúuti	beeruutiyye	bayáarte or bawáarte	Beirut
šáami	šaamiyye	šwáam	Damascene

Nisbe

1. btaʔrfi tətəbxi tabx ʔafránʒi ? Do you know how to cook European style?
2. ʔahmad ʔaxad waande frənsaawiiyye . Ahmad married ("took") a French woman.
3. ʔaxi binebb lbiira lʔamerkaaniyye. My brother likes American beer.
4. šəft marra waaned ʔengliizi hniik . I once saw an Englishman there.
5. bədfaʔ šahri xamsiin leera ləlʔoteel . I pay 50 pounds monthly at the hotel.
6. fii baas yoomi mnəššaam labluudaan . There's a daily bus from Damascus to Bludan.
7. marti raahet təštəri ʔmaaš šeeʔi . My wife went to buy some summer cloth.
8. bəddi maddi ššetwiiyye žžaaye bbeeruut . I want to spend the coming winter in Beirut.
9. šeeʔti maddet sseefiyye lmaedyə belžabal. My family spent last summer in the mountain.
10. halʔmaaš nəswaani muu rəžžaali . This is women's cloth not men's.
11. mafi baas ləbnaani . I have a Lebanese passport.
12. ʔana bnebb ssamak lbahri . I like salt-water fish.
13. lhawa lžabali naašef . The mountain breeze is dry.
14. hayy blaad žabaliyye . This is mountainous country.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 15. ?axad fərşə <u>seefiyye</u> . | He took a summer vacation. |
| 16. <u>ššwaam</u> biruunu labeeruut layesbanu balbanr . | The people of Damascus go to Beirut to swim in the sea. |
| 17. beddi kiilo beetənžaan <u>baladi</u> . | I want a kilo of local eggplant. |
| 18. ttaʔs hoon muu <u>sənni</u> . | The weather is unhealthful. |
| 19. xood ?əʔra halxabar <u>lmanalli</u> . | Here! Read this local news item. |
| 20. fii sandak ?maaš <u>šetwi</u> ? | Do you have winter cloth? |
| 21. baʔref rəžžaal <u>beeruuti</u> mniin ktiir . | I know this Beirut man very well. |
| 22. lxebz <u>lbeeruuti</u> tayyeb . | Beirut bread is good. |
| 23. btənki <u>ʔarabi</u> ? | Do you speak Arabic? |
| 24. ?əža zaarna waaned ʔarabi . | An Arab came to see us. |
| 25. marti štaref ?maaš loono teffaani . | My wife bought some yellowish material. |
| 26. manaax beeruut manaax <u>banri</u> . | The climate of Beirut is a maritime climate. |
| 27. fii belxdeewi smaʔiil miit <u>banri</u> . | There are 100 sailors on the Khedine Ismail. |
| 28. ssəne <u>ššamsiyye</u> tnaʔšar šahr . | The solar year consists of twelve months. |
| 29. šaayef halbinaaye ? hayy lbaladiyye . | See that building? It's the city hall. |
| 30. ?žiit ʔala baaboor <u>?ameerkaani</u> . | I came on an American ship. |
| 31. marto <u>šaamiyye</u> . | His wife is from Damascus. |
| 32. lʔamerkaan bifadlu lahm lbaʔar . | Americans prefer beef. |
| 33. tʔallamt <u>?engliizi</u> belmadrase . | I learned English in school. |
| 34. ?aktar <u>lbayaarte</u> byaʔrfu yəsbahu . | Most Beirutis know how to swim. |

Section D. Exercises

1. Completion Sentences. Read the following sentences aloud filling in the appropriate Arabic comparative for the English work in parentheses.

1. manaax žabal lebnaan (drier) men manaax beeruut .
2. lmooz (more expensive) mnə_tteffaan .
3. bluudaan (colder) mnə_ššaam .
4. beeruut (hotter) mendhuur_ššweer .
5. bteži (earlier) mnə_l'əstaaz .
6. beddi baṭṭiixa (heavier) men_hayye .
7. saar lhawa (colder) men 'abl .
8. tteffaan (more delicious) mnə lxoox .
9. bihebb lḡanam (more) mnə_lba'ar .
10. m'akkad 'ahmad (better) mənni_belfarabi .
11. 'iza batbiifni (cheaper) men_heek, beštari .
12. dhuur_ššweer (smaller) men_faalee .
13. bmaddi (most) 'aw'aati belbeet .
14. 'ahmad (younger) men xaliil .
15. ššaam (larger) men bluudaan .
16. saar tta's (better) men_'abl .
17. nnžaas (sweeter) mnə_ttfaah .
18. bento lekbiire (nicer) mnə_zzḡiire .
19. 'ente (stronger) mənno bel'angliizi .
20. halbinaaye (largest) binaaye bihalbalad .
21. 'ahmad (better) waahed belmadrise .
22. (most) nnaas bynaklu belbeet .

2. Transformation Sentences I: Change the sentences of Group I to plural "I" to "we". Change sentences of Group II and III to feminine and to plural.

Group I

saaſatt ʔabi .

I helped my father.

ʔakalt maſ ʔemmi .

I ate with my mother.

šrebt ʔahwe .

I drank coffee.

ʔaſatt belbeet .

I stayed at home.

rəht ʔassiinama .

I went to the movies.

žəbt ləğraad .

I brought the things.

saʔalt ʃšaanaſa ʔanno .

I asked the maid about him.

sabant belbaħr .

I swam in the ocean.

Group II

kent bbeeruut ?

Were you in Beirut?

nəmt bakkiir ?

Did you go to bed early?

ʔləſt ʔalmaſyaf ?

Did you go up to the summer resort?

ħabbeet beeruut .

You liked Beirut.

fhəmt kəlši .

You understood everything.

ʔaawant ʔaxi .

You helped my brother.

ʔayyaft bžabal ləbnaan ?

Did you spend the summer in Mt. Lebanon?

leeš tarakt lmadrase ?

Why did you leave school?

Group III

baaſ lbeet .

He sold the house.

šaar mriin .

He turned out well.

ʔaxad ferša .

He took a vacation.

štağal šəğlo .

He did his work.

ʔaal lħaʔiiʔa .

He told the truth.

zaan llaḡme .

He weighed the meat.

naṭṭ lxədar bəssalle .

He put the vegetables in the basket.

lafat ʕand lbinaaye .

He turned at the building.

nəzel bʔoteel mniin .

He stopped at a good hotel.

3. Transformation Sentences II. Change the verb forms from prefix tense to the corresponding suffix tense forms.

ʔante btaakol belbeet ?

byaʕmel kelši mniin .

ʔeemta btənzal ʕalbalad ?

bruun maʕhon .

ʔanu saafa bterʒafu ʕalʔoteel ?

bətsaddeʔ ʔaxuuk ?

biriid samak ?

maṅʕayyof bʕaalee .

bimərr ʕaleena .

byetʕallamu ʕarabi belmadrase .

ʕuu bətkəbb tsaawi ?

mneʔʕod belʔahwe ʕand lmasa .

bəktob. ʔəsmak .

btafham ʕaliyyi ?

bədzuur ʔaḡmad ši ?

byəʕtəḡlla kelši mniin .

maa byəḡfaz darso .

daayman ʔuul lnaʔiiʔa .

bešrab ?ahwe ssaafa ?idaſš .
 leeš maa btas'al l'estaaz fanhon ?
 beddell rrežžaal fal'oteel .
 batsaafed ?abuuha .
 byaaxdu xams_loeraat .
 bfaawno bkəlšī .
 biredd ləğraad .
 btafref fiiha ?
 ?eemtabetšuuf ?ammad ?
 ?eemta menžiib xedarna man fando .
 hiyye btəlfet fiiha .
 hiyye betkuun belbeet ssaafa xamse .
 bzənn ?ənnak bətsiir ?estaaz .
 betnaamu bel'oteel ?

4. Questions and Answers.

1. kam yoom ?afatt bbeerunt ?
2. bi?anu ?oteel ?akalt ?
3. ween maddeet ferštak ?
4. ?addeeš dafafu na?? lbeet ?
5. ?emrak rent la?amcerka ?
6. miin ġasal lġasiil ?
7. la?anu siinama raanu ?
8. šuu ?allak l'estaaz tsaawi ?
9. daxlak ?eemta zaarak ?ammad ?
10. nšaalla felmet falee mniin ?

11. ?addeeš teleflensaab ? (How much does the bill come to?)
12. ?aluulak šuu bədhon ?
13. kam sene sarlha šša'nfa fandkon ?
14. b?addeeš baafak u?iyyet_llaħme ?
15. šuu katabu la?abuuhon fan_lmadrəse ?
16. sabant belbaħr šii ?
17. saafadet ?əmmha šii belğasiil ?
18. daxlak sa?aluuk fanni šii ?
19. ?addeeš ?axdet mafak ssafra mən saan fransiisko ləššaam ?
20. ?žiit mafa fala zaat lbaaboor ?

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Jones and Ahmad talk about how they are spending the summer.

- J. wéen_kent ? sarli_žəmfə_maa_šəftak ?
- A. wallə ?axətt_l'eelə utləft_maddeet_kam_yoom_belmašaayef .
- J. la?anu masyaf rənt ?
- A. bel?əwwal tleft_fala_bluudáan . umenħa fala_dhúur_ššweer .
- J. baayentak_mbašətt_ktiir !
- A. ?ée_walla . bass_yaa_réetak_kənt_mafi, kənt_mbašətt_?áktar .
- J. law_?əltəlli kənt_rənt_mafak .
- A. ?žiit_lafəndak_martéen_la?əllak, bass_maf_l'ásaf máa_šəftak .
- J. kənt_barráat_lbalad, rənt_fala_beerúut .
- A. šlón_šəft_šəefħa ?
- J. múu_?əšwab_mne_ššaam_bəktiir, bass_hlékt_mən_kətr_rrtuube .
- A. kənt_laazem_truuh_təsbəħ_belbaħr utətrəttəb_šwáyye .

- J. uhéek_ſmelt, sabant_tlét_marraat .
- A. ubihalmunáasabe mará?t_bitaríi?ak_ſala_ſálee ?
- J. tabíiſi, berrázſa_marreet_fiiha ;
- A. kíif_ſeſta ?
- J. lbalad_hélwe_ktiir umanaaxa_?ánla . bass_yaa_?axi_mafžúu?a_ktiir .
- A. tabíiſi . bihalwa?t_?áktar_nnaas_byežuulha .
- J. fekri_rúun_maddiili_fiiha_ſii_kam_yoom .
- A. ?iza_btěstannáani_ſii_yooméen yemken_?etlaſ_máſak .
- J. beſtannáak . lha?ii?a bfaddel_máa_ruun_lamanall_balaak .
- A. ſáfwan_yaa_?axi . ſert_taſref_ləblaad_?aktar_ménni .
- J. lana žəblak_?áhwe . ſúu bet?uul ?
- A. hoon žuwwa !? l?uuda_ſóob_ktiir . táſa_nətlaſ_labarra .
- J. mniih fii_?ahwe_ſeefiyye wára_l?oteel .
- A. ſéft_?addeəſ_hoon_lhawa_?abrad ?
- J. máſak_ha?? .
- J. blaai_ſala_ğáfle_bəddak_truun ?
- A. ſámmi žaaye_izúurna_lyoom .
- J. táyyeb_?éemta bšuufak ?
- A. bəkra_nšaalla . xáatrak .
- J. ?alla_máſak, maf_ſſaláame .

Conversation 2. The next day.

- A. ?axatt_ſərſa_žəmſteen .
- J. ſii_ſáal . lakaan_mnə?der_rruun_lyóom .
- A. lá? . bəkra_bikuun_?aſſan .

7.25

J. šuu_ʃaleek_šáǵel_lyoom ?

A. bæddi_ʔáaxod_lulaad uʔayyádhon_bəlmadrass .

J. ʔéemta_btəbda_ddruus ?

A. bʔáwwal_lxariif . yafni_bafid_ʃášr_tiyyaam .

J. ʔəbni_ləkbiir tʃárraf_ʃala_ʔəstaaz ʔəbn_ʃárab .¹ bæddo_yetʃállam_ʃando_ʃárab .

A. laʔéəš_byəlzamo_lʔárab .

J. fəkre táani_sene yəži_ləlbəlad_lʃarabiyye .

A. ʔalla_ixalliilak_yáa .

J. ʔalla_yəhfazak, uhalláʔ ʔéemta_mərruun ?

A. bəkra_bəži_lafandak been_ttmaane_wəttəʃa .

J. ʔaddəəš_byaaxod_mafna_ttariiʔ_labluudaan ?

A. múu_ʔaktar_mən_saaʃa_unəss .

Conversation 3. At the summer resort.

J. bæddak_dǵǵri halmanáazer_hoon btəšner_lʔənsaan .

A. ʔéə ləssaak_máa_šəft_šii, ʔiza_btəʔlaʃ_ʃaləráas[#]_lžabal bəʃuuf_lbarr .

J. bass_fii šwayyet_bárd .

A. ʔabiiʃi máa_bəʔi_bəʃseef ʔəlla_lʔaliil .²

A. bafid_šáhr máa_byəbʔa_hada_mne lmsayfiin .

J. bzennəllak_bifalee máa_bišiir_bard_mətl_hoon .

A. mʔákkad . unatta_fii_naas_ktiir bimaddu_lxariif_fiiha .

J. ʔánu_ʔabrad_bəššəte beerúut yemma_ššáam ?

A. ššáam_ʔábrad, bass_rabiif_ššáam həlu_ktiir .

J. fəkre_ʔəržəʃ_ʃalʔoteel bæddi_ʔáakol .

¹ʔəbn_ʃárab 'son of Arabs' is the commonest way of saying 'an Arab'. Similarly bənt_ʃárab and ulaad_ʃárab are used for the feminine and plural.

²máa_bəʔi_b-... ʔəlla-... 'there didn't remain ...except...' means 'there is only ...left'. máa_bəʔi_bəʃseef ʔəlla_lʔaliil 'There's only a little of summer left.'

A. yállá³ . nšáalla_ʔuuttak_mniina ?

J. sənhiyye_ktiir ššams_btežiiha mnəşşabáan lelmasa .

ʔyalla (= yaa_ʔalla) is used to mean 'come on, let's go, get going, get to work, scram'

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔāhla	sweeter, nicer, better	ḡāfle	
ʔālf (pl ʔaalāaf, ʔlūuf)	thousand	ʔāla_ḡāfle	suddenly
ʔānšaf	drier	ḡēem (coll; pl rag or ḡyūum)	clouds
ʔāwi (adj f ʔawīyye pl ʔawāaya)	strong	hāwa (m; pl ʔāhuyē ft)	air, wind
ʔūuda (ft pl ʔūwad)	room	hālek (a)	be exhausted
ʔənsāan	human being	haʔiʔa (ft pl haʔāayeʔ)	truth, fact
ʔəstāaz (pl ʔasāatize)	professor, sir	hālu (adj f hālwe pl həlwiin)	sweet, nice, pleasant
ʔāža (-əži)	come	kaʔānn-	as if, as though
bāayen (adj)	apparent	kātr	quantity of
bāda (a)	begin	lāʔa (-lāaʔi)	find
bāhr (pl bāhur)	sea, ocean	lāww	if (something were so)
bakkiir (inv)	early	māadi	past
bāla	without	mādrase (ft pl mādaares)	school
bārd	cold	mādda (i)	pass, spend (time)
barra (ft berraa- no pl)	outside, abroad	mahūl	unusual, extraordinary
beerūt (f)	Beirut	manāax (pl -aat)	climate
bluudāan	Bloudane - resort town near Damascus	mānzar (pl manāazer)	view
dārs (pl drūs)	lesson	māraʔ (o)	pass
dhūur ššwēer phour Choueir,	Lebanese mountain resort	mārr (e)	maraʔ
fākr (pl ʔafkāar)	idea, intention	māsyaf (pl mašāayef)	summer resort
fērṣa (ft pl fēraṣ)	opportunity, chance, leave, vacation	mātar (f pl ʔamtāar)	rain

mbáṣaṭ (-mbəṣeṭ)	be happy	šóob (coll)	heat
mətl	like, as	šetwiyye	winter season
mšáyyef (adj)	spending the summer	táṣa (fem táṣi pl táṣu)	come
munáasabe (ft) biħalmunáasabe	occasion by the way	tǵáyyar	change, be changed
náašef (adj)	dry	tráṭṭab	get wet, be refreshed
ráas (pl rúus)	head	táʔs	weather
rabiiʔ	spring	ṭabiiʔi (adj)	naturally
rafiiʔ	Rafiq	ṭariiʔ (pl ṭereʔsat and ʔetroʔ ʔeterʔa)	road, way
ráṣṣa (ft)	return, way back	wáadi (pl wedyáan)	river valley, watercourse
rtúube (ft)	humidity, moist air	walláahi = wálḷa	
sábaħ (a)	swim	xaríif	fall, autumn
sáddaʔ	believe	yaa réet	O that!, I wish ...
sáħar (e)	enchant	zamáan	period of time, long time
sáwa	together	žábal (pl žbáal)	mountain
sətt (f) (pl settáat)	lady	žnúub	south
šáħħ (ə)	be healthy	žurwa (ft žurwaat no pl)	inside
šáyyaf	spend the summer	ʔaalée (f)	Aley, resort town near Beirut
šéef	summer	ʔámm (pl ʔmúum)	father's brother; father-in-law
šeeṭiyye (ft)	summer season		
šóob	toward		
šəħħi	healthful		
šáaf (u)	see		
šáms (f; pl šmúus)	sun		
šmáal	north (NB=left)		

SPOKEN SYRIAN ARABIC

Unit 7 - Supplementary Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. ʔaxatt ʔarʔa ʔkemfa lmaadye | I took leave last week. |
| 2. ʔtaʔa ʔanna helu | The weather we have is nice. |
| 3. lmanaax ʔanʕaf beʕʕaam | The climate is drier in Damascus. |
| 4. ʔee walla bard ktiir lyoom | Yes, indeed. It's quite cold today. |
| 5. ʔabrad men heeb maa fii | It can't be colder than this. |
| 6. nenna ʔayyafna bebluudaan | We spent the summer in Bloudane. |
| 7. maa fii ʕoob metl maa biʕiir ʕandhon | There isn't any heat like the kind they get. |
| 8. ʕanna lbahr mneʔder nesban ʔeemta maa kaan | We have the sea. We can swim at any time. |
| 9. saddeʔni maa fii rʔuube ktiir | Believe me, there isn't much humidity. |
| 10. mafak naʔʔ bass ʕʕeef hniik ʔaʕwab | You're right, but the summer there is hotter. |
| 11. maa biruunu balaana | They won't go without us. |
| 12. tafu mafna lanruun sawa | Come with us and we'll go together. |
| 13. ʕʕams ʔelfet bakkiir | The sun came up early. |
| 14. halwlaad..mneen ʔeʕu kelhon ʕala ʕafle ? | Where did all these children come from so suddenly? |
| 15. bass belnaʔiiʔa lʕariff hniik ʔaʕla | But in fact fall is nicer there. |
| 16. ʕemrak rent labeeruut ? | Have you ever gone to Beirut? |
| 17. ʕabaan lxeeraat yaa ʔaxi | Good morning, pal. |
| 18. ʕuu fekarak taʕmel hallaʔ ? | What do you intend to do now? |
| 19. fekri ruun zuuro | I intend to go visit him. |
| 20. laww kaan ʔaʕʕar bikuun ʔansan | If he were younger it would be better. |
| 21. ʕuu halhawa halli ʔeleʔ | What a wind just came up! |
| 22. ʔariiʔ ʕʕaam ʔansan men heek | The road to Damascus is better than this. |
| 23. helku men ketr ʕʕoob hassene | They were exhausted from the heat this year. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 24. barraŋŋa mre'u ŋalmadrase | On the way back stop (pl) at the school. |
| 25. ^{""} maddeet ŋŋetwiyye bbeeruut | I spent the winter in Beirut. |
| 26. lhawa beŋŋbaal maaŋef wŋŋŋi | The air in the mountains is dry and
healthful. |
| 27. l'astaaz 'eŋa met'axxer ŋaddars
l'awwal | The professor came to his first class
late. |
| 28. ŋaayef halmanaazer lnelwe hoon ? | Do you see these lovely views here? |
| 29. ssettaat bifadlu ymaddu ŋŋeef
beŋŋbaal | The ladies prefer to spend the summer
in the mountains. |
| 30. ŋala kell maal maa mre'der neŋod
barra | In any case we can't stay outside. |
| 31. ŋarref laŋuwa | Please come in. |
| 32. ŋabiŋŋi 'eŋn ŋammi mawŋuud
kamaan. " " | Naturally. My cousin's here too. |
| 33. 'addeŋŋ mbaŋaŋna ŋandkon | What a good time we had at your place! |

KEEPING CLEAN

Section A. Basic Sentences

At the barber's

gentleman

1. Welcome, sir.

by your life

Gibran

lighten

hair

2. I'd like a haircut please, Gibran.

you shave

chin.

3. Do you want a shave too?

cut

4. Cut my hair and then I'll see.

neck

5. How do you want your neck?

6. Take a little off there for me.

machine or gadget

scissors

7. Do you want me to cut your hair with clippers or scissors?

electricity

8. I have electric clippers.

bootblack

pair of shoes

9. Please tell the bootblack to shine my shoes.

polish

ʃand_lhallaaʔ

xawáaʒa

ʔahla_wsahla yaa_xawaaʒa .

wənyáatak or bənyáatak

žebraan

xáffef

šáʃr

wənyáatak_yaa_žebraan bəddi_xáffef_šáʃri_šwayye .

tʔəšš or táhleʔ

dáʔn

bəddak_tʔəšš_daʔnak_kamaan ?

ʔəss or hléeʔʔəsselli (or hləʔli)_šáʃri wbaʃdeen_bšuuʃ .

ráʔbe

šloon_bəddak_rraʔbe ?

xáffəfli_yaaha .

mákana or maakina

mʔáss

bəddak_ʔəssəllak_šáʃrak_bəlmakana_wella_bəlmʔáss ?

kəhraba

ʃandi_maakina ʃalkahraba .

bóoyaʒi

sabbaat

ʃmeel_maʃruuf ʔuul_ləlbóoyaʒi yəmsahli_sabbaati .

lámmeʃ

10. Do a good job on the shoes, Ali.

oil

11. Shall I put hair tonic on, or just water?

comb

12. Comb it dry.

part, difference

13. And put the part on the side.

14. I think I have time to shave.

knife

yours

sharp

15. Is your razor sharp?

razor blade

16. I'll shave you with a safety razor if you want.

I brush you

17. Do you want me to brush you off, sir?

18. (Polite formula)

19. (Reply)

wood (for fuel)

tank, hot water heater

20. Please put wood in the heater.

kindle, light

bath

21. And light (the heater for) a bath.

you get a bath

22. When do you want to take your bath?

possible

23. Now, if possible.

fali

lamməfli_səbbaat mniin yaa_fali .

zéet

bəttəllak_zéet_šəfə wəlla_bəss_mayy ?

máššət

máššətli_yaa_fannaašef .

fār?

wəfməlli_lfar? fala_žanab .

bəftəker_fandi_waʔt_laʔəšš .

múus

tābaʔak

hādd

lmúus_tabəʔak hadd ?

šāfra

bʔəššəllak_bəššəfraʔiza_bətriid .

faršīilak

bəddak_faršīilak yaa_ʔəstaaz ?

naʔiiman yaa_siidi .

yənʔam_faleek .

hātab

ʔaazāan

bənyaaʔək hətʔti_hətab_bəlʔaazāan .

šāʔʔel

hammāam

wšəʔliili_lhammāam .

təthāmmam

ʔeemta_bəddak_təthāmmam ?

māmken or mūmken

hallaʔ_ʔiza_māmken .

- | | |
|------------------|------|
| noon | dáhr |
| mother's brother | xáal |
24. We're going to my uncle's this afternoon. bədna_nruuh labeet xaali baŋd_dəhr
- | | |
|-----|------|
| hot | šəxn |
|-----|------|
25. Don't put too much wood on; I don't like the water too hot. laa_tuətti natab_ktiir maa_bnebb_lmayye šəxne_ktiir .
- | | |
|---------|---------|
| prepare | hádder |
| clothes | tyaab |
| towel | mánšafe |
26. All right, let me get out your clothes and the towel for you. tayyeb . lanaddər lak_tyaabak welmanšafe
- | | |
|-------------------|---------|
| soap | saabúun |
| fiber bath sponge | líife |
| there they are | šáfhon |
| closet, cabinet | xzáane |
27. And the soap and sponge are in the cabinet. waššaabuun_welliife šáfhon_belxzaane .
- | | |
|------|-------|
| open | ftáan |
|------|-------|
28. Open it and take them (out). ftanna wxedhon .
- | | |
|-------|--------|
| suit | táʔm |
| brown | bánni |
| shirt | ʔamiis |
| white | ʔabyad |
29. Are my brown suit and white shirt ready? taʔmi_lbənni wəlʔamiis_lʔabyad haadriin_šii ?
- | | |
|----------|---------|
| cleaners | mášbəga |
|----------|---------|
30. I just brought them from the cleaners. hallaʔ_šəbthon_mnalmasgağa .
- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| socks, stockings | kalsáat or šraabáat |
|------------------|---------------------|
31. And your socks are ready, too. wkalsaatak (or wəšraabaatak) haadriin_kamaan .

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| you close | tsákker |
| tap | hanafiyye |
| you finish | btáxloş |
32. Don't forget to turn off the tap when you finish.
- | | |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| dry (verb) | laa_tansa_tsakker_lhanafiyye wa't_ |
| | btaxloş . |
| | naşşef |
33. Dry yourself well so you don't catch cold ("better you not take cold").
- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| you are afraid | naşşef_haalak_mniin ?ansan_maa_taxod_ |
| sweetheart (fem.) | bard . |
| | txáaf |
| | habíibe |
34. Don't worry about me, dear.
35. (Formula at end of bath)
36. (Reply)
- | | |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| coat | laa_txaafi_faliyyi_yaa_habiibti . |
| hat | nafiiman yaa_habiibi . |
| | yansam_faleeki . |
| | kabbúud <u>or</u> kabbúut |
| | berneeta |
37. Bring me my coat and hat and let's go.
- | | |
|--|---|
| | ziibiili_lkabbuud_walberneeta_lanruus . |
|--|---|

Section B. Pronunciation

183

1. The inserted vowel at the end of words.

Many Arabic words end in two consonants, such as xəbz, daʔn, ʔərš, etc. As you have probably already noticed, words of this kind are often pronounced with an extra -ə- between these two consonants: xəbez, daʔən, ʔərəš. There is a good deal of fluctuation in the use of this ə, but a few general statements can be made,

- (1) All words ending in two consonants tend to have the inserted vowel when the word is the last word in a question. This is discussed below with the whole question of question intonation.
- (2) Apart from questions, with some particular consonant combinations in these words the ə tends to be used regularly (e.g. sm: ʔəsəm; bn: ʔəbən) and with other combinations the ə tends to be used very little (e.g. rš: ʔərš; nt: bənt). The combinations that tend to have the rarely are chiefly:
 - a) r or l plus another consonant (ʔbfttdsszšzk)
 - b) mb, mf, nd, nt, nt
 - c) many combinations ending with t or s

PRONUNCIATION		PRACTICE ONE	
ʔalf	thousand	daʔən	chin
ʔərš	piastre	ʔəsəm	name
bard	cold	ʔamer	order
bənt	girl	ʔabəx	cooking
* ʔalb	heart	bəhər	sea
dars	lesson	səxən	hot
šams	sun	ʔaʔəm	suit
farʔ	separation	* bəʔən	abdomen

- (3) Double consonants at the end of a word are usually not split by this inserted vowel (e.g. məs, never *məsəs), but there is an exception. When the double consonant is tt or ʔt in the first or second person singular of the suffix tense of a verb, the inserted vowel often appears (e.g. fətt or fəʔət 'I passed').

PRONUNCIATION		PRACTICE TWO	
sətt	lady	*fətt or fəʔət	I passed
xəʔt	line	ʔaxəʔt or ʔaxəʔət	I took
həʔt	he put	fətt or fəʔət	I repeated

2. Question intonation.

The intonation, i.e. the way the level of pitch at which a sentence is spoken rises and falls, of Arabic is, on the whole, very similar to that of English. The chief difference is the question intonation.

In Arabic there are three kinds of questions in terms of intonation. One kind is the QUESTION-WORD QUESTION. There were two examples in Unit 8 Basic Sentences - 8.5 and 8.22. Questions of this kind contain a question word šuu 'what', 'addeš 'how much', 'eemta 'when', leeš 'why', ween 'where', 'anu 'which', miin 'who', and some others. In a question of this kind normally the loudest stress and highest pitch are on the question word, the pitch drops right after the stressed syllable and stays there until the end of the sentence, the whole sentence is spoken in one phrase, and the last syllable of the sentence is drawled or stretched out. This intonation is strikingly different from the normal American intonation on questions of this kind and must be imitated very carefully.¹ Here are examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

1. bi'ānu 'otēel_nāazel ?
2. ween_kānt_ʔābl_ḍḍāher ?
3. 'eemta_bšūufak_bēkra ?
4. 'addeš_hā'ʔo ?
5. lawēen_rāahet_ṣṣāanfa ?
6. dāxlak² šlōen_šēelto ?
7. šala 'ānu_baabōor_ʔīit ?
8. šūu_beddak_yāaha_tāsmel ?
9. šlōon_lhāale_bēššām ?
10. nšāalla³_katābt_la'axlūk ?

Another kind of question is the YES-OR-NO QUESTION. Questions of this type have no question word. Examples in Unit 8 Basic Sentences include 8.3, 8.15, 8.17. The primary stress comes in various places in the sentence depending on the constructions. The pitch is fairly high at the beginning, drops in the middle if the sentence is rather long, and rises at the end. This is not very much different from the ordinary American intonation in such questions. The chief difference is that Arabic speakers often drawl the last syllable of question of this kind, too, so that they sound a little strange to Americans.

The third kind is almost a combination of the first two: the EITHER-OR QUESTION. There are two examples in Unit 8 Basic Sentences: 8.7 and 8.11. Questions of this kind are spoken in two parts, so that they often sound like two separate sentences to Americans. The first half of the question is just like an ordinary yes-or-no question. The second part, beginning with the word for "or" (walla, 'aw, yaa, etc.) ends like a question-word question, and some speakers even put loud stress and high pitch on the word for "or" making it a regular question-word. This either-or intonation is quite different from American intonation for sentences of this kind, but it is easy to learn once you pay attention to it and try to imitate it. Here are examples of yes-or-no questions and either-or questions:

¹One caution: if you overdo the drawling of the last syllable many Arabs will find this humorous or distasteful, so you must be careful to imitate the drawl without stretching the vowel too much.

²When a word like dāxlak or balla is used with one of these questions, it is said first, usually with a fall in pitch like the end of a statement and then the remainder of the sentence is spoken like any other question-word question. For example see sentence 3.34 in Unit 3.

³The word nšāalla often functions as a question word along with this intonation. There was an example in Unit 1 (Sentence 1.7)

1. btáref_?axduhon_šii ?
2. bèddak_yàaha_táref_tétbox ?
3. rana_táakol_hállá? ?
4. húwwe_hállí_?állak_trũn ?
5. dafa_télló_há??_tá'mak_šii ?
6. betriid_tšarrèfna_falbèet ?
7. bet'ášš_belmuus_yamma_bèššáfra ?
8. menzũuro_lyóom_wèlla_békra ?
9. betfáddeI_lám_lbá'ař_wèlla_lgánam ?
10. ?állak_trũn_hállá?_yamma_báfd_sáafa ?

Section C. Analysis

Note 8.1 Verbs. All Arabic verbs have Prefix and Suffix Tense and Command forms and they all have the same prefixes and suffixes. As you have seen, however, Arabic verbs show considerable variation in the structure of the stem. There are two general types of Arabic verbs: (1) Verbs with stem consisting simply of root plus pattern (katab, yaktob; šaaf išuuf; dall idall; etc.). These will be called PRIMARY VERBS. (2) Verbs with stem consisting of root plus pattern plus some other feature, such as doubling the second consonant (šarraf, isarraf), long -aa- between the first and second consonant of the root (saafad, isaafad), -t- after the first consonant of the root (štaḡal, yaštāḡel), etc. These will be called DERIVATIVE VERBS.

Primary verbs have two possible patterns in the Suffix Tense:

Pattern A characterized by the vowel -a- in certain positions (katab, fataḥ, ṭabax; šaaf, naam, žaab; dall; naka).

Pattern I characterized by the vowels i, e, ə in various positions (naẓel, fəhem; naṣi).

For each primary verb you must learn whether it has pattern A or I in the Suffix Tense.

Derivative verbs have only one possible pattern in the Suffix Tense. They all have pattern A (sakkar, saafad, štaḡal, mbaṣaṭ).

Primary verbs have three possible patterns in the Prefix Tense:

Pattern A characterized by the vowel -a- in certain positions (yaftaḥ, inaam, yaʔra).

Pattern I characterized by the vowels i, e, ə in various positions (yənzel, iṣiib, yaḥki)

Pattern U characterized by the vowels u, o, ə in various positions (yaṭbox, išuuf)

For each primary verb you must learn whether it has pattern A, I, or U in the Prefix Tense.

In general derivative verbs have only one possible pattern in the Prefix Tense, and in general any one kind of derivative verb always has the same pattern in the Prefix Tense. For most kinds of derivative verbs this is pattern I (isakker, isaafad, yaštāḡel, yambāset); but certain kinds, chiefly those with a -t- before the first consonant of the root, have pattern A (yaṭṭallam, yaṭʔaxxar, etc.).

In other words, for derivative verbs you have to learn only one form and you will know all the other forms. For a primary verb you have to learn two forms so that you know the stem vowel of the Suffix Tense and the stem vowel of the Prefix Tense. From this unit on only the third person singular masculine form of the Suffix Tense will be given in Vocabularies for derivative verbs; for primary verbs this form will be given and in parentheses after it will be the pattern of the Prefix Tense. Here are sample entries:

naššaf	dry	(naššef 'he dried'; inaššaf 'he dries')
tšallam	learn	(tšallam 'he learned'; yetšallam 'he learns')
fataḥ (a)	open	(fataḥ 'he opened'; yeftaḥ 'he opens')
katab (u)	write	(katab 'he wrote'; yəktob 'he writes')
nəzel (i)	go down	(nəzel 'he went down'; yənzəl 'he goes down')

Note 8.2 Active participles. Study the underlined forms from the Basic Sentences of Units 1-8 given below:

- 2.27 šaayef lbinaaye lḡamra...? Do you see the red building...?
- 3.10 šaaye layzuur blaadna . He's here (=he has come) to visit our country.
- 3.13 ... laazem ʔətrok... ... I'll have to leave...
- 3.40 ... lamma bikuum faadyiin ... when they're free.
- 4.32 ... kaanet ʔaafde She was sitting ...
- 5.19 bəttəllak lbaaʔi ... I'll put the rest (=the remaining) ...
- 7.16 lhawa ... naašef uṣənni ... The air ... is dry and healthful ...
- 7.30 ... rəhna bəssəne lmaadye we went last year ...
- 8129 ... taʔmi ... wəlʔamiis ... naadriin šii ? Are my ... suit and ... shirt ready?

Each of these words has long -aa- between the first and second consonants and -e- after the second consonant, has the regular feminine and plural forms of an adjective (Ft ending and -iin), and is associated with a simple verb having the same root. Words of this kind will be called ACTIVE PARTICIPLES. Often for the sake of convenience they will be translated by English verb forms in -ing (seeing, dcing, passing, etc.), but actually the active participle of Arabic does not correspond exactly to any English form. Its use and meaning are described below.

As mentioned in Note 5.4 most Arabic roots consist of three consonants. Roots of this kind are called SOUND (in Arabic saalem). Some roots, however, do not have a full-fledged consonant in the position either of the second or of the third consonant of the root. Such roots are called WEAK (in Arabic muštall). If it is the second consonant that is missing the root will be symbolized CVC. If it is the third consonant that is missing it will be symbolized CCV. For all CVC and CCV roots the missing consonant appears as a -y- in the active participle. Here are the forms:

CCC	√nšf	naašef	naašfe	naašfiin	dry
	√rřf	řaaref	řaarfe	řaarfiin	knowing
	√nzl	naazel	naazle	naazliin	going down
CVC	√nvm	naayem	naayme	naaymiin	asleep
	√žvb	žaayeb	žaaybe	žaaybiin	bringing
	√švf	šaayef	šaayfe	šaayfiin	sleeping

CCV	√hkv	naaki	naakye	naakyiin	speaking
	√tʃv	ʃaati	ʃaatye	ʃaatiin	giving
	√bʔv	baaʔi	baaʔye	baaʔyiin	remaining

Here are further examples of active participles:

1. gaatet ulaado belmadrise . He has (put) his children in school.
2. byezhar ʔabu ʃafiif baayef kall xedrto . It looks as though Abu Afif has sold all his vegetables.
3. miin faateh lbaab ? Who opened the door?
4. ʔana faahem ʃalee ʃuu beddo . I understand what he wants.
5. laa tɛŋki lulaad naaymiin . Don't talk. The children are sleeping.
6. haada ʔente halli kaateb lwaraʔa ? Was it you who wrote the paper?
7. tfaɖdal kool maʃi . mamnuun ʔaakel . Please eat with me. No, thank you, I've eaten.

The active participle usually refers to past-present action, i.e. action that has already begun and is still going on or that has already taken place and the results are still in evidence. For example, the use of gaatet in sentence 1. implies that the children are still in school. gaat lulaad belmadrise . 'He put the children in school.' would refer to the specific act of putting the children in school without any indication of whether they are still there or not. Similarly, you would use sentence 3. only if you knew the door was still open. miin fatah lbaab 'who opened the door?' would give no indication of whether he door was still open or not.

Here are several examples of a somewhat different use of the active participle:

1. nɛhna naazliin bɛkra ʃala beeruut . We're going down to Beirut tomorrow.
2. nʃaalla bɛkra raaʒef ʃala ʃɛgli . I hope I'll get back to my work tomorrow.
3. ʔahmad muu ʒaaye lyoom . Ahmad isn't coming today.
4. ʔaalfa laʔuudɛtha dʒiib ɣaraɖ . She's going up to her room to get something.
5. nɛhna baaʔyiin hoon saaʃteen . We'll be staying here two hours.

With verbs relating to place (i.e. to motion from one place to another, or remaining in the same place) the active participle is more often used to refer to present-future action, i.e. to action now taking place and to be continued or action to take place in the future. Sometimes the active participles of these verbs are used in the usual past-present way e.g.:

1. biʔanu ʔoteel naazel ʔaxuuk ? What hotel is your brother staying (= has gone down) at?
2. ʃarli ʔet ʒemaʃ taarek beeruut . I left Beirut three weeks ago.

Notice that the verb *la'a* 'find' has a very unusual Prefix Tense stem *-laa'i* instead of the expected **-l'i*.

Derivative verbs with CCV roots (with the single exception of *stanna* *yastanna* 'wait') have pattern A in the Suffix Tense and pattern I in the Prefix Tense. Here are the verbs of this kind which have appeared in Units 1-8:

<i>madḍa</i>	<i>imadḍi</i>	<i>√mdV</i>	pass, spend (time)
<i>wadda</i>	<i>iwaddi</i>	<i>√wdV</i>	take, lead
<i>wassa</i>	<i>iwassi</i>	<i>√wsV</i>	order
<i>xalla</i>	<i>ixalli</i>	<i>√xlv</i>	leave, let
<i>štara</i>	<i>yəštəri</i>	<i>√šrV</i>	buy
<i>farša</i>	<i>ifarši</i>	<i>√frš + V</i>	brush

Note 8.4 Command Forms. In Note 5.1 the command forms were given in full for most kinds of verbs. It was explained that the Prefix Tense stem of a verb is used unchanged in the masculine command form if it begins with a single consonant, and is used with lengthened stem vowel if it begins with two consonants, e.g. *suuf*, *dell*, *wa'ef* but *šmeel*, *tlaaf*. Two further points must be observed in this connection.

(1) All derivative verbs use the Prefix Tense stem unchanged as the masculine command form no matter whether the stem begins with one consonant or two, e.g. *štaḡel* 'work!', *štəri* 'buy!', *tfallam* 'learn!'; *saa'ed* 'help!', *naššef* 'dry!', *xalli* 'leave!'.

(2) When a pronoun ending (such as *-ni*, *-ak*, etc.) with or without *-l-* 'to, for' is added to a command form certain shortenings take place. Two examples occurred in this Unit:

<i>nlee'</i>	cut hair	<i>nle'li</i>	cut hair for me
<i>šmeel</i>	do	<i>šmelli</i>	do for me

For ordinary primary verbs with sound roots the lengthened stem vowel is shortened: *-aa-* is shortened to *-a-*; *-ee-* and *-oo-* are shortened to *-e-*.

Here are examples with the pronoun ending *-o* 'him, it':

<i>ftaah</i>	open	<i>ftaḥo</i>	open it	<i>ftaḥlo</i>	open for him
<i>šmeel</i>	do	<i>šmalo</i>	do it	<i>šmello</i>	do for him
<i>ktoob</i>	write	<i>kṭabo</i>	write it	<i>kṭblo</i>	write to him

The command forms of the verbs *'akal* *yaakol* 'eat' and *'axad* *yaaxod* 'take' are also shortened:

<i>kool</i>	eat	<i>kalo</i>	eat it	<i>kello</i>	eat for him
<i>xood</i>	take	<i>xədo</i>	take it	<i>xədlo</i>	take for him

Notice that CVC verbs which have a long vowel in the Prefix Tense do not have this shortened form with pronoun endings:

<i>žiib</i>	bring	<i>žiibo</i>	bring it
<i>šuuf</i>	see	<i>šuifo</i>	see it

However, as mentioned in Note 4.5, a long vowel before the final consonant of a word is shortened before *-l-* 'to, for' so that these verbs have the shortened form with this *-l-*:

<i>namlak</i>	sleep (for yourself)
<i>žabli</i>	bring (to) me
<i>šəflo</i>	see for him

Primary verbs with CVV roots drop the 'a- of the command form when these pronoun endings are added:

'ansa	forget	nsaa	forget it	nsaalo	forget for him
'akki	speak	akki	speak it	akkiilo	speak for him

Examples of command forms without and with pronoun endings:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. xood legraad mafak . | xodon mafak . |
| Take the things with you. | Take them with you. |
| 2. s'aal l'astaaz fan ddars . | s'alo fanno . |
| Ask the professor about the lesson. | Ask him about it. |
| 3. sunf xaliil bekra . | sunfo bekra . |
| See Khalil tomorrow. | See him tomorrow. |
| 4. dall nabiiha falbeet . | dalla falbeet . |
| Direct Nabiiha to the house. | Direct her to the house. |
| 5. ktoob 'asmak falwara'a . | ktebo falwara'a . |
| Write your name on the paper. | Write it on the paper. |
| 6. b'faat lulaad falmadrise . | b'faton falmadrise . |
| Send the children to school. | Send them to school. |
| 7. 'akki l'amiis l'abyad . | kwii . |
| Iron the white shirt. | Iron it. |
| 8. dfaaf lewsaab . | dfafo . |
| Pay the bill. | Pay it. |
| 9. 'a'ra darsak . | 'raa . |
| Read your lesson. | Read it. |
| 10. stanna 'ahmad 'addaam ssiinama . | stannaa' hniik . |
| Wait for Ahmad in front of the movie. | Wait for him there. |
| 11. fteker fiiha la'ahmad . | ftakarilo fiiha . |
| Think about it for Ahmad. | Think about it for him. |

Note 8.5 m - Nouns. There are several prefixes that occur with certain pattern forming nouns of special meanings. The commonest of these prefixes is m-, which occurs with a variety of patterns (maḥsuuf, mat'axxer, matḥam, matrife, etc.). One common pattern is maCCaC which is found in the following nouns of Units 1-8:

m - noun	meaning	root	meaning
manzar	view	√nẓr	looking
masyaf	summer resort	√syf	summer
matḥam	restaurant	√ṭim	food, tasting
madrise	school	√drs	studying
manṣafe	towel	√ḥṣf	dryness
masbeḡa	cleaner's	√sbḡ	dyeing

In general m - nouns of this kind (maCCaC with or without ft ending) refer either to the place or instrument of the action referred to by the root. Thus a madrise is a place where people study (√drs); a manṣafe is a thing with which people dry themselves (√ḥṣf). A few m - nouns of this kind simply name the action of the root (e.g. manzar). Further examples of m - nouns like the ones mentioned are given below. Each noun is marked P if it is an m - noun of place (in Arabic 'asm makaan), and I if it is an m - noun of instrument ('asm 'aale). Other nouns are unmarked.

P	maktab	office, desk	√ktb	writing
P	maʿmal	factory	√ʿml	doing, working
P	maʿʿad	seat	√ʿʿd	sit
P	masbaḥ	swimming pool, place where people swim	√sbh	swim
P	maxraʿ	exit	√xrʿ	going out
P	maṭbax	kitchen	√tbx	cooking
P	mamraʿ	corridor	√mrʿ	passing
I	madfaʿ	cannon, big gun	√dfʿ	pushing, attacking, paying
	mazhar	appearance	√zhr	appearing
P	maktabe	library, bookstore	√ktb	writing, books
I	mamsana	dustcloth, rag for cleaning	√msn	wiping
I	maḥfaza	container, wallet	√hfz	preserving
I	maḡsale	wash basin	√ḡsl	washing
	masʿale	question	√sʿl	asking

It is worth noticing that the masculine nouns of this pattern are usually nouns of place while the feminine nouns are usually nouns of instrument, although you can't predict which noun is going to be which.

All the examples given above contain sound roots. If the second and third consonant of the root are alike (abbreviated $\sqrt{C_1 C_2 C_2}$) the pattern is maCaCC, feminine mCaCCe/a:

	maḥarr	corridor	√mrr	passing (cf √mrʿ)
	maḥall	place	√hll	solving
P	maṣaḥḥ	sanatorium	√ṣḥḥ	health
P	maḥatta	station	√ḥtt	putting
I	maḍaḍḍa	pestle	√ḍḍḍ	striking, pounding
I	maʿaṣṣe	broom	√ʿṣṣ	sweep, shame
I	maḥabbe	love	√ḥbb	loving

With CCV roots the pattern is maCCa:

P	maṣṭa	winter resort	√ṣṭv	winter
P	maḥʿa	meeting place (for lovers)	√ḥʿv	meeting

With CVC roots the pattern is usually maCaaC although occasionally it is maCyaC or maCwaC:

	mataar	airport	* √tvr	flying
	maḥaam	dream	√ḥvm	sleeping
	maḥaame	sleep	√ḥvm	sleeping

1. Questions and answers A. Every one of these questions contains an active participle. Use the participle again in the answer.

1. fand miin naale? šafrak ?
2. laween raayen bekra ?
3. miin faaten lbaab ?
4. šuu 'aayehallak 'emmak tešteri ?
5. bi'anu madrase naaṭeṭ ulaadak ?
6. fala 'amu baaboor šaaye ssett men 'ameerka ?
7. 'addeeš šarlha ššaana taarektkon ?
8. bi'eeš 'aašeš da'nak ?
9. šuu 'esm ššaana halli naaṭṭiinha fandkon ?
10. kam sene baa'i lašebnak lekbiir belmadrase ?
11. 'addeeš daafeš na?? ta'mak ?¹
12. naazliin 'entu halla? šalbalad ?
13. nšaalla baa'i 'axuuk fanna labekra ?
14. ṭaaleš bi'iidak² truun halla? ?
15. 'eemta šaaye šaaneṭtkon taaxod leḡraad ?
16. ṭaalfa mafak ssett šalmašaayef ?
17. nšaalla naafziin darskon ?
18. mneen šaarye 'emmak halkabbund ?³
19. naabbe 'emmak ṭeṭlaš mafak ?

2. Questions and answers B. Every one of these questions contains a Suffix Tense form. Use Suffix Tense forms in the answers whenever possible.

1. mneen štareetu llaḡme ?
2. ween maddet 'emmak ššeefiyye lmaadye ?
3. leeš ma saawet ššaana ttxuut ?
4. 'eemta 'ežu 'awafiik mnelmašbaḡa ?
5. maf miin raanu ulaadak fašsiinama ?
6. 'anu saafa badeet šeḡlak lyoom ?
7. fand miin la'a 'aḡmad šeḡl ?
8. b'addeeš štaraalak 'abuuk halkabbund ?
9. leeš maa 'areet darsak 'abl mastruun šalmadrase ?
10. bi'anu madrase 'ayyadet ('ayyatt) ulaadak ?

¹ = 'How much did you pay for your suit?' The regular Arabic equivalent of "pay for" in this sense is dafaš na??.

² ṭaaleš b(i)'iidak 'can you' The expression ṭeleš b'iid- means 'be in a position to, find it possible to.' Cf. the use of taḡt 'iidi in Unit 4 = 'at my disposal, I have available.'

³ The active participle šaari 'buying' is used altho the primary verb of šrV is not used in Syrian Arabic.

11. kam yoom b'iiitu bbeeruut ?
12. 'eemta zaarak l'estaaz ?
13. miin na''aalak halkuusaayaat ?
14. leeg; maa redi 'axuuk yeb'a hoon labekra ?
15. šuu nsiitu hniik ?
16. miin fateralak'ibaab lamma 'ziit ?

3. Transformation Sentences A. These sentences can be transformed in a variety of ways. First a change them to feminine and plural as in the Completion Sentences A of Unit 5. Then go through the sentences again replacing nouns with pronoun ending. Here is a sample:

xood ulaadak 'almandrase .
 xedi ulaadek 'almandrase .
 xedu ulaadken 'almandrase .

xedhon 'aleeha .
 xediihon 'aleeha .
 xeduuhon 'aleeha .

1. 'ati lhalla' leera .
2. nett legraad balbeet .
3. zuur 'emmak u'abuuk .
4. 'ebda šeglak .
5. dfaaf na'' ta'mak .
6. 'aawen 'axuuk .
7. šuuf 'ahmad 'eemta beddo yexi .
8. 'ekwi ta'mak 'abl maa truun .
9. wassi xaliil 'allahme mnelyoom .
10. maddi sseefiyye ššaaye beššabal .
11. 'e'ra darasak lel'estaaz .
12. bfaat 'ebnak yehle' šafro .
13. 'ešš da'nak kell yoom .
14. kool llaame ma' lxedra .
15. stanna šebraan lahatta yexloš .
16. waddi hassalle 'albeet .
17. booyi sabbaatak .
18. xalli ššaana tamsan 'ard..l'uuda .
19. ktoob 'asaamiihon kelhon .
20. 'ansa ššaam halla' .
21. tšallam fransaawi byerda 'aleek 'abuuk .
22. ušaal la'and lhalla' .
23. ušuuf 'iza kaan faadi .
24. šteri graadak men 'and 'abu xaliil .
25. 'ebda šeglak bafid bakra .

26. farši kabbuudak .
27. xaffef šaṣrak .
28. ḡseel weššak .
29. tboox hallahme maf lkuusa .
30. dell nabiiha šalbeet .
31. ftaah lhanafiyye .
32. waʔʔef šala ʔawwal baab šala yamiinak .
33. laaʔi leḡraad .
34. ʔebʔa bbeetak šii kam y^{oo}em .
35. ʔtaaʔ tlaat waaʔ lahme .
36. biif lbeet bṣašriin ʔalf leera .
37. fhaam darsak mniin .
38. lfeet šand halbinaaye .
39. naʔʔi kiilooyeen teffaah .
40. sʔaal žebraan šen ʔaxuuk .
41. striin hoon šii kam saafa .
42. šraab lʔahwe .
43. ziin halbaṭṭiixa ušuufa ʔaddees bṭaṭlaʔ .

4. Transformation Sentences B. Add -l- 'to, for' with pronoun endings -i, -o, -ha, -na, -hon to the command forms in these sentences.

1. ʔiim halbaṭṭiixa šala žanab .
2. bṣaṣ xabar lamma bṭaṣal .
3. ktoob šala waraʔa šuu ʔelak mafi .
4. xood halḡraad šalbeet .
5. ʔaʔra kelši katabo ʔaxuuk .
6. ʔekwi ṭṭaʔm lbenni .
7. ziin xams waaʔ lahme .
8. fhaam leeš ʔahmad muu žaaye .
9. xalli halkam leera mafak .
10. ftaah lbaab lamma byeži žebraan .

5. Transformation Sentences C. Change the following to feminine and plural.

1. laʔa šeḡl bbeeruut .
2. nesi ḡraado beddekkaan .
3. kawa ʔemšaano lbiid .
4. naka kelši laʔaxuu .
5. farša ṭʔuumto .
6. ʔeža šalmadrase metʔaxxer .
7. reḡi bšii ʔaliil .
8. štara lahmto men šand ʔabu šafiif .
9. madda sseefiyye bžabal lebnaan .

10. be'i bel'oteel žemsteen .
11. waŝŝa ŝala kiilo mooz .
12. wadda lxəbz ŝalbeet .
13. xalla 'awaŝii belmaŝbağa .
14. bada bŝeğlo ssaafa tmaane .
15. 'ara darso 'abl maa iruun ŝalmadraxe .
16. madda ŝahreem hadhuur ŝŝweer .

6. Transformation Sentences D. Change the active participles in the following sentences to feminine and plural making any other necessary changes.

1. haatet ulaado belmadraxe .
2. bi'anu 'oteel naazel ?
3. leeŝ kaateb halwara'a ?
4. bekra raažeŝ ŝalmadraxe .
5. faahem ŝalee ŝuu bəddo ?
6. haafeŝ darsak ŝii ?
7. raayen ŝassiinama maŝna .
8. taarek bekra 'abl ddehr .
9. baa'i belbeet lelmasa .
10. raažeŝ ŝaŝŝaam baŝd bekra .
11. naazel ŝii maŝna labeeruut ?
12. baŝd ddehr taaleŝ ŝoob ləabal .
13. 'aakel men saafa .
14. ŝaayef ! kelŝi mniin .
15. 'aari ddars men 'abl .

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Jones and Ahmad meet.

- J. weenak bhal'iyyaam maa nada bi'suufak ?
 A. ?ana been l'ayaadi¹, bass bhalwa't saayef šegli ktiir.
 ufoo? haada ?ebni zzgiir muu mabsuut .
 J. xeer nšaalla ? salaamto, šuu saayerlo ?
 A. men meddet tlata rba? tiyyaam reže?
 mnalmadrise lmasa, maa ?ader laa yaakol ulaa inaam .
 J. uhallā? šloono ?
 A. ?ansan bašwayye . uyemken ba'd bekra biruun falmadrise .
 uhallā? laween raayen yaa mestər žoons ?
 J. naazel soob lbalad ?əštəri ta'm šetwi .
 A. lna?? bi'iidak², lbard hassane ?əža fala bakkiir .
 J. ?iza maa fii faleek šegəl, tafa mafi .
 A. ?ana raayen ?əss šafri , bxaaf ?iza rent mafak ?ərža? laa?i lhallaā?
 mafžuū?..
 J. ukiif ?iza stanneetak lahatta texloš ?
 A. heek mniin ktiir , lakaan ruun mafi lafand lpallaa? .
 J. la? rana ?əstannaak bəl'ahwe halli fala žanab lmarže .
 A. yafni hayy halli mnəfšod fiiha daa?iman ?
 J. hiyye bzaatha .
 A. faal , bkuun fandak fal'aktar ba'd saafa .
 J. haada ?iza kaan lhallaā? muu mafžuū? .
 A. ?ana bašref metl halwa't daayman bikuun faadi .

Conversation 2. They meet later after Ahmad's visit to the barber's.

- J. našiiman .
 A. ?alla yənšam faleek .
 J. šuu byəžhar bass ?aššeet šafrak , umaa hala't da'nak . yoom ?ee yoom la?⁴
 A. men fašr sniin u?ana b'əšš da'ni lanaali³ yoom ?ee yoom la?..
 J. bi'eeš ? belmuus yamma baššafra ?
 A. baššafra .
 J. xədlak ?ahwe ubafdeen mərruun .
 A. bass saar ddehr , laazem naakol .
 J. bi'anu matšam ?
 A. maa bədhā lmas'ale mataašem , mnaakol fanna balbeet .

¹been l'ayaadi = been ?ayaadiik 'between your hands = at your disposal'

²lna?? bi'iidak = lna?? mafak 'you're right'

³lanaal 'alone' lanaali '[me] alone, by myself'; lanaalo '[him] alone, by himself', etc.

⁴yoom ?ee yoom la? 'every other day'

J. ssett fandak muu faadye , 'ebnha balbeet muu maḡsuuṭ .

A. 'axi 'ana fala kall maal qaa baakol ḡeer balbeet weṣṣaḡel huwwe huwwe
'iza kaan lawaahed u'iza kaan latneen .

J. metl maa betriid .

(speaking to the waiter) 'addees beddak ?

A. walla maa btedfaṭ 'ante!!

J. maa fii far? beenaatna , dafaṭ uxalaṭ .

Conversation 3. At Ahmad's home.

Mrs.A. 'ahla usahla yaa mestar ḡoons .

J. 'ahla usahla fiiki , ṣloonek ?

Mrs.A. bxeer lḡamdella , u'ente ṣloonak ? nṣaalla 'axbaarssett, mniina .

J. lḡamdella , yamken taṣal maṭ lulaad baṭd xamṣtaṣṣar yoom .

Mrs.A. ṣaaye balbawer ?

J. naṣam, ṣarla taarke 'ameerka tlet tiyyaam .

Mrs.A. nṣaalla betṣuufa bassalaame. .

J. 'alla isalmek , daxlek ba'i fekri⁴ fand zaḡiir, weeno ?

Mrs.A. lḡamdella lyoom 'ansan baktiir , 'eḡet mar taxi 'axtto maṭ ulaadha
uraahu ṣassinama .

A. ṣloon xalleetii yaṭlaṭ bihalbard ?

Mrs.A. maṭlee ṣii , lwalad saar mniin lyoom .

A. ṭayyeb ṣuu fii fandek ṭabx ṭhaṭṭiilna ?

Mrs.A. ṭaabxa kuusa maḡṣi uluubye maṭ rrazz .

bass maa ba'i ṣanna fawaaki .

A. bṣati nabiiha dṣiib .

Mrs.A. matl 'eeṣ ?

A. halli betlaa'ii taaza wamniin , bass bṣaḡale badna naakol .

⁴ba'i fekri fand 'I've been thinking about, my mind has been on'

- A. bet'mor tašrab šii 'abl l'akal⁵ ?
 J. la' , namnuun .
 Mrs. A. tfaddalu saar l'akl .
 A. šarref mešter šoons , 'iza betriid tağsel 'iideek ,
 lmağsale šaŋha hniik
 Mrs. A. xadlo manšafe ndiife yaa 'ahmad .
 A. ween naatŋa lmanašei ?
 Mrs. A. balxzaane halli b'uudet lulaad .
 A. tfaddal lmanšafe mešter šoons .
-
- Mrs. A. laa t'aaxezna . yamken tkuun maa habbeet 'aklna .
 J. stağfirullaa , maa fii 'at'yab men heek tabx . sallem 'iideeki .
 Mrs. A. 'alla isalmak , uyagfazak .
 J. bekra lšamfa šağal maa fii , betruunu fala beeruut ?
 A. 'iza kaan tta's mniin merruun .
 J. fala halloon yamken 'ešteri tta'm men beeruut .
 A. xalliina nšuuŋ hoon wehniik bmanall maa menlaa'i šii mniin mnešteri .
 A. lakaan tafa nenzel falbalad halla' 'ansan maa net'axxar .
 Mrs. A. šuu blaa'iikon raayhiin 'abl maa taaxdu l'ahwe ?
 J. t'axxarna . ġeer marra nšaalla mnešrab .
 Mrs. A. yaa 'ahmad xood kabbuudak , taalef hawa barra .

5'akl 'food, eating' (cf. √'kl 'eating')

SECTION G. VOCABULARY

ʔabyád adj+(pl bēda pl bīd) white	mūg (pl mūas) knife, straight razor
ʔamfiṣ (pl ʔamṣān) shirt	nāṣṣaf dry
ʔāṣṣ (e) cut	naṣṣiman flā May it be to your comfort
ʔāṣṣ (e) sweep, shave	
ʔaazān (pl ʔaazanāat) water, heater	rāʔbe ft+(pl rʔāab) neck
bēnni adj coffee colored, brown (of things)	sákkar close, turn off
barneēṭa ft (pl-reg or baranīṭ) hat	saabūn coll soap
bēoyāzi (pl booyāziyye) boot-black	ṣabbāat (pl ṣababīṭ) pair of shoes
dāʔn (pl dʔūn) chin	ṣāxn adj hot
dehr noon	ṣāfra ft (safety) razor blade
fārṣa (i) brush	ṣāṣ- here (is, comes, etc.)
fārʔ (pl frūʔ(a) separation, difference, part (in hair)	ṣāṣr coll hair
fātan (a) open	ṣāṣal kindle, light
hāader adj ready	tābaṣ belonging to
habīb (pl habāayeb) sweetheart m.	ṭhammam take a bath
haṭībe ft sweetheart f.	tyāab pl (sg rare tōob) clothes
hādd adj sharp	ṭāʔm (pl ṭʔūme) suit of clothes
haḍḍar make ready, prepare	wāʔt (pl ʔawʔāat) time
hālaʔ (e-o) shave, cut hair	xāaf (a) be afraid men 'of'; worry ʔala 'about'
hallaʔ (pl hallaaʔiin) barber	xāal (pl xwāal) mother's brother
hanafiyye ft faucet, tap	xāffaf lighten, lessen
hātab coll wood for fuel, firewood	xālaṣ (o) finish
hayāat life	xawāaṣa mt (pl xawaṣāat) gentleman
bēnyāatak please, indeed, by your life	xzāane ft (pl reg or xazāayen) cabinet, closet
ḥammām (pl ḥammamāat) bath	zēet (pl zyūt) oil
kabbūud or kabbūut (pl kababīd, kababīit)	ṣāmb or ṣānab (pl ṣnāab) side
coat, overcoat	ṣabrāan Gibran
kāhraba f amber, electricity	ṣrṣabe ft stocking
kalsāat pl stockings	ṣāli Ali
lāmmaṣ polish	
līife ft + (pl līyaf) fibre bath sponge	
mʔāṣṣ (pl mʔaṣṣāat) scissors	
mākana or maakiina ft machine, gadget	
mānṣafe ft+(pl manāaṣef) towel, napkin	
māṣbaḡa ft+(pl maṣāabeḡ) laundry, the cleaner's	
māṣṣat comb	
mēmken adj possible	

PART TWO

At The Doctor's

UNIT 9

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | | | |
|--|--------|--|------------|
| | Saliim | | Saliim |
| 1. Good morning, ~~mar~~ . | | nhaarak_safiid_yaa_famar. | |
| | la | | Tabdi la |
| 2. Good morning, Abdul ~~Majid~~ . | | nhaarek_mbaarak_yaa_Abd_lmafiid. | |
| appearance | | hee?a | |
| the matter with you | | baak-iz-bak | |
| | | | iz-bak |
| 3. You don't look well. What's the matter with you? | | hee?tak_muu_mabsuut . | muu-baak ? |
| having a cold | | mraashen | |
| 4. Oh, I've had a cold for two weeks. | | walla_sarli_zamsteen_mraashen . | |
| ruling | | haakem | |
| pain | | waazaf | |
| 5. And I've had a headache. | | unaakamni_waazaf_raas . | |
| turn | | diir | |
| attention, mind | | baal | |
| he gets tired | | yatsab | |
| 6. Take care of yourself and don't get overtired. | | diir_baallak_fala_haalak ulaa_tatsab_ktiir . | |
| resting | | martaan | |
| 7. I've been resting at home for a week. | | sarli_zamfa_martaan_balbeet . | |
| some | | baifd | |
| bad | | suu? | |
| digestion | | haqm | |
| he coughs | | byasfol | |
| 8. But sometimes I get indigestion and cough a little. | | bass_baifd_l'aw'aat bisarli_suu?_haqm_ubasfol_šwayye . | |
| he decided | | itamad | |

- | | |
|---|---|
| doctor | nakiim |
| he examines | yafnaş |
| 9. I decided to come to the doctor's to get examined. | ʔatamaat ^t ʔaʃi laʃand lnakiim yafnaşni . |
| serious or important | mhámm |
| 10. I hope it's nothing serious. | lnšaalla maa fii šii mhámm . |
| doctor | doktóor |
| clever | šaater |
| 11. In any case Dr. Khayyat is a good doctor. | ʃala kell naal ddoktoor xayyaat doktoor šaater . |
| he treats, takes care | byaʃtáni |
| sick | marid |
| 12. And he'll take good care of your his patients. | bmaradna uhuwwe byaʃtani fiik mniin . |
| 13. I hope so. | batʔammal heek . |
| clinic | ʃoyáade |
| 14. And what brings you to his clinic too? | xeer nšaalla šuu žaaybak ʔante kamaan ʃala ʃoyaadto ? |
| 15. There's nothing the matter with me, thank God. | maʔabani
maa bani šii . baškor ʔalla . |
| 16. I'm here to ask the doctor about my brother. | žaaye laʔasʔal lnakiim ʃan ʔaxi . |
| night | léele |
| yesterday | mbáaren or mbáarna |
| wake up | fáaʔ bifiiʔ |
| abdomen | bátn |
| 17. Last night he woke up with a pain in his abdomen. | leelt mbaarna faaʔ ʃala wažaf bibaʔno . |
| hospital | mestášfa |
| 18. The doctor sent him straight to the hospital. | ddoktoor waddaa dağri ʃalmestašfa . |
| appendix | záayde |

19. He's afraid he has appendicitis.

operation

huwwe_xaayef lay'uun_maf_o_zzaayde .

famaliyye

20. Then they'll operate on him.

?izan byafmluulo_famaliyye .

21. I hope he comes through all right.

nšaaŋla_fala_salaame .

22. (Response)

?alla_ysalmak .

23. Good morning, doctor

nhaarak_safiid_yaa_nakiim .

24. Good morning. Please come in.

nhaarak_safiid_wambaarak .
tfaqqal_fuut .

25. What seems to be the trouble?
("Good, God willing. Tell me
what's the matter with you.")
pain

xeer_nšaaŋla . ŋkiili ^{šabak}šuu_baak ?

wážeŋ, byážaŋ

26. I've had a cold and headache for
two weeks.

?ali_žemšteen_mraššen webyežafni_raasi .

27. I want you to examine me.

beddi_yaak_tafnašni .

extend

mádd, bimádd

tongue

lsáan

28. Put out your tongue.

mádd_lsaaanak .

take off

šálan, byášlan

~~coverings~~ clothes

?awáafi

29. Take off your clothes and I'll
take a look.

šlaan_?awafiik_lašuuŋ .

lie down

tšáttan, byetšáttan

breath

náfas

30. Lie down and take a breath.

tšáttan uxood_nafas .

turn over

?álab, byá?leb (or byá?lob)

back

qahr

breathe

tnáffas, byetnáffas

31. Turn over on your back and breathe again.
get up ?leeb_ʕala_dahrak wetnaffas marra_taanee.
?áam, bi?úum
32. All right, get up. ?uum_ba?a .
33. What did you find with me, doctor?
("What came out with me?")
the grippe šuu_ʔaleʕ_mafi yaa_doktoor ?
?ábu_rrakab
34. You have the grippe, ^{Abdulla}~~Abdul Majid~~. mafak_?abu_rrakab yaa_ʕabdu_ʕabdu .
bath an immersion [Foot] bath of
35. Rest at home and make a ^{hot} water bath.
prescription striin_balbeet wafmeel_tagʕtiise
balmayye_saxne .
raašeeta or wafse
36. I'll make out a prescription for you.
pill lanasaawiilak_wafse (or raašeeta) .
hábbe
37. Take two pills before you sleep. xood_habteen ?abl_maa_tnaam .
38. Thank you, doctor. Goodbye. matšakker yaa_doktoor . xaatrak .
39. Goodbye. I hope you feel better soon. mʕaafa_nšaalla . mafi_ssalaame .

Section B. Pronunciation1. Assimilation

Most combinations of two consonants occur freely in Arabic (e.g. bt, tb, lk, kl, sr, rs, št, tš, ml, lm, etc.). A few combinations never occur (eg. gx, lr, tt). The rest vary. All this means that if two consonants come together (by a prefix joining a stem, a suffix joining a stem, one affix coming next to another, etc.) sometimes one or the other or even both may change, yielding a possible combination.

1. For example: ʔaxad 'took' + -tu 'you (pl)' → ʔaxattu. The combination *dt does not occur in normal Arabic speech. The first consonant is changed ("assimilated") to the second, i.e. instead of *dt one says tt. Similarly *td never occurs. ba- + t- 'she' + dall 'direct' → baddall 'she directs'. Here again the first consonant becomes like the second, i.e. instead of *td one says dd. Here is a list of such assimilations, where the first consonant is assimilated completely or partially to the second:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

- dt → tt ʔaxattu 'you took'
 ʔaattō 'she repeated it' (cf. ʔaadet 'she repeated')
 *mēttō 'his stomach' (cf. mēde 'stomach')
- td → dd *baddabber 'you arrange' (cf. dabber 'arrange!')
 baddell 'she directs'
 *ddaayaʔ 'he was annoyed' (cf. daayaʔ 'he annoyed')
- tz → dz bedziin 'she weighs'
 bedzuur 'you visit'
- tž → dž *naadže 'well-suited (fem)' (cf. naatež)
 bedžiibu 'you (pl) bring'
- št → št *mneštameʔ 'we meet together' (√ žmʔ)
- nr → rr merruuh 'we go'
 *rrabat 'it was tied' (n- + rabat 'he tied')
- nl → ll mellasʔi 'we meet, find'
 byellébes 'it is worn' (cf. labes 'he wore')
- nb → mb žamb 'side' (cf. pl. žnaab)
 menbiif 'we sell'
- nm → mm memmaššet 'we comb'
 mmadd 'it was stretched' (n- + madd 'he stretched')
- bm → mm mmaʔreftak 'by your acquaintance'
- bf → ff ffaršti 'in my bed'
- šs → xs btexsel 'she washes'
- dx → tx *tatxiin 'smoking' (√ dxn)

This list is not complete, but it shows all the important types. In many cases the first consonant is assimilated to the second in voicing (dt→tt, td→dd, tz→dz, tš→dž, žt→št, ġs→xs, dx→tx, bf→ff); in other cases it is assimilated in position or manner of articulation (gb→mb, nm→mm, bm→mm, nr→rr, nl→ll).

2. There is another kind of assimilation shown in two-consonant cluster, namely where one kind of sound is dominant no matter whether it comes first or second. For example, the combination *st never occurs, instead st is said, likewise *st never occurs, instead st is said. Thus the velarized sound always predominates. Here is a list of such assimilations:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

tt → tt *ttabbab 'he was treated' (t + tabbab 'he treated')
 tt → tt mbaṣatt 'I had a good time'
 st → st *ṣtabar 'he was patient' (ṣbr)
 ts → ts tṣattar 'he lay down'

3. In a few cases there is a double assimilation, i.e. the first consonant is assimilated to the second in voicing and both become velarized. For example:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

dt → tt uuṭṭi 'my room'
 td → dd *dḍaḥḥak 'he was amused, he laughed'

Section C. Analysis

Note 9.1 Passive participles. The underlined words in the following Basic Sentences are passive participles:

1.7 nš'alla-mabšut ? God willing you are well ("made happy")?

2.1 1š? lbāš-maššū ? No, the bus is crowded.

3.23 b'ānu-bālad-mawšūd ?axūk ? What city is your brother [found]in.?

Each of these words has the prefix ma- (cf. Note 8.5 m-Nouns) and long -uu- between the second and third consonants of the root, may have the regular feminine and plural forms of adjective (Ft ending and -iin), and is associated with a primary verb having the same root. Words of this kind will be called PASSIVE PARTICIPLES. Usually they may be translated by the corresponding English form "seen, done, made, found, etc. Passive participles are formed this way for primary verbs with sound roots. The passive participles of primary verbs with weak roots are rarely used (VC almost never), but when they do occur they always have -y- in the position of the missing consonant (as with active participles, of Note 8.2). Here are the forms:

CCC	√ktb	maktuub	maktuube	maktuubiin	written
	√rf	mafruuf	mafruufe	mafruufiin	known
	√ftH	maftuuh	maftuuna	maftuuniin	open(ed)

CVC	*madyuun	madyuune	madyuuniin	indebted
-----	----------	----------	------------	----------

CCV	mekwi	mekwiyye	(mekwiyyiin)	pressed
	mənši	mənšiyye	(mənšiyyiin)	stuffed

1. miin-tarak-lbāab-maftuuh ? Who left the door open?
2. hallanme ma'tuufa-mən-yoomen . This meat has been cut for two days.
3. saasto mašmuule-bi'ameerka . His watch is (was) made in America.
4. 'ana-bnebb-llanme lmatbuuxa-maflxədar . I like meat cooked with vegetables.
5. 'amiisak-mašsuul . Your shirt is (has been) washed.
6. miin-mas'uul-fan-'axd-lulaad-šalmadrəse ? Who is responsible ("asked") for taking the children to school?
7. 'əmməd mənkuum šalee yəb'a hoon lateži 'əmno . Almad is obliged to stay here until his mother comes.
8. lmayye ma'tuufa . The water is shut off.

Sometimes a passive participle is used as a regular noun with a special plural and special meaning. Example from Basic Sentences:

1.16 šmēel-mafruuf ... Please ("do a favor") ...

4.14 zāati nāada-matlūubi . That's just what I need ("my requirement").

Examples from roots you know:

<u>Root</u>	<u>Noun</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
✓ ktb	maktuub	makatiib	letters
✓ tlb	matluub	mataliib	requirement
✓ ſml	maſmuul (coll)		kind of pastry
✓ nzl	manzuul	(no plural)	space for guests
✓ ſrf	maſruuf	(no plural)	favor
✓ šrb	mašruub	mašruubaat	a drink (esp. alcoholic)
✓ ʔkl	(no singular)	maʔkuulaat	food(s)

Note 9.2 yaa- and other verbal particles. Numerous instances of yaa- with pronoun endings have appeared in Units 1-9. Examples from Basic Sentences:

- 3.12 ʔalla ixalliilo yaahon . God spare them (for him).
 4.15 tayyeb ranašeflak yaaha ... Fine, I'll see her (for you)...
 4.18 ... besʔallak yaaha I'll ask her for you.
 8.6 xaffefli yaaha . Take a little off there for me. (= "Light-
 4.6 šuu beddak yaaha taſmel ? en it for me")
 4.9 beddi yaaha tetbox ... What do you want her to do?
 5.35 beddak yaahon baʔar wella ġanam ? I want her to cook ...
 9.27 beddi yaak tefhašni . Do you want (them to be) beef or lamb?
 I want you to examine me.

In Units 3 and 4 you became familiar with the use of this yaa- as "sign of object." It is most commonly used (as in the first four examples) when two pronoun endings are required with a single verb; one is attached to the verb, the other to yaa-.

A. Often a pronoun with l- 'to, for' and a pronoun ending as direct object of the verb are both required. In this case the l- and its pronoun ending are attached to the verb and the direct object pronoun ending goes on the yaa-. For example:

1. breddellak yaaha . I'll give it (fem) back to you.
 2. bišeflna yaahon. He'll see them for us.
 3. žebli yaahon men ſando . Bring them to me from his place.
 4. ranaʔektəblak yaahon ſala waraʔa . I'm going to write them down for you
 on a piece of paper.
 5. miin fatah^hlak yaa ? Who opened it for you?
 6. saʔalli yaa . He asked him for me.

9.9.

In this construction usually only third person pronoun endings are added to the yaa- (i.e. only yaa, yaaha, yaahon occur).

B. With verbs which may have two direct objects, the yaa- is also used when two pronoun endings are required. In this case the pronoun ending referring to the person or indirect object is attached to the verb and the one referring to the thing is attached to the yaa-. Here are examples:

huwwe
7. /baaf ʔahmad lmuus . baafɔ yaa-. He sold Ahmad the knife. He sold him it.

8. ʔateena nabiiha lkiis . ʔateenaaha We gave Nabiha the bag. We gave it
yaa.. to her.

9. saʔalni yaa.. He asked me it. (cf sentence 6 above)

In this construction, also, usually only third person pronoun endings are added to the yaa-.

C. Another common use of yaa- is to reinforce a change of subject after bedd- 'want'. As we know, bedd- is often followed by a dependent verb (prefix tense form):

beddi ʔaŋki ʔarabi . I want to speak ("I speak") Arabic.

But if the subject of the dependent verb is different from that of the bedd-, then a yaa- is usually inserted with a pronoun ending referring to the subject of the dependent verb.

10. beddi yaak ʔaŋki ʔarabi . I want you to speak ("you speak") Arabic.

Here are further examples:

11. ʃuu beddo yaana naʃmel ? What does he want us to do?

12. maa bedha yaaha ʔetlaʃ . She doesn't want her to go out.

13. lʔestaaz beddo yaak ʔaŋfaʒ darsak . The professor wants you to memorize your lesson.

14. bedha yaani ʔabʔa baibeet maʃ lulaad . She wants me to stay at home with the children.

15. bedhon yaakon dzuuruuhon . They want you (pl) to visit them.

In this construction all pronoun endings may occur with yaa-. Notice that the "me" ending is -ni not -i or -yi. In Note 2.4 it was pointed out that -ni is added to verbs and -i or -yi to nouns, prepositions, etc. There are, however, a few special words, not verbs, that have -ni instead of the expected -i/-yi. Words of this kind will be called VERBAL PARTICLES. You have learned six of them so far (with the first person ending: lessaani, ʃaʃni, leekni, beni or bani, yaareetni, yaani). Apart from this use of -ni the forms of these words are regular except for those of b- which are discussed in the next Note.

Note 9.3. The prefixes bi- and fii-. The usage of these prefixes in Syrian Arabic is somewhat complicated. The various uses may be summarized under three headings (1) b(i)-/fii- 'in' and 'by', (2) b- 'the matter with', and (3) fii- 'there is, is able'.

(1) bi/fii 'in, by'. Here are examples from Units 1-9:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1.17 šuu_betʔuul_bəʔarabi haada ? | How do you say this in Arabic? |
| 1.20 bʔaddēš_haada ? | For how much is this? |
| 2.2 xalliina_netlaʔ_fii . | Let's get on it. |
| 2.25 tayyeb . man šaankon betlet waraʔaat . | All right, for you ("for your sake") three pounds. |
| 2.29 lfeet_fiiha . | Turn in there. |
| 3.11 ʔahla_wsahla fiik . | Welcome. |
| 3.14 ʔaddēš_sarлак_bəššaam ? | How long have you been in Damascus? |
| 3.23 bsaan_fraansisko . | In San Francisco.. |
| 5.7 man_ʔansan_lmahallaat bihalbalad . | From the best places in town. |
| 7.14 šanna_bəššaam ʔahla_bʔalf_marra . | It's a thousand times better here in Damascus. |
| 8.7 bəddak_ʔəssallak_šafarak_bəlmak kana wella_bəlmʔass ? | Do you want me to cut your hair with clippers or scissors? |

With these meanings the forms are bə- before two consonants (bəktaab 'in a book', bəʔuuda 'in the room'), bi- or b- before a single consonant (bibeeto or bbeeto 'in his house', biʔuuda or bʔuuda 'in a room'), and fii- before pronoun endings (fii 'in it', fiiha 'in it (fem)'). [These forms all mean either 'in' or 'by means of'; however, before a single consonant bi- always means 'in', whereas b- may mean either.]

Examples:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. huwwə ʔakal belmaʔsam . | He ate in the restaurant. |
| huwwə ʔakal fii . | He ate in it. |
| 2. taaleʔ bʔiido habbe . | A pimple broke out on his hand. |
| taaleʔ fiiha . | It broke out on it. |
| 3. wsalna balleel . | We arrived at night. |
| 4. biʔəšš daʔno bəššaafra . | He shaves (his chin) with a safety razor. |
| biʔəšš daʔno fiiha . | He shaves with it. |
| 5. baxlos haššaʔle bsaaʔteen . | I'll finish this job in two hours. |
| 6. kiilo lxəbz bʔašr ʔruuš . | Bread is ten piastres a kilo. |
| 7. bihalʔiyyaam . | Nowadays. |
| 8. tlaate betlaate tesfa . | Three times three is nine. |

9. Šuu saar flik maa 'šiiit ?

What happened to you that you didn't
come?

10. maat bəlmaraḍ .

He died of the disease (usually =
tuberculosis).

(2) b- 'the matter with' b- is used before pronoun endings with this meaning. It never occurs directly before a noun. Examples from Unit 9:

9.3 ... šəbak ?

What's the matter with you?

9.15 māa_bani_šii ...

Nothing's wrong with me.

9.25 ...hkiili šəbak .

Tell me what's the matter with you.

The forms used for the combinations b- plus pronoun endings vary a great deal from one place to another. The usual Damascus forms are:

bani or bni

bana

tak

bakon

bek or baki

bo

bahon or bhon or bon

baha or bha or ba

[In other parts of the Syrian area the stems baa- or bi- are sometimes used throughout (baak, biik, baa, bi, baaha, biha, etc.)]

These forms are almost always unstressed in Damascus Arabic, usually following šuu 'what' or maa 'not' šuubo 'what's the matter with him', maabo-šii 'there's nothing the matter with him'. With many speakers šuu and maa are often shortened to šē and mā in these expressions: šēbo, mābo. Notice that the first person form has -ni instead of -i or -yi; this b- 'the matter with' is a verbal particle (see Note 9.3.).

Examples:

1. šēbo lahalla? xaliil maa ?əža ? What's the matter with Khalil that he hasn't come yet. ("up to now")?
2. šēbek (or šēbabi) maa ?akalti lyoom? What's the matter with you (f) that you didn't eat today?
3. māa-bāref-šēbani māa-?dārt-?ākol dāhr . I don't know what's the matter with me; I couldn't eat at noon.
4. mābak-šii-?ante bāfarabi-mniin . There's nothing wrong with you - you're good in Arabic.
5. šēba ssaana muu maasha l?ard ? Why (what's the matter with her) hasn't the maid wiped the floor?
6. mabo-šii haṭṭa?m-ṭaaleṣ-ḥelu . This suit is O.K., it has turned out fine.

(3) fii- fii- occurs before pronoun endings with the meaning 'there is' and 'is in a position to' and 'is able to'. Example from Units 1-9:

1.32 fēen-fii-maṭṭam ?

Where there is a restaurant?

5.16 fii-ṣāndak-wāṣa ?

Do you have something to carry the things in?

The third person forms, especially the masculine singular, are often equivalent to English 'there is, there are'; all the forms - first, second, or third person - may be translated 'be in a position to, have the time to, be able to, can'. Notice that the first person singular form of this is fiini, differing from fiyyi 'in me', and so this fii- is also a verbal particle.

Examples:

1. šuu fii ?axbaar lyoom ? What news is there today?
2. fiik truun māfi halla? .? Can you come with me now?
3. halbalad fiha binaayaat ḥelwe . There are nice buildings in this city.
4. māa-fiini ?əṣṭeri haṭṭa?m . ḡaali ktiir . I can't buy this suit. It's too expensive.

Note 9.4. Connective maa. In some of the sentences of Units 5-9 there have been instances of maa, without the meaning 'not', used as a connective. Examples:

5.28 ?eemta maa kaan btedfaſli .

7.15 umaa fii rtuube metl maa biſiir ſandhon .

9.37 xood habteen ?abl maa tnaam .

This connective maa occurs after question words (such as feen, ?eemta, etc.) when used to introduce a clause rather than to ask a question. This is especially common with an "indefinite" meaning (-ever).

ween maa betriid taakol ?ana baakol . I'll eat wherever you want to eat.

?eemta maa habbeet . Whenever you would like.

laazemni beet feen maa kaan ikuun . I need a house anywhere at all.

maa bihemni ſuu maa naka yeſki . I don't care. Let him say whatever he wants to ("whatever he says").

It also occurs after a whole series of preposition - like words such as metl, ?abl, etc. when they are followed by a verb. Thus "like him" is metlo but "as he does" is metl maa byaſmel . Additional examples:

?abl maa truuh kool . Eat before you go.

baſd maa taraktak reſt ſalbeet . After I left you I went home.

metl maa bi?ellak l'eſtaaz ſaawi . Do as the profeſſor tells you.

laa teſteri ſii ?abl maa taſref ſa?o . Don't buy anything before you know what its (regular) price is.

... bala maa tenzel lyoom ſalbalad without (your) going downtown today.

?add maa byaſtiik xood menno . Take as much from him as he'll give you.

In addition this connective maa is also used after various nouns of time:

wa?t maa ?aſu maa kaan fii nada balbeet . At the time they came (or when they came) there was nobody at home.

yoom maa ſaſto kaan mariid . The day I saw him he was sick.

?awwal maa ſaafni ſarefni . The moment he saw me ("first thing he saw me") he recognized me.

ſaafet maa betſuufo bſatli yaa . Send him to me the hour you see him.

Finally there are various other miscellaneous expressions which include this connective maa. This will be listed more completely in a later Unit. Here are several examples:

men ketr maa ?akal ſaar batno yeſafo . He ate so much he got a stomachache.
(From the quantity he ate his stomach began to pain him.)

kell maa raah labeeruut byeſteri ta?m . Everytime he goes to Beirut he buys a suit.

ween mnaakol? mnaahall maa betriid . Where shall we eat? Any place you want.

1. Completion sentences. Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the passive participle (using feminine or plural where necessary) of the root given in parentheses at the end of the sentence. Read the sentence and be sure you understand it.

1. harrežžaal _____ men kəll nnaas . (hbb)
2. ʔarq halʔuuda muu _____ . (ʔšš)
3. lmatʃam tabaʃ ʔahmad _____ hallaʔ . (ʃžʔ)
4. lkahraba _____ lyoom . (ʔtʃ)
5. haʔʔ ttaʔm _____ salaf . (dfʃ)
6. halli ʔaalo lʔestaaz kaan _____ . (fhm)
7. betražžaaq xalliinanruun hallaʔ . _____ nkuun belmhaʔta . (lzm)
8. ʔana _____ ʔaaxod halğraad ʃalbeet . (ʔmr)
9. halmaktuub _____ laʔameerka . (bʃt)
10. ʔžiit laʔeet llaḥme _____ . (tbx)
11. byeʔdru ttalamiiz _____ iruugu . (fhs)
12. halxaʔt _____ men hoon lelʔaššaaʃ . (mdd)

2. Completion Sentences. Complete the following by adding the appropriate pronoun ending on the yaa-. When you have finished say the sentences aloud many times until the construction sounds perfectly natural to you. Be sure you understand each sentence.

1. bəddak yaa _____ ruun maʃak ?
2. ʔeemta rana təʃat ššaanaʃa ? bəʃatlaq yaa _____ baʃd saafa
3. ween lwaraʔaat ? hallaʔ baʃtiik yaa _____ .
4. bəddak yaa _____ tətbox ?
5. bəddo yaa _____ təfnaʃha yaa doktoor .
6. maa ʔdert ʔəftaḥ lbaab, bteʔder təftaḥli yaa _____ ?
7. ween wlaadak ? ʔaxadli yaa _____ ʔaxi ʃassiinama .
8. bəddi yaa _____ tēzi tətəbxiilna .
9. miin žaayəblek yaa _____ halbent ? ("Who brought you here - this girl.")¹
10. miin kaatəblak halwaraʔa ? lʔestaaz kaatəbli yaa _____ .
11. bəddak yaa _____ mniina ?
12. ʃedlo yaa _____ ddruus . ("Repeat them - the lessons")¹
13. rəddello yaa _____ lʔəmsaan ġaalyiin ktiir .
14. bəddi yaa _____ tnaam bbeet ʔahlha .
15. bədhon yaa _____ tağsli lğasiil .
16. yaa ʔəbni bəddi yaa _____ taʃref kəlši .
17. šaayəflak yaa _____ muu raayna .
18. bžənnəllak yaa _____ bibiʃ lbeet bʔalf leera .
19. bəddo yaa _____ truuhu laʃando ʃalbeet .
20. metl maa ʔəltəlli yaa _____ lxabar ʔəltəllo yaa _____ .¹

¹Sometimes an object is repeated, i.e. the pronoun ending on the yaa reinforces a noun which is present, not omitted.

3. Completion sentences. Complete the following sentences by filling in the appropriate word suggested by the English word in parentheses. Make sure you understand the meaning of each sentence, and repeat it until it sounds natural and familiar.

1. (before) maa truuh kool .
2. (after) maa šaftak bsaaſteen ?əža ?axi .
3. (hour) maa šafto kənt mašguul .
4. (when) maa biriidu byə?dru yežu .
5. (as) maa ?allak l?əstaaz saawi .
6. štareeto (before) maa ?əs?al fan səfro .
7. lhakiim (after) maa fanas?axi bafato degri falməstašfa .
8. (time) maa?əžu maa kaan fii nada balbeet .
9. (minute) maa taraktak rənt falbeet .
10. maa bihemmi (what) maa saar isiir .
11. mən (quantity) maa ?akal saar batno yežafo .
12. (who) maa ?əža yeži .
13. (first) maa šafto frafto .
14. dfaſlo (as much) maa biriid .
15. (hour) maa betšuufu ?ello yeržaf falbeet .
16. beššəte maa bikuun fanna bard (as) maa bikuun fandkon .
17. la (where) maa bəddak bruuh .
18. (after) maa yəfnasak lhakiim byafref šuu mafak .
19. (everytime) maa ?akalt šii t?iil, byəžafni raasi .
20. šəbak hee?tak tafbaan ? mən (quantity) maa štağalt mbaaren .
21. (without) maa truuh halla? lafando .
22. (as much) maa byaf?iik, xood mənno .
23. (what) maa naka yənki, ?ana maa bihemmi .
24. (where) maa kaan ikuun harrežžaal byəštağel .

4. Questions and Answers.

1. maſ miin rənt zərtl'əstaaz ?
2. mən 'eemta 'əmmək maa katbətək maktuub ?
3. kam təlmiiz 'əntu bihaddars ?
4. b'ənu 'oteel nzəltu bbeeruut ?
5. 'addeeſ kaanet taaxod mənkon ſſaanfa bəſſəhr ?
6. ſuu 'allak lhakiim tsaawi baſd maa fanaſək ?
7. ſəbo l'əstaaz maa 'əſa faddars ?
8. saafet maa ſəftak mbaareh, ween kənt raayeh ?
9. 'anu saafa bikuun ddoktoor bəſfiyaade ?
10. kam yoom fandak fərſa bəssəne ?
11. daxlak mneen bə'der 'əſtəri ſafrat ?
12. kam yoom bə'i bəlməstaſfa ?
13. ſuu kaan ſaayəpəlo ?
14. b'addeeſ madyunna 'ənte la'abu fəfiif ?
15. 'addeeſ ſarək maa 'axatt makatiib mən 'ameerka ?
16. ſəbaha ſaaneftkon maa 'əſet 'axdet ləſgraad ?
17. kam nabbe 'alla lhakiim taaxod bəlyoom ?
18. 'əlli ſuu fii 'akl mmaſfame
19. leeſ maa ſəbt 'əmsaanak lmaxsuuliin mnelmaſtaſa ?
20. ləssaak lahalla? 'aafed balə 'akəl ?
21. daxlak ween bəddo iſayyef ssəne ſſaaye ?

Conversation 1. At Ahmad's house.

- J. hoon 'ahmad^{*}beek ?
- N. nafam hoon, bass mraššen w'aafed bettaxt .
- J. salaamto, briid šuufu, šuufiili yaa 'aafed² yemma naayem ?
- N. 'amrak siidi .
- Mrs.A. yaa nabiiha miin 'eža ?
- N. mester žoons baddo išuuf siidi .
- Mrs.A. 'uuliilo yetfaddal .
- N. tfaddal šarref .
- Mrs.A. 'ahla wəhla .
- J. nhaarek safiid . mašguul baali sand 'ahmad beek xeer šəbo ?
- Mrs.A. lhamdella 'ahsan lyoom . šarref lafando .
- J. šuu saayer mafak ?
- A. yoom kenna ražfiin
men beeruut 'axatt bard .
- A. leeletha maa nəmt wtaani yoom badeet 'esfol .
- J. mfaafa nšaalla, šuu maa šaafak lhakiim ?
- A. lakaan !! 'eža kam marra .
- J. šuu 'allak tafmel ?
- A. baŋd maa fanasni 'awwal marra, 'alli .
saawi taḡtiise .
- J. šloon šəft haalak baŋd maa saawcetha ?
- A. yaŋni 'ansan bešwayye bass ŋala ḡafle 'awwal mbaaren³ šaar baŋni yežafni .
- J. byezhar kent 'aakel šii t'iil !!
- A. laa walla, kəll halli 'akalto šwayyet šooraba .
- J. ween haakem lwažaf ?
- A. tant bižanab baŋni lyamiin .
- J. muu šii, l'aktar haada suu? hačm .
- A. 'ana xaayef laykuun mafi zzaayde .
- J. maa bzənn . ŋala kəll haal zzaayde m^{aa} bethem^m . ŋamaliitha saliime.
- A. ddoktoor 'aal laazem nəstanna tlata rbaŋ tiyyaam .
- J. u'iza be'i lwažaf ?
- A. fəkre yəbŋatni ŋalməstašfa .
- J. nšaalla ŋala salaame . xalliini ruun halla? . w'ənte 'uum lataxtak
strehlak šwayye .
- A. 'ana mabsuut bewžuudak .
- J. bəkra nšaalla beži bzuurak, wənšaalla bətkuun šanneet .
- A. namnuunak ktiir .
- J. mfaafa . xaatrak .
- A. 'alla iŋaafiik wyənfazak .

² 'aafed means 'awake' when contrasted with naayem .

³ 'awwal mbaaren 'day before yesterday' .

Conversation 2. At the hospital.

- J. lhamdella fala salaamtak .
 A. ?alla isalmak .
 J. beškor ?alla , hee?tak mabşuut , wka?annak maa saaweet famaliyye .
 A. mamnuun .
 J. daxlak miin lhakiim halli şamellak yaaha ?
 A. ddoktoor xayyaat , ufataani nbuub , baaxedhon tlet marraat belyoom .
 J. w?eemta taalef mnelmestaşfa ?
 A. maa başref , fala hawa lhaale⁴ .
 J. wkiif lfeele ?
 A. bxeer lhamdella , ?abl maa teži beşwayye kaanet marti maf lewlaad hoon .
 J. şloon şefto halmestaşfa ?
 A. walla mabo şii . ndiif welxedme fii mniina .
 J. ?ana ranaruun, nşaalla taani marra bşuufak belbeet .
 A. maf ssalaame .

Conversation 3. At John's hotel.

- A. nhaarak safiid .
 J. nhaarak safiid mbaarak, lhamdella falaafye .
 A. ?alla ifaafiik .
 J. lees tlet ? kent laazem teb?a martaan belbeet .
 A. beškor ?alla maa be?i fiyyi şii, wmaf haada ?žiit laşandak bettaksi .
 J. food halla? strenlak şwayye .
 A. tta?s helu wəşşams taalfa ?uum larruun şoob lmarže .
 J. stannaani da?ii?a hatta ?etammam u?əşş da?ni .
 A. mniin, naazel wa??əflak beşşams ?əddaam baab l?oteel .

⁴ fala_hawa 'according to' (cf. English 'the way the wind blows')

SECTION G. VOCABULARY

219

ʔaam(u)	rise, get up	nafas	breath
ʔalab (e or o)	turn over	nhaar (pl nhaaraat)	day
ʔawaaʔi (pl of waaʔa)	clothes	raaʔeeta(ft)	prescription
ʔizan	therefore	rəkbe (ft+ pl rəkab)	knee
b-	the matter with(see note 9.3)	ʔabu_rrəkab	the grippe
bak	- the matter with you	saliim adj	safe also pers. name
bo	- the matter with him	safal (o)	cough
baal	mind	safiid adj	happy also pers. name
baʔa	then, therefore, all right	suuʔ	bad, in-
batn (pl btuun)	abdomen	suuʔ_hadm	indigestion
baʔd	some, certain, one another	ʔaater adj	clever, smart
daar (i)	see baal turn	ʔakar (o)	thank
doktoor (pl dakaatra)	doctor	ʔalah (a)	take off (e.g. clothes)
dahr (pl dhuur)	back	tʔammal	hope
faaʔ (i)	wake up	taḡtiis (coll)	immersion, diving
fanaʔ (a)	test, examine	taḡtiise	one immersion, bath
hadm	digestion	tnaffas	breathe
heeʔa (ft)	appearance	tsattah	lie down
heeʔtak...	you look ...	teʔeb (a)	get tired
haakem adj	ruling, governor, judge	wasfe (ft)	prescription
habb (coll sg habbe	grains, pills	waʔaʔ (pl ʔawʔaaʔ)	pain
pl hbuub or		wəʔeʔ (-əzaʔ)	pain, hurt
habbaat)		xayyaat (pl xayyaatiin)	tailor
hakiim (pl hekama)	doctor, learned man		also pers. name
lbaarna	yesterday	zaayde (ft+)	appendix
(mbaarna, mbaaren)		maʔo-zzaayde	he has appendicitis
leel (coll)	night	ʔaafa (i)	strengthen
(sg leele, pl layaali)		ʔabd (pl ʔabiid)	slave, negro
lsaan (pl lsaanaat or			pers. name : ʔabdalla
ʔelson)	tongue, language	ʔiyaade (ft)	clinic
madd (ə)	reach, stretch out	ʔtamad	decide
mariid (pl merada)	sick	ʔtana	take care of fii-
mbaarak adj	blessed		
mhemmm adj	important, serious		
mraʔʃʃen(adj)	having a cold		
mertaan adj	resting, comfortable		
mestaʔfa (m) (pl mestaʔfayaat)	hospital		
mʔaafa adj (fem mʔaafaaye pl -aayiin)	strengthened, recovered)		

Syrian Arabic - Supplementary Sentences

1. Come and eat with us before you go. ?uum kool mafna ?abl maa truuh .
2. It's my custom to get up every day
at six o'clock. ?aatti kell yoom ?uum bakkiir ssaafa
sette .
3. I've certainly gotten tired today
from so much work. walla lyoom tfebt ktiir men ketr ššəgel .
4. Leave him alone, he's up to his ears
in work. ("His work is up to over
his head.") treko šəglo lafoo? raaso .
5. He stayed in the hospital five days
after the operation. be?i belmestašfa xams_tiyyaam baŋd
lŋamaliyye .
6. They would have come to visit us if
it hadn't been too cold. kaanu ?əžu zaaruuna law maafii bard .
7. She got indigestion from the amount
she ate. men ketar maa ?aklet šaar manha suu?
hadem .
8. What do you think ("How do you see
it")? Shall I pay him 5000 for the
house? šloon batšuuf ? ?edfaflo xams_taalaaf
balbeet ?
9. As far as the house goes, if it's
good, 5000 isn't too much. šala_hawa lbeet, ?iza mniin xams_taalaaf
muu ktiir .
10. I never go to his clinic without find-
ing it crowded. maa bruuh lafiyaatto marra ?ella
blaa?iiha mafžuua .
11. The maid will take care of the chil-
dren when we go. ššaanaŋa bəddiir baalha šalewlaad wa?t
mərruuh .
12. Our country needs more hospitals
than that. blaadna byəlzamha məstašfaayant ?aktar
mənheek .
13. It looks as though tomorrow will be
colder than today. lhee?a bəkra bəddo ikaan ?abrad
mənəlyoom .

14. If you see him please thank him for me. balla ʔiza šafto, škəro fanni .
15. When you want her, send after her. waʔt bəddek yaaha bʔati waraaha .
16. There's certainly nothing wrong with your suit; where did you buy it? walla mabo šii taʔmak, mneen šaarii ?
17. For twenty pounds you can buy a good coat. bʔešriin leerabteʔder teštəri kabbuud mniin .
18. I get examined at the doctor's twice a year. bəssəne bəfhaš haali ʔand lhakiim marteen .
19. I never go to your place (once) without finding you busy. walaə marra bəži laʔandak fiiha ʔella blaəʔiik mašguul .
20. How long has it been since she washed? ʔaddeš ʔarlha maa ǧaslet ?
21. What happened to him that he didn't come to (his) work? šuu ʔarlo maa ʔəža ʔala šəǧlo.?
22. He has a cold and has come down with ("happening with him") indigestion. mraššən wəaayer mafo suuʔ haḍem .
23. God give him strength! ʔalla iʔaafii .
24. I wasn't at home when the doctor came and saw him. ʔana maa kənt bəlboet waʔt ʔəža lhakiim šaəfo .
25. Did you see the papers? ("Did you read?") There's important news today. ʔareet ?!! fii ʔaxbaar mhemme lyoom .
26. What's the name of your doctor. šuu ʔəsmo ddoktoor tabaʔkon ?
27. If you'll sell it to me for a thousand pounds, I'll buy it. ʔiza bətbiiʔni yaa bʔalf leera, bəštarii .

28. I came and found the house door open. ʔxiit laʔeet baab lbeet maftuuh .
29. Maybe I'll get his letter tomorrow. yamken yəxiini maktuubo bakra .
30. Stav resting at home for several days. xalliik mertaan belbeet ši kam yoom .
31. If I could have gone with you, I would have. law ʔəʔder ruuh mafak; kənt rənt .
32. If the water hadn't been off, she would have washed. law maa kaanet lpayy maʔtuufa kaanet ǧaslet .
33. He'll go wherever you send him. ween maa btəbʔato, biruuh .
34. What did the doctor tell you to do besides the foot bath? šuu ʔallak lhakiim taʔmel ǧeer ttaǧṭiise?
35. I wish you had taken the pills before you ate. yaareetak ʔaxatt lhabbat ʔabl maaʔakalt .
36. What can I do - it's only human to forget ("the man always forgets"). šuu baʔmel, lʔənsaan daaʔiman byənsa .¹
37. From now on you'll have to take care of your health. mən hallaʔ wraayən laazem təʔtəni bʔəntak .
38. It looks as though you forgot what the doctor told you. byəṣṣar ʔaleek nsiit šuu ʔallak lhakiim .
39. Ahmad speaks seven languages. ʔahmad byənki sabəʔ-təlson .
40. If you want the truth, the best ("smartest") doctor here is Ahmad. bəddak lhaʔiiʔa ʔaṣṭar haakim hoon, huwwe ʔahmad .
41. But he's ("takes") very expensive. bass byaaxod ǧaali ktiir .
42. Haven't you learned yet that it pays to get the best ("the expensive one has his value"). šuu ləssaak maa btaʔref ʔanno lǧaali haʔʔo mafo .²

¹The phrase lʔənsaan daaʔiman byənsa is used to apologize for one's own forgetfulness. There are several other phrases of this kind in use, most of them Literary Arabic in form.

²The expressions lǧaali haʔʔo mafo . and lǧaali huwwe raxiis . are used to justify paying a high price for some object or service.

THE POST OFFICE

Section A. Basic Sentences

mailman	bóostáži
1. What time does the mailman come?	?anu_saafa_byeži_lboostáži ?
usually	faadatan
distribute	wázzaŋ, biwázzeŋ
mail	bóosta or barfid
2. He usually distributes the mail at 9 a.m.	faadatan biwázzeŋ_lboosta ssaafa_tesfa_fala_bakra.
3. Here he comes!	šafo_šaaŋe .
letter	maktuub
4. Any letter for me?	?eli_šii_maktuub ?
registered	msóokar
5. Yes, there's a registered letter for you.	naŋam . ?alak_maktuub_msóokar .
sign	máda, byémdi
notebook	dáftar
hand over	sállam, bisállam
6. Sign in the book so I can hand it over to you.	mdiili_faddaftar_lasalmak_yaa .
without	biduun
stamp	táabeŋ
7. But it came (to you) without stamps; let me have twenty piastres.	bass_šaaŋiik biduun_tawaabeŋ . smaŋli_bíešriin_?erš .
8. Thank you, Omar.	salleŋ_?ideek_yaa_famar .
9. You're welcome.	tákram .
money order	hawáale
postal	bariidi
10. Where can I send a postal money order?	mneen ba?der_?ebŋat hawáale_baridiyye ?
third	táalet

window.

šebbáak or kúwwe

11. The third window as you go in.

taalet šebbáak u'ente_faayet .

Africa

ʔafriiqya

12. I want to send a money order to my brother in Africa.

beddi_ʔəbʃat_hawaale laʔaxi_bʔafriiqya

value

ʔime

13. How much is it for?

ʔaddeēš_ʔiimetha ?

14. Fifty pounds.

xamsiin_leera .

fill

ʃábbá, biʃábbi

application or form

talab

money

mašaari

15. Fill out this application and pay me the money.

ʃabbi_haṭṭalab wədfaʃli_lmašaari .

receipt

wáṣəl

16. Here's the receipt.

tfaddal hayy_lwaṣəl .

stamps

wáraʔ_buul

17. Give me two pounds worth of stamps for letters.

ʃaṭṭini_bleerteen waraʔ_buul ləlmaka-tiib .

airplane

tayyáara

18. I want to send this letter to America by airplane.

beddi_ʔəbʃat_halmaktuub beṭṭayyaara_laʔameerka .

putting

haatet

address

ʃənwaan

exact

mazbuut

19. Have you put the address correctly?

haatet_lʃənwaan_mazbuut ?

of course

maʃluum

teach, mark

ʃállam, biʃállam

envelope

ʔárf or mǵállaf

atmospheric

ʔáwwi

20. Of course, and mark the envelope "airmail" for me.

maʃluum wʃálləmli_ʔáarf bariid_ʔawwi .

package

tárd or baakēet

21. Is this where you send packages?
("From here do they send packages?")
fifth
men_hoon_byebfatu_ttruud ?
xáames
22. No. Go to the fifth window.
la? . ruuh_faššəbbaak lxaames .
23. I want to send this package to Damascus.
beddi_ʔəbfat_hattard_faššaam .
- charge, cost
kállaf, bikállaf
24. How much does it cost?
ʔaddees_bikallef ?
usual, ordinary
faadi
25. Do you want to send it ordinary mail?
beddak_təbfato bəlbəriid lfaadi ?
26. The first kilo is ten piastres.
ʔawwal_kiilo bfašr_ʔruuš .
exceed
zaad, biziid
27. And every additional kilo is six piastres.
wkell_kiilo_biziid bsətt_ʔruuš .
total
mazmuuʔ
28. How much is it all together?
ʔaddees_lmazmuuʔ ?
rent
stáʔzar, byəstáʔzer
box
sanduuʔ
29. I want to rent a post office box for a year.
beddi_ʔəstáʔzer sanduuʔ_boos̥ta ʔala_səne .
rent, pay
ʔəzra
30. How much is the rent per year?
ʔaddees_ʔəzrto_bessəne ?
31. Twelve and a half pounds.
tnaʔšar_leera wnešš .
key
meftáan
32. And I want two keys with it.
wbeddi_maʔo meftaaneen .
telegram
talğraaf or barqiiye
urgent
məstáʔzal
ministry
wazáara
foreign affairs
xaaržiyye
33. I want to send a telegram "urgent" to the Department of State in Washington.
beddi_ʔəbfat_talğraaf_məstáʔzal
lwazaaret_lxaaržiyye_bwašton .
words, talk
kaláam

34. There are twenty-five words in it.

fii xamsaa_wfeſriin kelme .

35. How much will that be?

ʔaddees byetlaſ_ſalee ?

"-fold"

taaʔ

36. "Urgent" will cost you double.

mestaſʕal bikalfak_ṭṭaaʔ_tneen .

legation

mufawwadiyye

37. Charge it to the account of the American Legation.

ʔayyedha_bensaab_lmufawwadiyye_
lʔamerkiyye .

Section B. Pronunciation

1. The post-velar stop q.

A new sound appeared in one of the words of Unit 10 -- the voiceless stop represented by q in barqiyye 'telegram'. This sound is made by pressing the back part of the tongue against the roof of the mouth or even the back wall of the pharynx as far back as possible. The sound is voiceless and unaspirated, i.e. it does not have the puff of air after it which k sometimes has. This sound is called the post-velar stop and will be represented by a q.

The sound is very rare in ordinary spoken Damascus Arabic, but there are a few words which are ordinarily pronounced with it:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

*qard	'loan'	barqiyye	'telegram'
*qarʔaan	'Koran'	*ququq	'laws, the study of law'
*qaanuun	'law'	*yuqaal	'it is said'

The post-velar stop q is very frequent in Classical Arabic and in some dialects of spoken Arabic. In most spoken Syrian Arabic, however, it has been replaced by the glottal stop ʔ.

The chief difference between the post-velar q and the velar k is, as the name suggests, the fact that the q is pronounced further back in the mouth. Here are examples of pairs of words with q and k:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ~~ONE~~ TWO

*kaaf	'name of letter: ك'	*kaanuun	'brazier'
*qaaf	'name of letter: ق'	*qaanuun	'law'
	haqq (=haʔʔ)	'right'	
*kakk		'he scratched'	

2. Velarization (tafxiim)

In previous Units the difference between plain ("light") and velarized ("heavy") consonants has been discussed (Note 5.1), and the different sounds of certain vowels next to plain and velarized consonants has been mentioned (Notes 7.1,2). The special quality of a velarized consonant together with the special quality of a nearby vowel is called VELARIZATION (Arabic, tafxiim). You may think of this feature of velarization as extending over a whole sequence of consonants and vowels. A velarized consonant serves as a kind of "nucleus" of velarization, which extends over neighboring vowels and consonants. Americans usually find it easier to notice the vowel differences; for Arabs the most important thing is the velarized consonant

nucleus. In our transcription velarization is indicated by dots under consonants, and no indication is given of the vowel difference.

Every Arabic dialect, and Classical Arabic as well, has this phenomenon of velarization, but the various dialects differ considerably in the extent of the velarization. In some dialects there are as few as four light:heavy pairs (e.g. t:ṭ, ʃ:ʃ̣, s:ṣ, l:ḷ); in other dialects there are as many as eleven or more pairs of this kind. Also, in some dialects the vowel sounds differ very little in accordance with their position near light or heavy consonants; in other dialects this difference is very great. All dialects agree in having velarization as an important feature of the sound system.

With regard to the number of light:heavy pairs Damascus Arabic is between the two extremes. It has eight such pairs:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

b:ḅ	baaba	'her door'	*baaba	'daddy'
m:ṃ	*mayy	'she isn't'	mayy	'water'
t:ṭ	*taxx	'it wore out'	*taxx	'he hit'
d:ḍ	*dazẓ̣	'he spoke coarsely'	*dazẓ̣	'it got into an uproar'
s:ṣ	*saah	'he went on a trip'	*saah	'he crowed'
z:ẓ	*zhuur	'flowers'	*zhuur	'appearance'
l:ḷ	*walla	'he appointed as guardian'	walla	'by God'
n:ṇ	*naayem	'asleep'	*naayek	'your (f) flute'

In other varieties of Syrian Arabic other pairs occur, such as f:f̣, r:ṛ, ʔ:ʔ̣. Damascus Arabic differs from most sedentary Syrian Arabic (1) in not having the r:ṛ pair which is very common throughout the Syrian area, as well as in Egypt and the rest of North Africa, and (2) in having the n:ṇ pair which is very rare elsewhere.

As far as the vowel variation is concerned, Damascus Arabic again is between the two extremes. For example, there is less variation than in Beirut Arabic, more than in Baghdad Arabic. [In some areas it even happens that a "velarized" vowel occurs with no velarized consonant in the vicinity. In most of Lebanon, for example, the word for "tea" is šaay, not saay, as it is in Damascus. In such cases it is necessary to mark the vowel quality with the velarization symbol.]

SECTION C. ANALYSIS

Note 10.1 Occupation nouns. In Units 1-10 three kinds of occupation nouns have appeared: (1) the type represented by nažžaar 'carpenter' and hallaas 'barber,' (2) the type represented by taažer 'business man' and saamfa 'maid', and (3) the type represented by booyaži 'bootblack' and boosṭaži 'mailman'.

(1) The commonest type of occupation noun is characterized by the pattern $C_1aC_2C_2aaC_3$, i.e. with double second consonant and long -aa- between the second and third consonants of the root. Nouns of this pattern are very frequent and usually are names of occupations, although occasionally they are adjectives or names of instruments. The feminine forms (i.e. $C_1aC_2C_2aaC_3$ plus feminine -t ending) may be female occupation names, but more often are names of instruments or machines.

The usual plural of masculine nouns of this type is in -iin: nažžariin, hallaasiiin, but fairly often the plural is formed simply by adding the feminine -t ending to the masculine singular. In such cases the feminine noun and the plural of the masculine noun are identical in form. The usual plural of a feminine noun of this type is in -aat: ḡassaalaat, ṭassaasaat. Here is a list of masculine and feminine nouns of this pattern with roots which have appeared in Units 1-10. If the noun listed is not an occupation noun it is marked either adj (adjective) or I (instrument noun). Plurals other than -iin (or ft) and -aat are given:

root	meaning	$C_1aC_2C_2aaC_3$ noun	meaning
√ṭṭṣ	cutting, cutting road = banditry	ṭaṭṭaaṣ ¹	bandit
√bvb	door	bawwaab	doorkeeper
√bvṣ	selling	bayyaaṣ adj	seller, one who sells
√brd	cold	barraad	refrigerator
√dll	show, direct	dallaal	one who shows things for sale, etc. (e.g. real estate agent)
√ḡnm	sheep	ḡannaam	dealer in sheep
√hbb	liking, loving	habbaab adj	likeable, lovable
√hdd	iron, sharpness	haddaad	blacksmith
√hlṭ	shaving, cutting hair	hallaas	barber
√htb	firewood	haṭṭaab	one who cuts or sells firewood
√lhm	meat	lanṇaam	butcher
√msh	wiping, surveying	massaah ²	surveyor
√nṣr	doing woodwork	nažžaar	carpenter
√smk	fish	ṣammaak	fish dealer
√sbḡ	dyeing	ṣabbaaḡ	dyer
√sms	sun	ṣammaas	deacon (pl ṣamaamse ft)
√tVr	flying	ṭayyaar	flier, pilot
√tbx	cooking	ṭabbaax	cook (male)
√tlb	asking for	ṭallaab	beggar

¹ Usually used in the phrase ṭaṭṭaaṣ tarii? .

² Usually used in the phrase massaah ṭaraadi 'land surveyor'.

√xVt	sewing	xayyaat		tailor
√xbz	bread, baking	xalbaaz		baker
√xdm	service	xaddaam		servant
√xtt	line, handwriting	xattaat		calligrapher, professional penman
√zVt	oil	zayyaat		oil seller
√?lb	turning over	?allaabe	I	kind of Ferris wheel
√?ss	cutting	?aṣṣaasa		beautician (= hair cut- ter), cutter (dress- making).
		?aṣṣaasa	I	(nail) clippers
√bVb	door	bawwaabe		female doorkeeper
		bawwaabe	I	gate
√brd	cold	barraade	I	refrigerator
√ḡsl	washing	ḡassaale		washerwoman
√smṣ	hearing	sammaafa	I	earphones, (phone) receiver, stethoscope, hearing aid
√sxn	heat	saxxaane	I	(electric) heater, hot plate
√tVr	flying	ṭayyaara	I	airplane, kite
√tbx	cooking	ṭabbaaxa		female cook

If the root is CCV, the pattern has the form C₁aC₂C₂a, and with nouns of this type the plural is always formed by adding the feminine-t ending (C₁aC₂C₂aaye), e.g. kawwa 'one who presses clothes,' kawwaaye 'woman presser of clothes' or the plural of kawwa.

√h kV	speaking	ḥakka		speaker
√kwV	pressing, branding	kawwa		presser of clothes
√srV	buying	ṣarra	adj 1	buyer, one who buys

(2) Another kind of occupation noun has the pattern C₁aaC₂eC₃. This pattern is identical with the pattern of the active participle (cf. Note 8.2), but these occupation nouns differ from the active participles in having a plural of the pattern C₁aC₂C₂aaC₃ while the participle has a plural in -iin. Thus: taaṣer: tāṣṣaar and kaateb 'clerk': kættaab, but kaateb 'writing': kaatbiin. The feminine form of these nouns usually is a female occupation name, and the plural is usually identical with that of the masculine. For example: ṣaaneṣ 'hand worker (male)' and ṣaanṣa 'maid' both have plural ṣannaaṣ.

This C₁aaC₂eC₃ pattern makes other kinds of nouns, too, such as the ordinal numbers (see the following Note, 10.2) and the names of things (see Note 11.). Here is a brief list of occupation nouns of this kind:

√hkm	governing, judging	ḥakem		governor, judge
√ktb	writing	kaateb		clerk

1. Used as a noun in the expression bayyāaṣ ṣarra 'merchant'.

snf	fashioning by hand	saanoŋ	manual worker
tʒr	doing business	taaẓer	business man
tlb	asking for	taaleb	student, beggar
xɗm	service	xaadem	servant
ʃml	doing, making	ʃaamel	worker ¹

snf	fashioning by hand	saanʃa	maid
-----	--------------------	--------	------

(3) The least common of the three kinds of occupation nouns, is formed by adding the suffix -ʒi to a noun. Notice that the first two types are characterized by a certain pattern combined with a root, but this third type is characterized by a suffix added to an already existing noun. The plural is always formed by adding the feminine-t ending (so that the noun ends in -ʒiyye), which results in the plural always being identical with the feminine singular (cf. Nisbes Note 7.3): booyaʒi:booyaʒiyye. Examples:

noun	meaning	noun plus <u>-ʒi</u>	meaning
ʔahwe	coffee, coffee house	ʔahwaʒi ²	owner of coffee house
booṣta	mail	booṣtaʒi	mailman
booya	paint, shoe polish	booyaʒi	bootblack
dəkkaan	shop	dəkkanʒi ²	shopkeeper
haader	ready	haaderʒi	seller of ready-made clothes

Here are additional sentences illustrating the use of occupation nouns :

1. neṭti lla^hme belbarraad(e) . Put the meat in the refrigerator.
2. lʃemmaal ʔalabu fersa sanawiyye . Labor demanded an annual vacation.
3. marti raanet laʃand ʔassaaset ʃʃafr . My wife went to the hairdresser's.
4. ween bawwaab lmadrase ? Where is the school doorkeeper?
5. raan iʒiib nnaʒʒaar welhaddaad . He went to get the carpenter and blacksmith.
6. lla^hnaam tabaʃna lyoom muu faaten . Our butcher isn't open today.
7. ʔahmad byeʃteʒel dallaal byuut . Ahmad is a real estate agent ("show-er of houses").
8. lʒassaale ʒaaye yoom ttaneen ʒʒaaye . The washwoman is coming this coming Monday.
9. byezhar. ʃalee ʃarra bʔalf leera . It looks as though he'll buy at a thousand pounds.
10. lessa maa ʔeʒa ʔaʔmi men ʃand lkawwa ? Hasn't my suit come from the cleaner's ("presser's") yet?

¹ The plural ʃemmaal is the equivalent of English "labor" in expressions like "Labor is in favor of price control."

² Notice the slight changes which sometimes take place when the -ʒi is added.

Note 10.2 Ordinal numbers. In Units 1-10 the following instances of ordinal numbers ("first, second, third", etc.) have occurred in Basic Sentences:

- 2.7 daraže ?uula yemma daraže taanye ? First class or second class?
 2.30 wwa??əflna fala ?awwal baab ... Stop at the first door ...
 4.27 hayy ?awwal marra ... This is the first time.
 10.11 taalet šəbbaak ... The third window ...
 10.22 ruun fəššəbbaak lxaames . Go to the fifth window.

The word for "first" is ?awwal, feminine ?uula or ?awwalaaniyye, and the ordinal numbers from "second" to "tenth" have the same root as the corresponding cardinal numbers combined with pattern C₁aaC₂eC₃, which is identical with the pattern of the active participle of primary verbs (cf. Notes 8.2, 10.1). Here are the forms:

root	ordinal m.	f.	meaning
√w ₁	?awwal	?uula	first
√tnV	taani	taanye	second
√tlt	taalet	taalte	third
√rbf	raabef	raabfa	fourth
√xms	xaames	xaamse	fifth
√sds or stt	saades or saatet	saadse or saatte	sixth
√sbf	saabef	saabfa	seventh
√tmn	taamen	taamne	eighth
√tsf	taasef	taasfa	ninth
√šr	fəašer	fəašra	tenth

These ordinal numbers behave like ordinary adjectives in AGREEing with their noun WHEN THEY FOLLOW the noun. Very often, however, the ordinal number is put before the noun and then is always masculine singular no matter what the noun is. Also in this case, neither the noun nor the adjective has l- 'the', although the phrase is usually to be translated 'the third window, the fifth book', etc! This construction is just like the one with comparatives described in Note 7. .

Note that ?awwal has a number of special uses, which have been noted in footnotes to Listening in sections of several Units. When followed by a noun with l- 'the' it means 'the first of, the beginning of', and the expression ?awwal mbaareh means 'day before yesterday'.

Here are sample sentences containing ordinal numbers:

1. hayy saabef seefiyye bmaddiha
bebluudaan . This is the seventh summer I've spent in
Bludan.
2. faatti zuur ?əmni belyoom lxaames
men kell šahr . It's my custom to visit my mother on the
fifth of every month.

10.11

3. hayy bento rraabfa . This is his fourth daughter.
4. nabiha xaames telmiize ?ežet met'axra . Nabiha is the fifth student (fem) to come late.
5. haada saades manall byoftano xaliil . This is the sixth place Khalil has opened.
6. huwwe beddarke ttaamne, wbeddo yetlaf fassaabfa . He's in the eighth class and wants to get up to the seventh.
7. hayy lmarrattaalte halli beži lafandak fiiha . This is the third time I've come to you.
8. taani binaaye fala šmaalak hiyye lboošta . The second building on your left is the postoffice.
9. fedli halli ?elto marra taanye . Repeat what you said again.
10. w?ente ttaani šebak maa taakol ? You too, what's the matter with you that you don't eat?
11. ?awwal šii xseel ?ideek wtafa kool . The first thing - wash your hands and come and eat.
12. b?awwal sseef kenna lessaana beššaa . We were still in Damascus at the beginning of summer.
13. hkiili lmas'ale men ?awwalha, šuu saar mafak ? Tell me the problem from the beginning - what happened to you?
14. ?awwal maa šaafni ferefni . As soon as he saw me he recognized ("knew") me.
15. bedfaflak b?awwal ššahr . I'll pay you the first of the month.
16. ?axi kaan fanna ?awwal mbaaren . My brother was with us the day before yesterday.
17. walla lbatṭiixaat l?awwalaaniyyaat kaanu ?a hsan mnattaanyaat . The first watermelons were certainly better than the second ones.
18. žebli ?anattaani biira . Bring me a beer, too.
19. žeblo waaned taani . Bring him another one .
20. ?ana ttaani belmadrase . I'm the second one at school. or I'm in School, too.
21. taani marra tafabakkiir . The next time come early.
22. miin fali beenaathon ? lfaašer falyamiin . Which one of them is Ali? The tenth one on the right.

Note 10.3. Color adjectives. Two examples of color adjectives have appeared in Units 1-10:

2.27 šaayef lbinaaye lraamra ... ? Do you see the red building ...?

8.27 ... wəlʔamiis lʔabyad the white shirt ...

There is a pattern $ʔaC_1C_2aC_3$ (identical in form with the pattern of the comparative cf. Note 7.1) which characterizes a set of adjectives referring either to colors or physical deformities. These adjectives will be called COLOR ADJECTIVES. The feminine of a color adjective is $C_1aC_2C_3a$, and it is worth noting that it always ends in -a even after light consonants and non-throat consonants. The forms of the feminine with CVC roots are C_1eeC_3a or C_1ooC_3a . The plural has the pattern $C_1oC_2(ə)C_3$, which has the form C_1iiC_3 or C_1uuC_3 with CVC roots. When the adjective is one referring to physical defect often a plural in -aan is used more than this regular plural. Here is a list, including words which have not appeared in Basic Sentences:

<u>masculine</u>	<u>feminine</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>meaning</u>
* ʔaamar	raamra	raamar	red
* ʔasmar	samra	samar	dark, brunette
* ʔasfar	safra	sefer	yellow
* ʔasʔar	šaʔra	šeʔer	blond
* ʔaxdar	xadra	xeder	green
* ʔazraʔ	zarʔa	zereʔ	blue
* ʔabyad	beeda	biid	white
* ʔaswad	sooda	suud	black
* ʔafraʔ	farʔa	ferʔ or ferʔaan	lame
* ʔatraʔ	tarʔa	ter(ə)ʔ or terʔaan	deaf
* ʔaʔwar	foora	fuur or fuuraan	one-eyed
* ʔafma	famya	femyaan	blind

The masculine singular of these color adjectives is identical with the invariable comparative. This means that the regular comparative of colors **is not often used**. The usual way of saying, for example, "whiter" is ʔabyad ʔaktar although occasionally other ways are used. Here are some sample sentences:

1. Štareet tlet ʔemʔaan biid . I bought three white shirts.
2. ʔaal maa binebb ssamar wʔaxad
waande samra . He said he didn't like brunettes and
then married one.
3. laazem ʔəšteri ʔaʔem ʔaswad . I have to buy a black suit.
4. halbaʔṭiixaat muu namar ktiir . These melons are not very red.
5. ʔaalʔa bentak zziire šaʔra . Your young daughter turned out to be
blonde!
6. ʔaalʔa laʔahel ʔammha , kalhon šeʔer . She takes after her mother's family -
they're all blond.

7. Saayef hal'araadi 'addees xadra . Look how green these fields are!
8. xaliil 'as'ar wafyano zere ? Khalil is blond and blue-eyed.
9. xeer nsaalla wes'sak 'asfar . I hope you're OK - your face is pale.
10. balla 'atiini halwara'a Ibeeda halli ' Please give me that white paper in front of you.
11. 'ahmad 'asmar men 'ali or 'asmar 'aktar men 'ali . Ahmad is darker than Ali.
12. 'aktar binaayaat halbalad hamra . Most of the buildings of this town are red.
13. 'abu 'ta'm l'azra' halli waa'ef hniik bikuun l'estaaz . The man with the ("father of the") blue suit standing over there must be (or is) the professor.
14. Suu loon le'maase halli stareetha ? What color is the cloth you bought ? Yellow.
15. halwalad 'atraš men wa't maa kaan zgiir . This boy has been deaf from the time he was young.
16. maa binebbu yefhamu 'aamliin haalhon taršaan . They don't want to understand - they're pretending they're deaf.
17. 'aaxde režžaal 'afwar bfeen waande laaken mniik mafha . She's married to a one-eyed man but he's very good with her.
18. lxersaan byenku b'iddehon . Mute people talk with their hands.
19. fii tarii'a latafliim l'omyaan hatta ye'ru wyektbu . There is a method for teaching the blind to read and write.
20. 'ahmad 'ando walad 'afraš . Ahmad has a lame son.

Note 10.4 Agreement.

A. Strict agreement. In general an adjective or a verb in Arabic agrees with the preceding noun to which it refers. In other words if the noun is masculine singular, or feminine singular, or plural, so is the adjective or verb that refers to it. For example:

lwalad zzǧiir ʔəža .

The young boy came.

lbent zzǧiire ʔəžet .

The young girl came.

lewlaad zzǧaar ʔəžu .

The young children came.

When there is a series of nouns connected by w- 'and' an adjective or verb referring to the whole series is usually plural. For example:

lwalad welbent ʔəžu metʔaxriin .

The boy and girl came late.

lʔasaatze wettalamiiz kaanu

The professors and students were

mawžuudiin .

present.

An adjective or verb referring to a noun with the ending -een 'two' is usually plural. For example:

lwaladeen (or lbenteen) zzǧaar ʔəžu .

The two young boys (or girls) came.

The kind of agreement described so far in this note may be called STRICT AGREEMENT. Most agreement of adjective and verbs in Arabic with the nouns to which they refer is strict agreement, and many examples have occurred in the Basic Sentences and elsewhere in Units 1-10. There are however, two other kinds of agreement which also occur in Arabic.

B. Deflected agreement. One of these other kinds of agreement is the arrangement called DEFLECTED AGREEMENT, in which the noun is plural and the adjective or verb involved is feminine singular. For most noun plurals referring to things, not persons, and for a handful of plurals referring to persons this kind of agreement is much more common than strict agreement which would have the adjective or verb in the plural. For example:

lʔəmṣaan haadra .

The shirts are ready.

is more common than:

lʔəmṣaan haadriin .

The shirts are ready.

This system of deflected agreement in which a feminine singular "agrees" with a plural is of very frequent occurrence and is one of the most characteristic features of Arabic. There have been several examples of it in the Basic Sentences and elsewhere in Units 1-10:

page 7.18 manaazer lwadyaan btasher
lʔəmṣaan .

The views of the valleys enchant mankind.

page 5.23 šuu leǧraad halli laazamtak ?What are the things you need:

page 5.24 ʔasṣaari daaʔiman rxiiša .

My prices are always cheap.

page 8.20 ... nšaa^{lla} ʔaxba^{ar} ssətt

... I hope the news of your wife

nniina .

is good.

When there is a series of nouns connected by w- 'and' every one of which is a plural of the kind which may take deflected agreement an adjective or verb referring to the whole series may be, and more often is, feminine singular rather than plural. It is worth noting, however, that if any of the nouns -- even only one in a long series -- are not plurals of this kind, then the adjective or verb must follow strict agreement, i.e. be plural agreeing with the whole series. For example:

lkababiid wəlbəraniit haadra (or haadriin) The coats and hats are ready.

But:

lʔəmsaan wəttəʔm haadriin (not haadra). The shirts and suit are ready.

Because taʔm is not a plural at all, while all the others (kababiid, baraniit, ʔəmsaan) are plurals which may follow deflected agreement.

C. Equivocal agreement. There is one other kind of agreement, much less common than the preceding two kinds but in regular use. In this kind of agreement called EQUIVOCAL AGREEMENT the verb (or, less commonly, adjective) precedes the noun and is masculine singular no matter whether the noun is masculine singular, feminine singular, or plural. In sentences like this the noun is always indefinite, i.e. does not have l- 'the'. Examples:

ʔəža šii mara lahoon ?

Did some woman come here?

mawžuud hniik wlaad ʔarab ktiir .

There are lots of Arabs (present) there.

There have been very few examples of equivocal agreement in Units 1-10.

D. Examples. The three brief descriptions of types of agreement given in this note do not cover all the details of agreement in Arabic; there are only indications of the general tendencies. The best way to master agreement in Arabic is to hear lots of Arabic sentences and make up new sentences on the basis of the ones you have heard. The following thirty-five sentences illustrate the general types described and include some special cases that were not specifically mentioned.

1. halkuusaayaat muu mnaah ktiir .

These kusa's aren't very good.

2. tʔuumti ʔəžet men ʔand lkawwa šii ?

Have my suits come from the presser's yet?

3. miin ʔəža ? ʔəžu wlaad ʔammak .

Who came? Your cousins came.

4. ʔəža rʔaal ktiir ʔalʔahwe .

A lot of men came to the coffee house.

5. ʔəžu ttalamiiz halli bedhon yetʔallamu frənsaawi .

The students who want to learn French came.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. <u>ʔeza</u> neswaan laʃand marti . | Some women came (to visit) my wife. |
| 7. <u>raht</u> ʔana wʔabi lanzuurkon . | My father and I came to visit you. |
| 8. fii ʃando tlet binaayaat <u>kbiire</u> (<u>kbaar</u>).He has three large buildings. | |
| 9. ʃtareet daftareen <u>kbaar</u> . | I bought two large notebooks. |
| 10. banaato <u>lekbaar</u> <u>biruumu</u> ʃalmadraxe . | His old daughter goes to school. |
| 11. <u>taalef</u> ʔehwye ʔawiyye barra . | Heavy winds have come up outside. |
| 12. halbalad <u>helwe</u> <u>wendiife</u> . | The streets of this town are nice and clean. |
| 13. <u>ʃiruud</u> <u>ttʔiile</u> byəʃatuuha balbariid
<u>ʃaadi</u> . | They send heavy packages by ordinary mail. |
| 14. layaali <u>sseef</u> <u>helwe</u> . | Summer evenings are lovely. |
| 15. <u>saar</u> ʃandhon maʃaari ktiir . | They got a lot of money. |
| 16. laazem nnaas <u>taʃref</u> lhaʔiiʔa metel
maa hiyye . | People must know the truth as it is. |
| 17. men zamaan <u>kean</u> <u>yeʒi</u> naas ktiir
lahalmaʃam . | A long time ago lots of people used to come to this restaurant. |
| 18. <u>mada</u> halwaraʔa bass xamse menna . | Only five of us signed this paper. |
| 19. kmaalet lmawʒuudiin maa <u>raɖy</u>
<u>yəmduuha</u> . | The rest of us weren't willing to sign it. |
| 20. halmgallafaat halli ʒəbthon <u>kbiire</u>
(<u>kbaar</u>) . | These envelopes you brought are [too] large. |
| 21. baʃd halmatar <u>saaret</u> ʔasfaar lənbuub
<u>btənzəl</u> . | After that rain the prices of grains should go down. |
| 22. barqiyyaat lxaarʒiyye <u>maɸuuza</u>
mmaktabi . | The Foreign Office telegrams are kept in my desk. |
| 23. leekhon hayy banaatak <u>raaʒi</u>
mməlmadraxe .. | Look, there are your daughters coming back from school. |
| 24. maa ʔələʃ biʔiidhon yeʃtaru beet . | It wasn't possible for them to buy a home. |
| 25. men ʃahər lahallaʔ <u>saar</u> ʒaaye
labeeruʃt settʔawabiir . | For a month now six ships have been coming to Beirut. |
| 26. <u>raaɸet</u> nnaas ʔabl nəʒʒ lleel . | The people left before midnight. |

27. ?ana maa bñebb ?ella ssiigaaraat
lxafiifo .

I only like mild cigarettes.

28. fando tlet banaat kbaar wtenteen
zgaar .

He has three grown up daughters and
two young ones.

29. ?addeš ñelwe hal?iyyaam, laa fii
bard walaafiiñoob .

How nice these days are -- it's neither
hot nor cold.

30. saaret ttayyaaraat batwaddiik laween
maa betñebb .

It's gotten so that planes will take
you wherever you want.

31. maṣaayef lebnaan ñelwe .

The summer resorts of Lebanon are lovely.

32. telef (or telfet) fešriin feele
ñala bluudaan .

Twenty families went up to Bloudane.

33. ?iza bedna nñuuf byuut laazem
ikuunu maṣna ssattaat .

If we want to see houses, the ladies
have to be with us.

34. yoom bikuun fii fərṣa lmadaares
maa btəftaḥ .

On a day that's a holiday the schools
don't open.

35. lassa fii ?araadi bi?afriiqya maa
byaṣrefha ?ənsaan .

There are still areas in Africa unknown
to man ("a human being doesn't know
her").

Note 10.5. Formulas and responses. In Units 1-10 a number of polite formulas have appeared and some discussion of them was given in Notes 1.1 and 4.8. One of the most important features of the use of polite formulas in Arabic is the selection of the appropriate response to each formula.

A. In many cases the response is something like "the same to you" in effect.
Examples:

ssalaamu_ṣalaykom . - waṣalaykumu_ssalaam .

?ahlan wasahlan . - ?ahlan wasahlan fiik . (or just fiik)

salleem ?ideek . - w?ideek .

teṣbnu ṣala_xeer . - w?əntu bxeer .

katter xeerak . - wxeerak .

maḡnaba . - maḡnaba .

B. Very often, however, the usual response is more like "the same to you and more so." Examples:

nhaarak safiid . - nhaarak safiid mbaarak .
May your day be fortunate. May your day be fortunate and blessed.

marnaba . - marnabteen (or even: maraaneb)
Hello. Two hellos. (or: Hellos)

sabaan_lxeer . - sabaan_lxeeraat . Morning of well-beings.
Morning of well-being. milt_sabaan . 100 mornings [of goodness].
sabaan_nnuur . Morning of light.
ʔalla yesfed sabaanak . May God make your morning
fortunate.
sabaan_lfell . Morning of jasmine. (Said
between intimate friends)

The exact use of these responses which increase the good wishes of the original formula varies somewhat from place to place, but the principle is probably in operation everywhere Arabic is spoken.

C. Another frequent type of response is the echoic response like ʔalla ysalmak (see Note 4.8). In this kind of response the echo formula may be used in response whenever a certain root appears in the original formula. Other examples:

(1) ʔalla ybaarek fiik . is used as echo to ybrk .

mabruuk (a) . - ʔalla ybaarek fiik .

Blessed! (Said to someone who has just purchased, or is wearing, a new article of clothing; to someone who has just had a child; to someone who was just promoted; etc.) - God bless you.

ʔiid mbaarak . - ʔalla ybaarek fiik .

Blessed holiday! (Said on certain holidays) - God bless you.

hallet lbarake . - ʔalla ybaarek fiik .

[God] has let fall his blessing! (Said on a variety of occasions when God's bounty is to be noticed) - God bless you.

(2) ʔalla ysaafiik . is used as echo to ysfy

ʔalla yastfiik lsaafye . - ʔalla ysaafiik .

God give you strength. (Said to someone working or about to work). - God strengthen you.

mfaafa nsaalla . - ʔalla ysaafiik .

God willing you will be strengthened. (Said to or about sick person) - God strengthen you.

lhamdella falfaafye . - ʔalla ysaafiik .

Praise be to God for the strength. (Said to or about someone who has recovered from sickness). - God strengthen you.

10.19

(3) ʔalla yənsem ʔaleek is used as echo to vnm

naʔiiman . - ʔalla yənsem ʔaleek .

(Said to someone who has just had haircut, shave, or bath, or who has just awakened from a nap). - God favor you.

naʔam - ʔalla yənsem ʔaleek .

Yes, sir. (When said respectfully or attentively, usually to one older than oneself) - God favor you.

C. In addition to these three response patterns "same to you", same to you and more so", and the echo, there are many stereotyped responses which do not seem to fit any particular pattern. For example, ʔalla yənfazak is widely used as a response.

ʔalla maʔak . - ʔalla yənfazak .

God be with you. (Said to someone about to do a certain job or tackle a certain problem; or as a farewell to someone leaving). - God keep you.

ʔalla ysaafiik . - ʔalla yənfazak .

God strengthen you. (Said to a sick person) - God keep you.

ʔalla yxalliilak yaahon . - ʔalla yənfazak .

May God spare them for you. (Said to someone about his children). - God keep you.

Sometimes there is a set of three formulas which fit together. One example, familiar since Unit 1 is the "goodby." If the one leaving speaks first, as is more usual, he says xaatrak . Then the one remaining must answer maʔssalaame . The first person may then answer ʔalla ysalmak . If, on the other hand, as happens under various conditions, the one remaining speaks first, he says maʔssalaame and the other must answer ʔalla ysalmak . Notice the pattern of the responses - If xaatrak first, then definitely maʔssalaame and maybe ʔalla ysalmak. If maʔssalaame first, then definitely ʔalla ysalmak .

Another common example of three-way formulas is the tfaddal . - ʔanteen - ʔala ʔalbak set. A person who is eating or about to eat says tfaddal (= Please join me.) to companion or passerby. The other person must reply ʔanteen ("two healths" = no thank you. but I hope you enjoy it). Then the first person may reply ʔala ʔalbak ("on your heart"). Sometimes, however, ʔanteen is said without being preceded by tfaddal . For example, someone might say he is going to eat lunch whereupon someone else present will say ʔanteen (= I hope you enjoy your lunch). The other person in such a case usually replies ʔala ʔalbak .

Section D. Exercises

1. Completion. Fill in the blanks in these sentences as in previous completion exercises using an adjective or verb of the root indicated, making sure that you use a permissible form agreeing with the noun, and making sure also that you understand the sentence.

1. mataaŋem halbalad ktiir (ndf) .
2. faadatan babŋat makatiibi (skr) .
3. stanna labakra yemken (wɔl) ʔaxbaar (mnɛ) .
4. manaazer ṭtariɪʔ been faalee wbeeruut (ɛlv) .
5. halmoozaat muu (tyb) ktiir .
6. (rVɛ) ʔaššaam ʔameerkaan ktiir .
7. nšaalla wlaadak (bɔt) ?
8. mayyet halbalad (ktr) w (tyb) .
9. (mdv) mnaasabaat ktiir wmaa hakeetello .
10. šababiik beetna muu (zbt) .
11. wlaado daayman (ndf) .
12. ʔuwad beetna (zgr) .
13. byezhar llaɲnaamiin lyoom muu (ftɛ) .
14. ʔasfaar ṭtyaab (glv) .
15. binaayet lbooṣta (nmr) .
16. štareet tlet ʔamsaan (bvɔ) .
17. šəbahōn ŋyuunak (nmr) ?
18. ʔeža šii kabbuudi l(bnn) ṃmalmasbağa ?
19. nnaas (ʔvl) heek .
- 20.

2. Questions and Answers. Answer each of the following questions using an occupation noun (or noun of similar pattern) in the reply.

1. ʔand miin btamsan ɟabbaaɟak ?
2. Šuu ʔesmo halli biʔəsṣ ššafr wbiʔəšš ddaʔn ?
3. ʔiza bəddak tastaʔzer šii beet, laʔand miin bətruun ?
4. miin byetbox faadatan bəlmaɟam ?

5. bi'eeš byəbʃatu lbariid lžawwi ?
6. miin bižəblak makatiibak kəll yoom ?
7. ʃaadatan miin bibiif llaɲme ?
8. miin saawaalak haɲtaʔm ?
9. ʃuu ʔəsmo halli bisaawi ʃʃababiik wəlbwaab ?
10. miin halli bisaawi lɣəbəz ?
11. miin byəkwiilak tʔuumak ?
12. ʃuu ʔəsm lmarə halli bteğsel bəlʔəžra ?
13. whalli bteğbox bəlʔəžra ?
14. whalli byeštəglu bəlmaʃaamel ?

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Ahmad comes to see Jones who is just about to leave.

A. salamaat !

J. salamaat , mniin halli ʔžiit ʔabəl maa ʔəɲlaf .

A. ʔiza ʃaleek ʃii laa tətʔaxxar mən ʃaani .

J. ʔana kənt raayən laʃandak ʃuufak .

A. ʔahla wsahla ʔeemta maa ʃarraft .

J. lʃeele waasle baʃdbəkra .

A. ʃaal , basatɲni bihalxabar .

J. bass lahallaʔ maa laʔeet beet .

J. ʃuuʃaar maʃddallaal halli hakeenamaʃo mən ʃaher ?

A. nsiitʔəllak ʃaɲaak ʃəmro .¹

J. lah , lah , ʃuu ʃarło ?

A. maabaʃrefwalla . ʔee siidi kəlna ʃala haɲtariiʔ .

J. nʃaalla maaykuun ʃando wlaad zğaar .

A. mətli mətla²k maa baʃref , bass ʔalla kbiir maabyansa nada .

¹ ʃaɲaak ʃəmro "he gave you his life" = he died.

² mətli mətla²k "like me, like you" = I'm the same as you, in the same situation as you.

- A. tayyeb yaa siidi . lanaržaf lamas'alt' lbeet .
 J. šuu bteftaker ?
 A. hah ! hayy 'abu 'ammad .
 J. miin haad³ !
 A. dallaal šaater fii tant 'iido byuut ktiir .
 A. marnaba 'abu 'ammad .
 A. A. maraaneb .
 A. beddi mennak beet .
 A. A. lal'ežra ?
 A. 'ee nafam .
 A. A. ba'fd bekra fii beet mniin beddo yafda⁴??
 A. heek faal , wbatkuun weslet ssatt .
 A. A. šuu miin beddo yesta'žer lbeet ?
 A. fafwan , laa t'aaxzuuni 'antu ttneen .
 A. mester žoons b'arfa'k fala 'abu 'ammad .
 A. A. tšarrafa , lbeet lanadrtak ?
 J. nafam .
 A. A. ya'ni mawaali 'addeeš beddak 'ežrto ?
 J. fala hawa lbeet .
 A. A. tayyeb fhamt faleek . beddak beet mniin .
 A. rananeftamed faleek yaa 'abu 'ammad .
 A. A. fala feeniwraasi .

Conversation 2. Ahmad and Jones go to the Post Office.

- A. tafa lanfuut falboosta yamken 'eli makatiib bisanduu'i .
 J. w'ana žaayiini țard la'axdo .
 A. halli byexloš 'abal byestanna ttaani fand lbaab .
 J. žaayiini țard . bte'mor tsallamni yaa ?
 C. mafak ši' wašal fii ?
 J. nafam tfaddal .

1 ³ haad = haada Several common words are sometimes shortened by dropping a final
 a e.g. marnab for marnaba .

4 fedi , yafda 'become empty' is the verb of which faadi is the active participle.

C. tfaddal hayy ttard .

J. marmuun .

C. fmeel mafuuuf mdiili ?esmak whettalli fawnwaanak hoon .

J. fayyeb .

C. halla? betriid taftan ttard lanŝuuf ŝuu fii ?

J. balla ŝatiini bihalleera tawaabef .

C. ŝuu ttawaabef halli betriidha ?

J. ?arba bariid ŝawwi tabaf lfaŝriin .

J. welkmaale tabaf lramse .

C. tfaddal . mazbuutiin ?

J. nafam .

* * *

A. ŝanyiini hawaale men ?afriiqya lŝunuubiyye .

J. ŝuu fii ?elak nada hniik ?

A. fii ?eli ?eben ŝamm taaŝer hniik .

* * *

J. ŝuu halbard maa kaan yaxloŝ !!

A. mazbuut biŝayaati maa ŝaft sene metel hassane .

J. ?alli ?iza laaz mak ŝii men beeruut .

A. baddi salaamtak , balla sallamli ŝassett wa?t btaŝal .

J. ?alla ysalmak .

A. ?addceŝ badha tambaŝet marti lamma betŝuuf ssatt .

A. balla ?awwal muu btaŝalu ŝaŝŝaam ŝaŝuunexabar .

J. tabiifi miin ?alna ŝeerken ?

A. ?alla yehfaŝkon wixalliikon .

ʔafrīqya	Africa	msōkar	adj	insured		
ʔēʔra ft+(pl ʔēʔraawāat)	rent, pay	m(u)fawwadiyye	ft	legation		
ʔime ft+(pl reg or ʔiyam)	value	sállam	hand over, surrender, quit; greet (ʔala)			
baakēet (pl baaketāat)	package	sāman (a)	permit, allow; smahli b- let me have			
bariid	mail	sandūʔ (pl sanadiiʔ)	box, trunk, "caisse"			
bariidi	adj	pertaining to mail		stáʔʔar (ʔyestáʔʔer)	rent (from someone)	
barqīyye	ft	telegram		šabbāak (pl šababiik)	window	
ʔala_bakra	in the morning			tʔammal	hope	
bidūun	without			tāalet	adj	third
bōoṣṭa	ft	mail, post office, bus		talḡráaf (pl talḡra-fāat)	telegram	
bōoṣṭaʔi (pl bōoṣṭaʔiyye)	mailman			tekram	at your service; you're wel come (reply to "thank you")	
dāftar (pl dafāater)	notebook, ledger			ṭaaʔ (pl ṭunʔ)	"fold"	
ḡāatet	adj	putting		ṭāabef (pl ṭawāabef)	stamp	
hawāale	ft	money order		ṭalab (pl -aat)	request, demand; appli- cation, order, (for some- thing)	
kalām (coll)	talk, words;			ṭārd (pl ṭrud(e))	package	
kalmef	word			ṭayyāara	ft	airplane, kite
kállaf	charge, tell someone to do something			wāšāʔan	Washington	
kūwe	ft	window esp. ticket window		wāraʔ bāul	coll	postage stamps
māda (i)	sign			wāʔl (pl wṣuulāat)	receipt	
maktūub (pl makatlib)	letter			wazāara	ft	ministry
mazbūt	adj.	exact		wāzzaʔ	distribute	
maṣmūʔ	total			xāames	adj	fifth
maflūm	known, certainly, of course			xāarʔiyye	ft	foreign affairs
maftāah (pl mafatiin)	key, opener			zāad (i)	exceed, do or be in excess	
maṣṭāʔʔal	adj	urgent				
maṣriyye ft+(pl reg or maṣāari)	money					
mḡállaf (pl mḡallafāat)	envelope					

ẓārf (pl ẓrūf(e) envelope; circumstance; adverb

ẓāwri adj atmospheric, air- (as adjective)

ẓādatan usually

ẓāadi adj ordinary, usual

ẓābba fill

ẓāllan mark, teach

ẓāmar Omar

ẓāmwān (pl ẓānwān) address

A TRIP TO ALEPPO

Section A. Basic Sentences

Mr. Jones is speaking to Khalil.	master Joons samm yetgaaka maf xaliil .
mind, reason	fa'li
look around	tfarraʃ
Aleppo	halab
opinion	raʔi
1. I feel like going to see Aleppo. How about it? (What is your opinion?)	ʔaayalli fa'li ʔatfarreʃ sala halab , ʃuu raʔyak ?
hide, conceal	xafa yaxfi
trip	maʃwaar
2. To tell you the truth ("I'm not concealing from you"), I have to take a trip there.	maa baxfi faleek , ʔana kamaan ʃaliyyi maʃwaar lahniik .
objection	maaneʃ
be companions	traafaʔu
3. If there's no objection, we'll go together.	ʔiza maa fii maaneʃ mn-traafaʔ sawa .
pleasure	suruur
4. With great pleasure.	bkell suruur .
decide	qarrar
travel	saafar
5. When did you plan to go? ("When are you decided to travel?")	ʔeemta mqarrer tsaafar ?
make easy	sahhal
6. Saturday, God willing. ("if God makes it easy")	yoom ssabt nʔalla sahhal .
7. How shall we go? ("By what do we travel?")	biʔeeʃ mansaafar ?
train	treen
slow	baʔiiʔ
dirty	waxex

in a hurry	mestaʃʒel
fast	sariif
8. The train is slow and dirty. I'm in a hurry and airplane is faster.	ttreen batii? uwagex. ʔana mestaʃʒel wetṭayyaaraʔasraf.
9. My idea was to go by train so I'd see more.	ʔana kaan fekri ruux bettreen laʔetfarraʃ ʔaktar.
finish	xallas
10. We'll go back by train because after I finish my work I'll have time.	mnerʒaʃ bettreen laʔanno baʃd maa xalles ʃeḡli biʃiir ʃandi waʔt.
agree	ttafaʔ
meet	tlaaʔu
11. Agreed. When shall we meet?	ttafaʔna. ʔamta mnetlaaʔa?
fly, take off	ṭaar iṭiir
12. What time does the plane take off?	ʔam ʃaaʃa betṭiir ṭṭayyaara?
daily	yoomiyyan
morning, dawn	ʃebh
13. Daily at seven a.m.	yoomiyyan ʃaaʃa ʃabʃa ʃʃebh
airfield	maṭaar
14. And we have to be at the air field an hour early.	ulaazem nkuun belmaṭaar ʔabl ʃaaʃa.
15. I'll stop by and pick you up at the hotel at half past five.	beeroʔ baaxdak mnelʔoteel ʃaaʃa xamse uness.
at the airport	belmaṭaar
16. There's a plane just in from America.	hayy ṭayyaara ʒaaye man ʔameerka.
here is!	ʃaʃ-
passenger	raakeb
17. There are the passengers getting off (it).	ʃaʃhon rrekkaab naazliin menha.
search, inspect	fattaʃ
suitcase, briefcase	ʃanta

18. Oh, do they inspect their bags now?
passport
Zawaaz or ɓazabórt
19. Of course, and they look at their
passports too.
Jones speaks to the girl.
ticket
Zoons binaaki ləmwazzafe
taskara
20. The two of us are going to Aleppo
and here are our tickets.
permit, excuse
weigh
tneenətna msaafriin lahalab uhayy
tazaakerna.
samar, yəzmaɪ
wazan, yuuzən
21. May we have your bags to weigh them.
("excuse us with your bags...")
I wonder (expression of doubt)
plain
barren
smaɪuulna bʃanatiikon lanuuzənhon.
yatara
sahl
ʔaʃrad
22. Why in the world are these plains
so barren?
luck
lagging behind
leeʃ yatara haʃshuul ʒarda?
hazz
mʔaʃsər
23. You're out of luck. If you could
see it in spring, you wouldn't say
that.
appear
baan ibaan
hazzak mʔasser laww ʃeftha berrabiif
kənt bəʔuul ʒeer heek.
24. There's Aleppo in sight and the
citadel in the middle.
about to
maʔa baʔa ʔella
ʒaʃha halab baanet uʔaʃfətha bənnəʃs.
25. Get yourself ready. We're about to
land.
call
haɖɖər haalak maa baʔa ʔella nəʒal
ʃayyat
26. I'm going to call a taxi to take us
into town.
ʔana lahaʃayyet lataksi yaaxədna ʃalbalad.

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| automobile | sayyaara |
| company | šerke |
| make arrive | waşşal |
27. No, the company car will take us there right away. la' halla' sayyaart šerke betwaşşalna.
-
- | | |
|--------------------|---------|
| obliged, compelled | mettarr |
| factory | mafmal |
| weaving | nasiiš |
28. I have to go to the textile mill. ?ana mettarr ruuŋ fala mafmal nnasiiš.
-
- | | |
|----------------|--------|
| factory | mağnaŋ |
| modern, recent | hadiis |
| great, fine | fažiim |
29. Look how fine those modern factories are! šuuf halmaşaaneŋ lhadiise maa ?afšanha .
-
- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| imagining | metşawwer |
| industry | şinaafa |
30. I didn't imagine that this industry had reached such a level here. ?ana maa kent metşawwer ?anno waşlet haşşinaafa şandkon lahaddaraše .
31. But we have lots of this in America. bass haada şanna maano ktiir bi?aseerka .
32. I'd like to look at something I haven't seen. ?ana bwaabb ?etfarraš fala ši maa şefto .
-
- | | |
|---------|---------|
| famous | maşhuur |
| goods | bdaafa |
| leather | šald |
33. They say this city is famous for leather goods. bi?uulu ?anno halbalad maşhuura balbdaafa lšaldiyye .
-
- | | |
|------------|-------|
| a purchase | šarwe |
|------------|-------|
34. And I'm thinking of buying a ladies hand bag for my wife. ufamma ?eftaker bšarwet šantet ?iidi naswaaniyye lamarti .
-
- | | |
|-------------|------|
| suk, market | suu? |
|-------------|------|

35. Then we stop by at the suqs on our way to the citadel.
 be found lta'a
 store maxzan
36. What we're looking for ("our thing") can be found in this store.
 believe fa'ta'ad
 please fa'žab ya'žeb
 wife zoože er žooze
37. I think my wife will like this bag very much.
 since, as long as taalamaa
 go meši yamši
38. Since our work is finished, come on let's go back.
 about to, on the point of taalamaa xalaš šağlana 'amši laneržaf ba'a.
 hurry fala wašak
 sta'žal
39. The train is about to leave, hurry up and let's get our places.
 beside mša'?'iit -
40. The people sitting next to us are getting off at Hama.
 hear samef yasmaf
 voice, sound soot
 water wheel naafuura
 the Orontes (River) lfaaši
41. Do you hear the sound of the water wheels on the Orontes?
 dam sadd
 lake bunayra
- lakaan bi'tarii'na lal'alfa mnəmro?
 fasswaa' .
- byalta'a fāraḡna bihalmaxzan .
- fa'ta'ad
- fa'žab ya'žeb
- zoože er žooze
- wa'lla yaa 'axi be'ta'ed haššanta btə'žeb
 zoožti ktiir .
- taalamaa
- meši yamši
- taalamaa xalaš šağlana 'amši laneržaf ba'a.
- fala wašak
- sta'žal
- ttreen fala wašak ssafar sta'žel
 lanənfaz manallaatna .
- mša'?'iit -
- halli 'aa'fdiin mša'?'iitna lanayənzlu
 bihama .
- samef yasmaf
- soot
- naafuura
- lfaaši
- saamef soot nnawa'fiir falfaaši ?
- sadd
- bunayra

42. Do you see that dam on lake
Qattinah?

build

irrigation

broad, extensive

šaayef hassadd fala busayret l'aṭṭiine ?

bana yəbni

ʔərwaʔ

waasaʔ

43. They built this recently for
irrigation of this large area.

company

haada banuu ʔdiid laʔərwaʔ halʔaraaḍi
lwaasfa .

refʔa

44. I enjoyed your company very
much Mr. Jones.

join together

mbasaṭat ktiir brefʔtak yaa
master ʔoons .

ʔamaʔ yaʔmaʔ

45. I hope we'll be together again
sometime ("God join together again")

ʔalla yaʔmaʔna sawa marra taanye .

REVIEW

Like Unit 6, this Unit is intended to furnish you with a review of the work done so far and a means of testing yourself on the material covered. Follow the same procedure you did in Unit 6.

Section A. True-False Test

There are forty-five true-false statements. If you get thirty-eight or more of them right you are doing well enough. If you don't you need more study and practice in Spoken Arabic.

Section B. Exercises1. Word Review

Use these words the same way you used the Word Review of Unit 6.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| (1) ṣeef | (1) raas | (1) maṣṣat |
| (2) xariif | (2) zeet | (2) ḡasal |
| (3) raabeṣ | (3) ḡahr | (3) ḡatab |
| (4) ṣate | (4) raʿbe | (4) farṣ |
| (1) ṣaṣr | (1) taʿṣ | (1) ṣoob |
| (2) ʿiid | (2) ʿamiis | (2) bard |
| (3) ʿalb | (3) kabbuud | (3) binaṣye |
| (4) seṣr | (4) ṣabbaat | (4) rṭuube |
| (1) waṣl | (1) ṣeen | (1) ṣanṣar |
| (2) maktuub | (2) lsaan | (2) benni |
| (3) ḡawaale | (3) rekbe | (3) ʿawaafi |
| (4) mazbuut | (4) muus | (4) ʿabyad |

(1) hawa	(1) mayy	(1) manšafe
(2) ʔunda	(2) biira	(2) mʔaṣṣ
(3) šams	(3) ʔahwe	(3) manzar
(4) ḡeem	(4) liife	(4) makana

2. Sentence Review

Go over these sentences the way you went over the Sentence Review part of Unit 6.

List 1

1. How was the weather where you were in the mountains?
2. Anyway, if it were a little drier it would be much better.
3. But don't forget you have the sea.
4. It looks as though there's going to be a heavy rain.
5. You're right. But there's nothing nicer than Beirut in the winter.
6. But really, the air in the mountains is dry and healthful.
7. Believe me, it wasn't too cold.
8. I prefer to spend the summer and fall in the mountains.
9. By the way, where did you spend last week?
10. I wish you could see the spring we have in Beirut.
11. When do you want to take your bath?
12. Please tell the bootblack to shine my shoes.
13. Are my brown suit and white shirt ready?
14. Dry yourself well so you don't catch cold.
15. Please put wood in the heater.
16. I think I have time to shave.

17. And the soap and sponge are in the cabinet.
18. Don't forget to turn the faucet off when you finish.
19. Is your razor sharp?
20. Do you want me to brush you off sir?
21. You don't look well. What's the matter with you?
22. I've come to ask the doctor about my brother.
23. Turn over on your back and breathe again.
24. He's afraid he has appendicitis.
25. Take two pills before going to sleep.
26. I've had a cold for two weeks.
27. You have to take care of yourself and not tire yourself out too much.
28. And what brings you to this clinic too?
29. Last night he woke up with a pain in his abdomen.
30. Take off your clothes and I'll take a look.
31. Yes, there's a registered letter for you.
32. Fill out this form and pay me the money.
33. Give me two pounds worth of stamps for letters.
34. I want to rent a post office box for a year.
35. Of course, and mark the envelope "air mail" for me.
36. I want to send this package to Damascus.
37. And six piastres for every additional kilo.
38. The third window as you go in.
39. He usually distributes the mail at 9 a.m.
40. Sign in the book so I can give it to you.

41. I feel like going to see Aleppo. How about it?
42. After I finish my work, I'll have time.
43. The two of us are going to Aleppo and here are our tickets.
44. Get yourself ready. We're about to land.
45. If there's no objection we'll go together.
46. You're out of luck. If you could see it in spring, you wouldn't say that.
47. Look how fine those modern factories are!
48. Then we stop by at the suqs on our way to the Citadel.
49. As long as our work is finished, come on let's go back.
50. The people sitting next to us are getting off at Hama.

List 2

1. I bought a new suit.
2. The professor said you have to memorize your lesson.
3. My brother is going to go up and summer in Bludan.
4. I don't believe the weather you have is better than what we have.
5. How happy I was in Beirut!
6. If you can't swim, don't go down to the sea.
7. We spent last winter in Beirut.
8. The view of the sea when the sun comes up is very nice.
9. It looks as though it's going to rain.
10. Come on, let's go to Damascus tomorrow.
11. Usually I shave every day.
12. And I get a haircut twice a month.

13. I don't like to have a lot taken off. (in a haircut)
14. Please brush my coat for me.
15. The bootblack doesn't have time now to shine your shoes.
16. When you get a haircut or take a bath, people say "nafiiman" to you.
17. Before you go into the bath get the soap and sponge ready.
18. Your white shirt hasn't come from the laundry yet.
19. I'm worried about your catching cold.
20. (talking to wife:) I think Ahmad is coming to visit us today.
21. I certainly don't know what I got this pain in my abdomen from.
22. Anyway I'm going to ask the doctor.
23. When I eat more than I should I get indigestion.
24. Come on, let's visit Khalil at the hospital.
25. He's been sick for ten days.
26. I hope, doctor, you take good care of my brother.
27. Nothing wrong, I hope? There was nothing the matter with you yesterday.
28. I heard that the doctor wants to perform an appendicitis operation on Khalil.
29. Usually if you visit a sick person, you say "m'aafa" to him.
30. And if someone is going to the hospital for some operation, you say to him:
sala salaame n'saalla.
31. I got ("I took") a letter from my brother today.
32. If you want to send a registered letter, you have to go to the post office.
33. At the post office there's a window for money orders and a window for
registered letters.

34. Most businessmen rent post office boxes.
34. I received a telegram ("a telegram reached me") from my brother in which he says he has arrived in San Francisco.
36. An urgent telegram costs double.
37. I got ("came me") package from America.
38. I want to go to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs to see someone.
39. I know someone who only sends his letters air mail.
40. They distribute the mail twice a day.
41. We've agreed to travel to Aleppo tomorrow.
42. Maybe your brother will go with us.
43. I believe he has an objection.
44. I'll travel by train; on my way I want to stop and see my (maternal) uncle in Homs.
45. In that case you'll go by train and I'll go by plane because I'm in a big hurry.
46. May I see your passport.
47. I didn't imagine Aleppo was so nice.
48. Do you know there's a small lake next to Homs named Qattineh?
49. I enjoyed your company to Aleppo very much. I hope we go together on another trip.
50. Do you want the truth? This country needs dams.

3. Comparatives. Read off the following adjectives, be sure you understand them, give the comparative for each, and make up a sentence containing the comparative.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| (1) sariif | (7) ktiir |
| (2) kbiir | (8) ġaali |
| (3) naašef | (9) xġiir |
| (4) bakkiir | (10) rxiis |
| (5) xalu | (11) mniin |
| (6) xafiif | (12) t'iiil |

4. Plurals. Read off the following nouns (including adjectives), be sure you understand them, give the plural for each and make up a sentence for each noun, first using the singular and then, making the necessary changes in the rest of the sentence, the plural.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| (1) maktuub | (13) mġallaf |
| (2) tayyaara | (14) yoom |
| (3) sanduu? | (15) xayyaat |
| (4) šaanfa | (16) tarii? |
| (5) 'amiis | (17) wa't |
| (6) boos'taži | (18) taaber |
| (7) muus | (19) u'iyye |
| (8) liife | (20) sahl |
| (9) žəmfa | (21) waadi |
| (10) maṣnaṣ | (22) taažer |
| (11) məšwaar | (23) raas |
| (12) feen | (24) kbiir |

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| (25) 'anmar | (38) 'iime |
| (26) waafa | (39) rekbe |
| (27) 'estaaz | (40) ra'be |
| (28) raakeb | (41) maftaah |
| (29) 'alf | (42) 'esm |
| (30) šahr | (43) da'ii'a |
| (31) ra'i | (44) ha'' |
| (32) maštašfa | (45) ta'm |
| (33) xzaane | (46) walad |
| (34) 'abyad | (47) mara |
| (35) beet | (48) hakiim |
| (36) doktor | (49) mašbağa |
| (37) ġarad | (50) 'uuda |

ʔaal (u) say, tell

ʔúu_betʔuul - bəlfarabi ? How do
you say - in Arabic?

biʔúulu_hèek . They say so.

ʔeltéllo_lhaʔiiʔa . I told him
the truth.

ʔaam (i) raise, remove, set aside

ʔaam (u) rise, get up

ʔaazaan (pl. ʔaazanaat) water heater

ʔab (ʔab-, ʔabb-, ʔabuu- pl. ʔabbahaat
see note 3)

father ʔabbeen two fathers; ʔabi my
father; ʔabuuk your father; ʔabu_rrákab

grippe; ʔabu_ʔaffiif father of Afif;

ʔabúuna father (to a priest).

ʔabadan never, ever, at all

ʔábadan_múu_ktiir . It's not at all
too much. ʔémrak_rəht_ʔaššáam ?

ʔábadan . Did you ever go to Damascus? ʔakal (-aakol imv kool, keli, etc.)

Never.

ʔabl (see note) before

mən_ʔábl before, formerly; ʔábl_maa_

(+ verb) before; ʔabl_mmənni before me; ʔaktar more

ʔábl_səntèen two years ago.

ʔabyad (adj. f beeda

pl biid) white

ʔadd amount, quantity; ʔaddéeš how much,

how long (of time); ʔádd_maa_ (+ verb)
as much as

ʔafranži (adj. f ʔafranžiyye

pl ʔafranž) Western, European,
Occidental

ʔafriiqya (f) Africa

ʔahl people, relatives; ʔáhlān_wasáhlān.

(also ʔáhlā_wsáhlā) welcome!

ʔahwe (ft ʔáhuti, ʔahwétna pl -aat

or ʔahaawi) coffee, coffee-house

ʔahad Sunday

ʔáhlā sweeten, nicer, better;

ʔáhlā_maa_ (+ verb) lest, so that ...

not.

ʔahmar (adj f hamra pl hamr) red

ʔáhsan better, best; ʔahsanlak better

for you; ʔáhsan_maa_ (+ verb)

lest, so that...not; ʔáhsan_šii...

the best thing (is, would be, etc.)...

ʔakal (-aakol imv kool, keli, etc.)

eat; ʔakal məsriyyaati He got hold of

my money. ʔakal ʔatile He got hit,

spanked ("he ate a blow")

ʔalab (e, o) turn over

ʔalf (pl ʔaalaaf, ʔluuf) thousand

xáms_taaláaf 5000; ʔlúuf_náas ʔázu.

Thousands of people came.

ʔaliil (adj. pl ʔlaal) few, a little

ʔalla God; walla (or wallaahi)
 ("by God") indeed, certainly; balla
 ("by God") please, if you don't mind.

nšaalla God willing, I hope; lhamdu_lellaa
praise be to God, thank God. (for various
phrases see: ʔanfam, hafaz, sallam,
šakar, xalla, ʔaafa, ʔata; maf; see
also notes)

ʔamar (o) command

ʔameerka (f) America

ʔamerkaani (adj f ʔamerkaaniyye or
 ʔamerkiyye pl ʔamerkaan) American

ʔamiin (adj pl ʔamana) honest, trust-
worthy; Amin (man's name)

ʔamiis (pl ʔamsaan) shirt

ʔamkan (-mken) be possible

yamken it's possible, maybe; manken
possible

ʔamr (pl ʔmuur) order, command, yes sir,
at your service; thing, affair, case

ʔana I

ʔann - that; kaʔann- as though, as if;
laʔann- because

ʔanu which

ʔanfam (e, a) show favor, be gracious to
ʔala

ʔara (a) read

ʔarbatašš (-ar + sg noun) fourteen

ʔarbfa (ft) four; ʔarbaš_leeraat
four pounds; ʔarbaš_tiiyyaam

four days; ʔarbašatna the four of us

ʔarbfa Wednesday

ʔarbašiin forty

ʔard (f; pl ʔaraadi) ground, floor

ʔasaf sorrow; mašlʔasaf unfortu-
nately

ʔasfaar see séfr

ʔašbaš (-šbeš) reach morning,
become in the morning;

tašbeš ʔala_xeer . Good night.

ʔašš (ə) cut; tell a story

lʔaššaaf ʔassaa (place name)

ʔašš (ə) sweep, shave

ʔataš (a) cut

ʔattiine ʔattinah (name of lake near
Homs)

ʔawaafi see waafa

ʔawi (adj f ʔawiyye pl ʔawaaya)
strong

ʔawwal (adj f ʔuula pl ʔawwaliin)

first: ʔáwwal_baab or lbáab_lʔáwwal
the first door; beginning:

bʔáwwal_ššəmfə at the beginning of
the week; balʔawwal in the begin-
ning, at first; ʔáwwal_maa (+ verb)
as soon as

ʔax (ʔax-, ʔaxx-, ʔaxuu- pl ʔaxwe,

ʔaxwaan see note 3) brother, ʔaxi

my brother, ʔaxuuna our brother, ʔaxxeen

two brothers, yaa ʔáxi (frequent form

of address) ʔaxuti my brothers

ʔayyad register, charge (to someone's
account)

ʔažrad (adj f žarda pl žerd) barren,

bleak, without vegetation; without a
beard

ʔaʔad (o) sit down, stay; kaanet

ʔaaʔde ʔand naas fransawiiyiin .

She was staying with (* working for)

French people.

ʔee yes ʔée_nafam yes; ʔée_walla

yes, indeed; ʔée_lakaan . O.K. then.

ʔeemta when, ʔeemta_maa_ (+ verb)

whenever

ʔeeš what, ʔaddeeš how much; leeš why;

biʔeeš with or in what

ʔebn (pl ulaad) son (special plural bani

or banu - sons of, family of, in tribal

and family names)

ʔeder (e) be able, can

ʔaddaam in front

ʔal- see la-

ʔalla but, except, máa_ (+ verb) ...

ʔélla only; ssàaʔa wáande ʔélla_ʔàšra .

It's ten to one.

ʔemm (f pl ʔemmaat or ʔemmahaat)

mother

ʔəža, ʔaža (ʔžii-, -eži imv taʔa,

taʔi, taʔu) come ʔəžáahon wálad .

They got a son. ("A son came them.")

ʔaxad (-aaxoo imv xood, xedi etc.)

take

ʔenglizi (adj pl ʔengliz) English,

Englishmen

ʔénn- that, bzénn ʔénno_tàažer .

I think he's a business man.

ʔensaan human being, humane. see

also naas

ʔánta you

ʔanti you (f)

ʔántu you (pl)

ʔerš (pl ʔrúus) piastre

ʔerwaaʔ irrigation

ʔesm (pl ʔsaami or ʔasmaaʔ) name

ʔestaaz (pl ʔasaatze or ʔasaatize)

professor, sir, professional man

(e.g. lawyer)

ʔəžra (ft pl ʔəžraawaat) rent, pay

ʔidaʔš (-ar + sg noun) eleven

ʔiid (f ʔiidteen two hands, pl

ʔideen, ʔayaadi) ʔidayyi my hands;

ʔideek your hands; byétlaʔ_bʔiido .

He can do it. tánt_ʔiidi at my

disposition, that I can get hold of;

háatet, 'fido, 'albéet .	He has taken possession of the house.	balla please, if you don't mind	
'iime (ft pl reg or 'iyam) value		bana (i) build	
'iza if		banadoora (f coll sg banadooraaye, pl -aat) tomatoes	
'izan therefore		bard cold	
'máaš (coll) cloth		bariid mail	
'oteel (pl -aat) hotel		bariidi (adj) postal	
'úula see 'awwal		barqiyye(ft) telegram	
'uuda (ft pl 'uwad) room		bass only, but, when; báss (+ noun),	
b- (see note 9) the matter with		báss (after noun) only; báss (+ verb)	
šúu, baak ? What's the matter with you?		when, as soon as; báss but	
-ba'a (after imv) then		baṭaṭa (f coll sg baṭaṭaaye) potatoes	
ba'ar (coll) cattle; sg ba'ara cow,		baṭii' (adj pl -iin) slow	
lám, bá'ar beef		baṭn (pl bṭuun) abdomen	
báab (pl bwáab) door, gate		battiix (coll) watermelons	
baaboor (pl bawabiir or baaboraat)		bazabort (pl -aat) passport = šawaaz	
(steam-) ship; train; primus store		bašat (a) send; bašátli, yaa .	
baakeet (pl baaketaat) package		He sent it to me.	
báal mind; daar baal pay attention,		bašd after, still; men, bašd later;	
be careful of men for šala		bášd, maa_ (+ verb) after; bášd, mmènni	
baan (a) appear; baayen apparent		after me; bášdo, telmiiz . He's still	
báas or báss (pl baasáat or baššáat) bus		a student. bašd maa, šefto . I haven't	
baaš (i) sell		seen him yet.	
báda (a) begin		bašd some, certain, one another	
báar (pl bāwūr) sea, ocean		bášd, l'aw'áat sometimes	
bakkiir early		bāaša (ft pl bādaayeš) goods	
bala without		béek (pl bakawáat) bey, gentleman	
balad (f; pl blaad) city		(title of respect)	

beeruut (f) Beirut

beet (pl byuut) house family, béet_màyy toilet

beetenžaan (coll) eggplants

be'i (a) stay

bədd- want; will, shall; about to
bèddo_irúur . He wants to go.

bèdha_ténzel_lmàtar . It's about to rain.

bafteek (f) steak

bakra tomorrow; báfd_bakra day after tomorrow; šala_bakra in the morning

bənni (adj) coffee colored, brown (of things)

bənt (f pl banaat) girl, daughter, maid

bərneeta (ft pl reg or baraniit) hat

binaaye (ft) building

biira (ft) beer

blaad (pl of balad) country

bluudāan (f) Bloudane (resort town near Damascus)

booyaži (pl booyažiyye) bootblack

boošta (ft) mail, post office, bus

booštaži (pl booštažiyye) mailman

bunayra (ft) lake

da'n (pl d'uun) chin, beard; men_šaan_
dá'ni for my sake, please ("for my beard")

da'ii'a (ft pl da'áaye?) minute

daar (i) turn; dáar_baal pay attention, be careful of men for šala

daayman or daa'iman always, frequently

dafaš (a) pay (for); dafášli_nà'hon .

He paid me for them. ("He paid me their price.")

daftar (pl dafaater) notebook, ledger

dall (ə) direct (someone) to šala

daraže (ft) step, class

dars (pl druus) lesson

daxlak please, excuse me (said before asking for information)

doktoor (pl dakaatra) doctor

ḍahr (pl ḍhuur) back, ridge (of mountain)

ḍəğri (adj inv) straight, true

dhúur_ššwèer (f) Dhour Choueir, Lebanese mountain resort

faa' (i) wake up

fandi empty, free (= not busy)

faat (u) pass; go in

faddal prefer

fanaš (a) test, examine

far' (pl fruu' (a) separation, difference, part (in hair)

farša (i) brush

fatah (a) open, turn on

fattaš search, inspect; šala look for

fawaaki (pl sg rare faakye) fruit
 feen where, see also ween
 fəhem (a) understand; fhémt, fálée .

I understood him (= what he said).
 fhémto . I understood him (= his
character).

fəkr (pl ʔafkaar) thought, idea,
intention; fékro_yrúun . He's
thinking of going.

fii there is, there are; fii_fandak_
 sàmak ? Do you have fish? máa_fii
 šáms_lyðom . There's no sun today.

frensaawi (adj) French

ftakar (e) think b- of

ǵafle fəla_ǵafle suddenly

ǵanam (coll) sheep (sg ǵaname ewe)

ǵaraḍ (pl ǵraad) thing, need

ǵasal (e) (also xasal) wash

ǵasiil or xasiil laundry

ǵeem (coll pl reg or ǵyuum) clouds

ǵeer other, else, without, except (with
noun ǵeer has primary stress)

haada (f hayy(e) or haadi pl hadool(e))
this

hadm digestion

hallaʔ now, just, right away

šúu_famma_yáfmel hállaʔ ? What's he

doing now? hállaʔ_ʔəza . He just
came. šóod hállaʔ_mənruun. Sit down,
we'll go in a minute.

halli who, which, that; see yalli

hamm (ə) concern, be of importance to
 máa_bihəmni . It's none of my business.

hawa (m pl ʔəhuye strong wind) air,
wind; lhāwa_həlu_lyðom . The weather's
nice today. xallina_nǵayyer háwa_
 lʔúuda . Let's change the air in the
room.

heeʔa (ft) appearance; héeʔto_mabšúut .

He looks well (gender of adjective
independent of heeʔa) lhécʔa bəḍha_
 tənzel_matar ! It looks as though
it's going to rain!

heek so, this way, that way; biʔúulu_
 hēek . They say so. muu_hēek ?

Isn't it so? n'est-ce pas?

həlek (a) perish; be utterly exhausted
 (men from)

hənnə (n) they

hiyye she

hniik there

hoon here

huwwe he

naʔʔ (pl nʔuuʔ also: n(u)quuq law)
price, value, right; ʔaddéeš_nàʔʔo ?
How much is it? mǎʔak_nàʔʔ . You're
right. lǎʔʔ_ʔalée . He's in the
wrong.

naʔiiʔa (ft pl naʔaayeʔ) truth, fact
 naader (adj) ready, present
 naal (pl ʔanwaal) condition, state
 kiif_nǎalak ? How are you?
 ʔala_kéll_nǎal in any case
 díir_bǎalak ʔala_nǎalak . Take care
of yourself. hawwe ʔáan_lanǎalo .
He went by himself. šlóon_lʔanwǎal_
 ʔǎndkon . How are things with you?
 naale (ft) condition, state; nǎalto_
 mniina . He's well off.

naaže (ft) need, thing; náažtak_leertéen .
Two pounds is enough for you. ʔasʔaar_
 lnaažǎat ʔamma_ténzel . Prices of things
 (= staples, not real estate, etc.) are
going down. ʔéli_ʔǎndak náaže . I
have a favor to ask of you. ("I
have a need with you.")

habb (coll sg habbe pl reg or nbuub)
grains, pills, drops; lnaakiim_ʔǎlli
 ʔáaxod_nabtéen_kéll_yoom . The doctor
told me to take two pills every day.

ʔatfini_hábbet_máyy . Give me a
little ("a drop") of water.

ʔasʔaar_lənbúub_tǎlʔet . Prices of
grain (incl. lentils, etc.) have
gone up.

habb (ə) like, love

habiib (pl nabaayeʔ; f habiibe ft)
sweetheart, dear, darling, beloved,
friend

nadd (adj) sharp

nadiis (adj pl -iin) modern, recent

naddar make ready, prepare

naðra (ft) presence; naðrtak you,
 naðrto he, naðraathon they (all
polite expressions)

nafaz (a) keep, memorize; ʔǎlla_

yénfazak . God keep you. (response
to many formulas of greeting,
farewell, etc.)

naka (i) speak to la-, with maf-

nakam (e, o) rule; pass sentence,
judge; happen

nakiim (pl nákama) wise, learned man,
doctor

halaʔ (e, o) shave, cut hair

halab (f) Aleppo

namd praise; lnamdu_ellaa or lnamdella

thank God, praise be to God

nanafiyye (ft) faucet, tap; fátan,

lnanafiyye . He turned on the tap.

sákkar_lnanafiyye . He turned off

the tap.

nammaam (pl nammamaat) bath

natta (also lanatta) until, in order to;

when, as soon as

natab (coll) wood for fuel, firewood

natt (e) put

nawa, newi (a) contain, include, keep,

have, take care of (family or children)

nawaale (ft) money order

nawaali around, about

nayaat (in certain expressions nyaat)

life; benyaatak please, indeed, ("by

your life")

nazz (pl nzuuz) luck

nəlu (f nəlwe pl nəlwiin) sweet, nice,

pleasant

nəsen (e) be able (Damascus word, see

also ʔəder)

nəsel (a) happen to

nsaab (pl -aat) account, bill

kalaam (coll sg kəlme pl -aat) words

kaʔann - as if, as though

kaan (u) he; kúun_hoon békra . Be here

tomorrow. ləww_šəfto kənt_naakéeto

(or kənt_bnaakii) . If I had seen

him I would have spoken to him.

-kaan maa_kaan: whatever (added to

interrogatives); lakaan therefore,

of course, then

kabbuut (pl kababiit also kabbuud,

kababiid) coat, overcoat

kahraba (f) amber, electricity

kalifoornya (f) California

kallaf tell someone to do something,

charge, cost; kalláfni_bhaššāḡl .

He gave me this job to do. kalláfto_

ižəbli_ḡárad mən_beerúut . I asked

him to bring me something from Beirut.

ʔaddées bikállēf ? How much does it

cost?

kalsaat (pl) stockings, socks, see also

žraabe

kam (with sg noun) how many, several,

a few; kám_səne ʔašədt_bəššāam ?

How many years have you been in

Damascus? šii_kám_šàhr several months

kamaan also, too; more; ʔaṭṭini_xəbz_

kamāan . Give me bread too. or

Give me more bread.

katab (o) write

kattar increase; kàtter_xéerak . Thank

you.

kawa (1) iron, press

kbiir (adj pl kbaar) large, old (of persons)

káll all, every; káll_yòom every day, káll_lyòom all day, the whole day, káll_nnàas all the people, kállì everything

ketr quantity (of)

kfaaye (ft) enough

kiif how; kiif_hàalak ? How are you?

kiif_maa_zàrtna ? How come you didn't visit us? Why didn't you visit us?

kiilo (kiiloyeen, kiiloyàat) kilo (gram)

kiis (pl kyaas) bag

kmaale (ft) remainder, rest (of); change (return change, not equivalent change)

ktiir (adj pl ktaar) much, a lot

kuusa (f coll sg kuusaaye ft)

Italian squash

kuwwe (ft) window esp. ticket window

1- the (see notes 1 and)

la- (la-, -l-, -all-, -all-; ?al- see note 5) to, for; until, so that

lamíin_halbèet ? Whose house is this?

lbèet_?élo . The house is his. Zàaye_

lašúufo . I'm here to see him. la?ann-

because lafánd to the house of

la? no (answer to yes-or-no question, see also laa)

la?a (-laa?i) find (also figurative)

la?ann- because see also la- and ?ann-laa (with inv) not, don't; láe_tensa

don't forget; laa...laa neither...nor;

laa. no (in contradiction; see also la?)

laaken but

lana- see rana-

lawatta until, so that see la- and hatta

lamm (coll) meat; lám_bá?ar beef, lám_gáanam lamb

laazem see lazem

lafat(e) turn

lafte (ft) turn

lakaan therefore, then, of course

lamma when (not as interrogative)

lámma_mnéšal šatíina_xàbar . When we arrive, let us know.

lamma? polish, shine

laww if (something were so) làww_

šáfto kènt_bhaakíi . If I had seen him, I would have spoken to him.

lawla (+ noun) if it were not for

lbaarha (also lbaaren, mbaaren, mbaarha) yesterday

leck nere is, here are, here (comes, etc.) léeko_zàaye . Here he comes.

leel (<u>coll sg</u> leele <u>a night pl</u> layaali)	yet. (see also maa_ " <u>connective</u> ")
<u>night, nighttime; lèelt_mbaarna last</u>	maadi (<u>adj</u>) <u>past</u>
<u>night lléele tonight</u>	maaneŋ (<u>pl</u> mawaaneŋ) <u>objection</u>
leera (<u>ft</u>) <u>pound (monetary unit)</u>	mabŋuut (<u>adj</u>) <u>well (health), gl-d, fine</u>
leeš <u>why</u>	mada(ə) <u>reach, stretch out</u>
lessa <u>now; still, yet; lessáani_bəššáam .</u>	madrase (<u>ft pl</u> madares) <u>school</u>
<u>I'm still in Damascus.</u>	mada(i) <u>sign</u>
ləzem(a) <u>be necessary, laazem necessary;</u>	madda <u>pass, spend (time)</u>
<u>lāazem_yézi . He has to come.</u>	mahl <u>ease; fala_máhl- (+ pron suf)</u>
<u>byəlzamak_ǵéero . You need someone else. slowly</u>	
liife (<u>ft pl</u> liyaf) <u>fibre bath sponge</u>	mahúul (<u>adj</u>) <u>unusual, extraordinary</u>
loon (<u>pl</u> lwaan) <u>color, form; lóono,</u>	mahall (<u>pl</u> mahallaat) <u>place, shop</u>
<u>ʔámmar . It's red. Šloon how fala,</u>	makana <u>or</u> maakiina (<u>ft</u>) <u>machine, gadget</u>
<u>hallóon in that case</u>	maktuub (<u>pl</u> makatiib) <u>letter</u>
luabye (<u>ft</u>) <u>string beans</u>	mamnuun (<u>adj</u>) <u>thankful, thank you</u>
lsaan (<u>pl</u> lsaanaat <u>tongues ʔelson</u>	manaax (<u>pl</u> aat) <u>climate</u>
<u>tongue, language</u>	manšafe (<u>ft pl</u> manaašef) <u>towel, napkin</u>
<u>languages)ʔ xáms_təlson five languages.</u>	manzar (<u>pl</u> manaažer) <u>view</u>
ltaʔa (-ltáʔa) <u>be met, be found</u>	mara (<u>ft pl</u> nəswaan) <u>woman, wife</u>
mʔašš (<u>pl</u> mʔaššaāt) <u>scissors</u>	maraʔ(o) (<u>also</u> marr(ə)) <u>pass by (b-)</u>
mʔaššer <u>shortening; lagging behind</u>	<u>stop at (fala)</u>
maa_ (" <u>connective</u> " see note)	marhaba (<u>ft pl</u> maraaneb) <u>hello</u>
ʔádd_maa_btəʔmor . <u>As much as you say.</u>	marr(ə) <u>see</u> maraʔ
báfd_maa_ʔəza . <u>After he came (see</u>	marra (<u>ft pl</u> <u>reg or</u> mraar) <u>time</u>
<u>also máa_ not) ʔéemta_maa_kāan</u>	(= <u>occasion: fois, not temps</u>)
<u>at any time</u>	báfd_lmarràat <u>sometimes</u>
máa_ (<u>usually with primary stress; see</u>	lmarže (<u>ft</u>) Marjé (<u>square in Damascus</u>)
<u>note) not; máa_byášref . He doesn't</u>	
<u>know. báfd_máa_ʔəza . He hasn't come</u>	

masa (coll sg masawiyye ft) evening
 bšúufak šánd_lmasa . I'll see you
in the evening.

masan(a) wipe

masaari see mešriyye

mašbağa (ft pl mašaabeğ) laundry, the
cleaner's

mašnaš (pl mašaaneš) factory, mill

mašyaf (pl mašaayef) summer resort,
place where one stays in the summer

maššat como

mašaar (pl -aat) airport, airfield

mašar (f pl ʔamšaar) rain

mašluub (pl mašaliib) requirement

talab(o) ask for, request, demand, order
 talabtèlkon_yáaha_mènno . I asked him
for it (on your behalf).

mašam (pl mašašem) restaurant

mawžuud (adj) present, found, see also
wažad

maxzan (pl maxaʔzen) store

mayy(e) (ft also, in special uses maaʔ
 pl miyaah) šaʔiini_šwayyet_màyy .

Give me some water. šúuf_halmayyàat

maa_ʔahláahon . Look how nice this

water is. šérket_lmiyàah . The water
company

mazbuut (adj) exact, correct, see
also zabat

mažmuuf total

maš with; mašak_háʔʔ you're right;

mašo_zzáayde he has appendicitis;

maš_ssaláame goodbye; maš_lʔasaf
unfortunately

mášlee_šii never mind, it doesn't matter

mašruuf favor; šméel_mašrúuf please(ask-
ing someone to do something)
 mašrife or mašrife (pl mašaaref)

acquaintance, knowledge

mbaarak (adj) blessed; nhàarak_sašiid

wembàarak . Good day (reply to

nhàarak_sašiid) mbàarak_haʔtāʔm .

I hope you enjoy this suit. (to
someone who has just bought a suit)

mbaaren (also mbaarna, lbaaren, lbaarna)

yesterday; leelt mbaarna last night;

ʔawwal(t)_mbaarna day before yesterday

mbasat (-mbašat) have a good time, be
happy

məštaan (pl mafatiin) key, opener

mənši (pl manaaši) stuffed dish

(e.g. stuffed squash, stuffed eggplant)

məmken or mumken (adj) possible (see

ʔamkan) ġéer_mumken impossible

before 1 the
men (menn-; mne-) from; than; for

ʔana_žāaye_mnəlbéet . I'm coming from

the house. ʔāhmad ʔākbar_mən_ʔāli .

Ahmad is older than Ali. huwwe_ʔéža

mən_ʔābl . He came before. mən_

zamāan_māa_səfto . I haven't seen

him for a long time.

mestašfa (m pl mestašfayáat) hospital

mester mister

mešriyye (ft pl reg or masaari) money

meši(i) go, go along, walk; work,

run (e.g. of a machine)

mešt (pl mšaāt) comb

mešwaar (pl mašawiir) walk, stroll,

ride, trip, errand

tʔaxxar get delayed, be late; matʔaxxer

late

metl like, as; metl_maa (+ verb) as

mğallaf (pl -aat) envelope

mhatta (ft) station

mhəmm (adj) important, serious

miin or meen who, whom; lamiin_

halwāraʔa . Whose ticket is this?

miyye (ft miiteen 200 pl miyyaat) hundred

miit (+ sg noun) 100, xams_miyye

500 xams_miit_māra 500 women, miyyaat_

nnāas hundreds of people

mneen (= mən_wéen) from where

mniih (pl mnaah) good

mooz (coll) bananas

moozaat (pl) shank strips

mraššen (adj) having a cold

mšaʔʔiit- beside, next to, next door

mtakkas (adj) without a stamp

m(u) fawwadiyye (ft) legation

m(u)naasabe (ft) occasion,

bihalmunaasabe by the way

muu he, it isn't

muus (pl mweas) knife (that folds into
a case), straight razor

n-(ne-) if, nšaalla if God wills,

God willing, I hope, neʔʔiit mnáakol_

sāwa . If you come, we'll eat together.

naʔʔa choose

naašef (adj) dry

naam(a) sleep, fall asleep

naas (treated as pl or fem sg) people

(see also ʔensaan)

naaʔuura (ft pl nawaʔiir) water wheel

nabiih (adj) wide-awake, alert (usually

pers name nabiih, nabiiha)

nafas (pl nfaas or ʔanfaas) breath

naššaf dry (something)

nažžaar (pl -iin) carpenter

naŋam yes; well?, beg your pardon

(= what did you say?)

naŋiiman (fla) may you feel refreshed

(said often to someone who has just

had a shave, a haircut, bath, a nap)

ndiif (adj pl ndaaf) clean

naŋna (or laŋna) we

naŋi(a) forge

naŋwaani (adj) feminine, pertaining

to women

naŋŋ (pl naŋaŋ) half

naŋef(a) become dry, dry out

naŋel(e) go down, get off

naŋaer (pl naŋaaraat) day (= daytime,

not 24 hrs. cf. yoom); naŋaarak_safiid

Good day.

naŋaalla (fla) God willing, I hope

naŋaalla_ŋala_salame . I hope things

(operation, trip) turn out all right.

xeer_naŋaalla . I hope there's nothing

wrong.

naŋur (pl naŋaŋaer) light

qarraar (also naŋarraar) decide, plan

raŋi (raŋy- pl naŋaaraa?) view, opinion

ŋu_ranaŋyak ? What do you think?

raad(i) want

raaŋ(u) go

raakeb (pl rakaab) passenger

raas (pl ruus) head, peak, cape

raas_ŋabal mountain peak

raaŋeeta (ft) prescription see also

waŋfe

raŋbe (ft pl ranaab) neck

raŋiif spring

radd(e) give back, bring back, return

(something)

raŋii? comrade, friend (also pers

name)

raŋa- (also laŋa-, + prefix tense verb)

going to

raŋŋa (ft) return trip, way back

raŋi(a) be satisfied (b- with)

raŋana (ft) company, companionship

raŋbe (ft pl rakaab) knee; naŋa_rakaab

the grippe

raŋŋ (coll) rice

raŋef(a) go back, come back, return

raŋaŋ(a) rest; martaan resting,

comfortable

raŋuube (ft) humidity, moist air

raŋiif (adj pl rakaab) cheap

saŋal(a) ask (a question), inquire for

(ask for = request see talab) baŋaalla

yaŋa . I'll ask her for you. saŋal

ŋannaŋ . He asked for you. (= about

you).

saafar travel
 saawa do, make
 saafa (ft) hour, clock, watch
 ?addéeš_ssàafa ? What time is it?
 ssàafa_tantéen . It's two o'clock.
 saaftéen two hours or two clocks
 saafad help
 sabax(a) swim
 sabatafš (-ar + sg noun) seventeen
 sabt Saturday
 sabfa (ft) seven; sábf_leerdats seven
pounds; sábf_tiiyyám seven days;
 sabfétna the seven of us
 sabfiin (+ sg noun) seventy
 sadd (pl suduud) dam
 sadda? believe
 safar (coll sg safra trip, voyage)
travel, travelling
 sahhal make easy
 sahl (pl shuul) plain (land)
 ?àhlan_wasáhlan (also ?àhla_wsáhla)
welcome!
 sawar(e, o) enchant
 sakkar close, turn off
 salaam (pl -aat) peace, greeting
 xallfina_?aafdiin_bsalám . Leave
us in peace. ssaláamu_?aláykom .

Peace be on you. (fla of greeting)
 salaméat . Greetings!
 salaame (ft) peace, safety; maf_saláame
goodbye (reply) nšáalla_?ala_saláame .
I hope everything turns out all right.
 ?ala_salaamto . He's a fine fellow.
 lwámdella_?assaláame . I'm glad
everything turned out all right.
 (These last two formulas are used
 in connection with the danger of
 sickness, an operation, or a long trip.)
 salaf in advance; ?ana_sálaf_b?állak ...
I'll tell you in advance ... dfá?li,
há?on sálaf . Pay (me) for them in
advance.
 saliim (adj) safe, healthy, sound
 (also pers name saliim, saliime)
 sallam hand over, surrender; keep in
safety; greet; ?állay_sálmak . God
keep you. sállem_?idéek thank you
(for action done with hands): sallémli,
?ala_?axúuk remember me to your
brother; sállem_halmaktúub la?axúuk .
Give this letter to your brother.
 salle (ft pl reg or sèlal) basket

samaḥ(a) permit, allow, excuse;

bṭasmaḥli_ṣārfak ṣala_ʔāḥmad ?

May I introduce you to Ahmad?

smahūuli_bṣanatilikon . May I see

your bags.

samak (coll) fish

sanduuʔ (pl sanadiiʔ) box, trunk,

cash register; ʔamīn_sandūʔ

treasurer; rūḥ_dīʔāṣ_ṣassandūʔ

Go pay the cashier (=at the cash box).

sariif (adj) fast

sawa together

ṣaṣal(o) cough

saʔiid (adj) happy (more often pers
name saʔiid)

ṣemeṣ(a) listen, hear

ṣene (ft pl sniin or ṣanawaat) year

sēnt_lmāadye last year

sett (f pl settaat) lady; setti

ma'am, my mistress (said by servant),

(my) grandmother

sette (ft) six; sētt_leerāat six pounds;

sāt(t)_tiyyāam six days

settiin (+ sg noun) sixty

ṣeṭṭaṣṣ (-ar + sg noun) sixteen

ṣeṣr (pl ʔaṣṣaar) price

siid- lord, sir; siidi sir; siidna

Our Lord

siigaara (ft pl reg or sagaayer)

cigarette

siinama (ft) movies (movie theater)

sookar (also soogar) insure

maktūb_msóogar registered letter

staʔṣar rent (from someone)

staḡfar ask for forgiveness

stāḡfiru_llāa reply to tṣarraṣna

or to a compliment of some kind

stanna(a) wait

staṣṣal hurry; meṣtaṣṣel in a hurry

(people) meṣtaṣṣal urgent (things)

straah(i) rest, be seated

s(u)ruur pleasure; bkáll_srūur with

pleasure

suuʔ badness, bad, súuʔ_hādm in-

digestion súuʔ_lʔaḥwāal bad state

of affairs

suuʔ (pl ʔaswaaʔ or swaaʔ) market

ṣaabuun (coll) soap

ṣaanṣa (ft pl reg and ṣennāṣ)

maid (servant)

ṣaar(i) become, happen; ʔaddéeṣ

ṣārlak_hōon ? How long have you been

here? šaar_yéži káll_yoom . He
began to come every day. šarli
wázaf_ràas . I got a headache.
 sabaan (pl rare -aat) morning;
 sabàan_lxéer . Good morning.
 (many replies: sabàan_nnúur .
 sabàan_lxeeráat . miit_sabàah .
 etc.)
 sabbaat (pl sababiit) pair of shoes
 (usually men's shoes)
 saan(ə) become (or turn out to be)
healthy or true
 saana (ft) health; saanteen To your
health! ("two healths") said to
someone in connection with eating.
 kiif_sàntak ? How are you?
 sayyaf spend the summer
 seef (no pl see also seefiyye) summer
 seefiyye (ft) summer
 səbn (no pl) morning; bšúufak békra_
ssəbn . I'll see you tomorrow morning.
 sàafa_tésfa_ssəbn 9 a.m.
 sənni (adj) healthful
 səxn (adj) hot (of things)
 sinaafa (ft) industry
 soob toward
 soot (pl ?aswaat or swaat) voice, sound,
vote

šaa(?) (a) will want (used only in a
few expressions) nšé?t táfa_mafi .
If you want, come along. nšaalla
God willing.
 šaaf(u) see; šaayéflak... It looks
as though... šaayef fala...
How...looks! What a...!
 ššaam (f) Damascus
 šaan "sake; men_šāan for, for the
sake of
 šaater (adj) clever, smart
 šafra (ft) (safety) razor blade
 b'əšš_bəššāfra . I shave with a
safety razor.
 šahar(e,o) make famous; mašhuur famous
 šahr (pl ?əšhor) month; xāms_təšhor
5 months
 šakar(o) thank
 šalan(a) take off (e.g. clothes)
 šams (f pl rare šmuus) sun
 šanta (ft pl reg or šanaati, šenat,
 šantayaat) bag, suitcase, briefcase
 šaraf honor
 šarraaf honor
 šarwe (ft) a purchase, a buy, a bargain
 šaf- here (is, comes, etc.)! (see
also leek)
 šafr (coll) hair

šaŋŋal kindle, light
 šebbaak (pl šababiik) window
 šeŋl (coll sg šaŋle ft pl šaŋlaat
jobs, 'ašŋaal work, works) work
 šereb(a) drink
 šetwiyye (ft) winter
 šii (pl 'ašyaa') thing, somewhat,
at all, about; maa_šeft_šii . I
didn't see a thing. šii_ktiir .
Pretty much. šii_ʔálf_léera about
1000 pounds; šeft_hada_šii ? Did
you see anyone at all?
 šmaal left, north
 šloon how
 šoob (coll) heat
 šooraba (ft) soup
 štaŋal work
 štara buy
 šuu (also (ʔ)eeš especially in combina-
tions) what
 šwayye (ft) a little
 šweer see dhuur
 tʔammal hope
 tʔiil (adj pl tʔaal) heavy
 taʔriiban approximately
 taani (adj f taanye) second, other, next
 taaza (inv adj) fresh, soft

taažer (pl taažaar) businessman
 tabaŋ belonging to, of (noun must
have 1- the) lbéet_tabaŋi my house
 taŋtiis (coll) immersion, diving
 taŋtiise one immersion, bath
 tawt under, underneath, down
 taksi (pl taksiyyaat) taxi
 talaata Tuesday
 talŋraaf (pl talŋraafaat) telegram
 tamaaman perfectly, exactly
 taneen Monday
 taxt (pl txuut) bed
 tazkara (ft pl tazaaker) ticket, card
 tafa see ʔeža
 teffaah (coll) apples
 təkram you're welcome (reply to
"thank you"); à votre service
 telmiiz (pl talamiiz) student
 teŋataŋš (-ar +sg noun) nineteen
 teŋŋa (ft) nine; téŋ_leeràat nine
pounds; téŋ_tiiyyām nine days
 teŋfiin (+ sg noun) ninety
 teŋeb(a) get tired
 tfaddal be preferred; tfaddal (inv)
please (said when offering someone a
service or privilege)
 tfarraž have a look, look around

tǵayyar change, be changed
 tnammam take a bath
 tlaaʔa meet (one another)
 tlaate three; tlát_leeránt 3 pounds
 tlót_tiiyyám; 3 days; tlaatátna
the three of us
 tlaatiin (+ sg noun) thirty
 tleṭṭaṭš (-ar + sg noun) thirteen
 tmaaniin (+ sg noun) eighty
 tmaanye or tmaane eight; tmán_leerdát
eight pounds; tmán_tiiyyám 8 days
 tmaanátna the eight of us
 tmentāṭš (-ar + sg noun) eighteen
 tnaffas breathe
 tneen (f tñteen) two;
 tneenatna)
) the two of us
 tneenaatna)
 traafaʔ go with (one another), be
companions
 tramwaay (pl tramwaayaat) tram
 trattab get wet, be refreshed
 tražža hope for, request; betražžaak
please
 treen (pl -aat) train
 tšakkar (= šakar) thank; metšakker
thank you

tšarraṭ be honored; tšarraṭna
we're honored (= I'm glad to meet
you)
 ttafaʔ agree, come to agreement
 tṭallam learn
 tyaab (pl sg rare toob gown, robe)
clothes
 taʔm (pl tʔuume) suit of clothes
 taʔs (pl tʔuus liturgias) weather;
ritual, liturgy
 taʔ (pl tuuʔ) fold; tṭaaʔ_xámse
fivefold, five times; xáms_tūʔ
five folds, five layers, fivefold,
five times
 taʔa (ft) window (= kuwwe)
 taabes (pl tawaabes) stamp
 taala_maa_as long as, the whole time
that, since
 taar(i) fly; take off (airplane)
 tabax(o) cook
 tabx cooking
 tabiiṣi natural, naturally
 talab (pl -a-t) application, request,
order (for something)
 tarak(e, o) leave
 tard (pl truud(e)) package

ṭarii? (pl ṭer'aat, 'etro?, 'etr'a)

road, way

ṭayyaara (ft) airplane, kite

ṭayyeb (adj) good, all right; halmūs

ṭāyyeb . This knife is sharp. 'abuu

u'əmmo ṭaybiin ? Are his father and
mother alive? ṭāyyeb 'ūum_lanrūum

ba'a . O.K. let's go then.

ṭelef(a) go up, get on (vehicle); go

out; turn out, become; amount to

'addées_byètlaṣ_ṣalée ? How much

does it amount to? ṭlāaṣ_žžābal .

Climb the mountain. ṭéleṣ_māfo 'abu

rrákab . It turned out that he had

the grippe.

ṭnaṣš (-ar + sg noun) twelve

ṭsattah lie down

ṭsawwar be photographed, have portrait
made; imagine

u'iyye (ft pl waa?) uqiya (= 200 grams)

u- (we-) and

wa''af stop, stand

wa't (pl 'aw'aant) time; when; wa't

bšūufak...when see you... maa

ṣando_wā't . He doesn't have time .

bāṣd_l'aw'aant sometimes

waadi (pl wadyaan) river valley,

watercourse

waahed (adj) one; lēera_wāande one

pound; yōom_wāahed one day; waahedna

one of us

waasef (adj) large, broad, extensive

(having lots of room)

waafa (ft pl 'awaafi) container: bag,

box, basket, garment (pl = clothes)

wadda lead, take, send

walad (pl ulaad) boy, child

walaww of course, how could it be

otherwise?!

walla (wallaahi) by God, indeed,

certainly; 'ēe_walla . Yes, indeed.

walṣa (ft) light (for smoking, for a
fire)

wara in back; waraaha in back of it (f)

wāra? (coll sg wara'a pl reg or uraa?)

paper; sg wara'a piece of paper,

ticket, Syrian pound

waṣfe (ft) prescription

waṣl (pl uṣuulaat) receipt

waṣṣa order (not command, but place
an order for something) ṣala

waṣak ṣala_waṣak on the point of,
about to

- wazaara (ft) ministry, cabinet
 wazan (-uuzen or -ezen) weigh (tr or
 intr) see also zaan(i) weigh (tr or
 wazzaf distribute
 wažad (-uuzed or -ezed) find; táfa_{la}-
 fāndi btežēdni_{la} belbēet . Come to
see me and you'll find me home.
 wažaḥ (pl ʔawžaaḥ) pain
 weṣex (adj) dirty
 ween (also feen) where; laween (to)
where; menwēen or mneen from where
 walla or
 weṣeḥ (-eṣaḥ or -uusaḥ) have room for,
contain
 weṣel (-uusal or -eṣal) arrive, get
(somewhere); weṣel_{la} hniik . He
arrived there.
 wešš (pl užuuh) face, top
 wežeḥ (-uūžaḥ or -ežaḥ) pain, hurt
 wilaaye (ft) state
 xaḥf(a) be afraid of men; be afraid for,
worry about ʔala
 xaaled (adj) immortal (also pers name:
 xaaled, xaalde)
 xaarež (pl xawaarež) toilet
 xaaržiiye (ft) foreign affairs
 xaater (pl xawaater) sake, idea, wish
 xaatrak good-bye (said by one leaving)
 xaatrak
 xabar (ʔaxbaar) piece of news;
information
 xafa(i) hide, conceal
 xafiif (adj pl xfaaf) light, fast
 ʔiido_{la} xafiife He's light-fingered.
 xaffaf lighten, lessen
 xalaṣ(o) finish
 xalla let, leave
 xallaṣ finish (something)
 xamiis Thursday
 xamse (ft) five; xāms_{la} leerāat five
pounds; xāms_{la} tiyyāam five days;
 xamsetna the five of us
 xamsiin (+ sg noun) fifty
 xamṣtaṣš (-ar + sg noun) fifteen
 xariif fall, autumn
 xasal(e) see ḡasal
 xasiil see ḡasiil
 xatt (pl xtut) line; xātt_{la} ʔiid
handwriting
 xawaaža (m pl -aat) gentleman,
sir, Mr. (usually refers to a Christian
in Western clothes)
 xayyaat (pl -iin) tailor

xdēwi_smaʔiil Khedive Ismail (name
of ship)
 xeer (pl -aat) well-being, good;
 ʃabāan_lxээр Good morning. xээр_
 nšāalla Nothing wrong, I hope.
 bxeer . Well, fine.
 xəbz (coll) bread
 xədme (ft) service
 xədra (ft pl xədar xədraat, xədrawaat)
vegetables
 xzaane (ft pl reg or xazaayen)
cabinet, closet
 yaa or yāa...yāa either...or
 yaareet O that!, I wish...
 yalli (also halli, lli) which, who
that; the one who, whoever,
whatever; həyy bənt ʔəltəllak_ʔānha .
This is a girl I told you about.
 həyy_lbənt yalli_ʔəltəllak_ʔānha .
This is the girl I told you about.
 yalli_māfo_lmaʃāari byédfaʃ .
Whoever has the money will pay.
 yamiin right (opp. of left)

yatāra possibly (adds element of
doubt to question)
 yaa- sign of object (see note)
 yaa_ oh (used in address) (see note)
 yemma or; yemma ... yemma either...
or
 yoom (pl ʔiyyaam) day; lyoom today
 yoom_mnelʔiyyāam once upon a time
 yoomiyyan daily
 zaad(i) exceed, do or be in excess
 zaan(i) (see also wazan) weigh
(usually tr)
 zaar(u) visit
 zaat (pl zawaat) self, same, personage
 zaayde (ft) appendix; māfo_zzāayde
he has appendicitis
 zamaan period of time, long time
 zeet (pl zyut) oil
 zoože (ft) (also žooze ft) wife
 zaḃat(o) correct, make exact
 zḃoot_sāaʃtak .
 mazḃuut correct, exact
 zahar(a) seem, appear

zann(e) think

zarf (pl zruuf(e)) envelope, hasab

zruuf according to the circum-
stances

zgiir (adj pl zgaar) small, young

zaab(i) bring

zaaye (adj f=m pl zaayin; see

ʔəʒa) coming, next

žabal (pl žbaal) mountain

žabar(e, o) force, fix, set (bones)

mažbuur forced, obliged

žamaʃ(a) join together fii- to, with

žamb or žanab (pl žnaab) side ʃala

žanab aside

žawaaz (pl -aat) passport

žawwi (adj) atmospheric, air (as
adjective)

žebraan Gibran, Gabriel

želd (coll sg želde ft; želd also

sg, pl žluud) skin, leather;

želde little bit of skin,

leather strap; xams želdaat five

pieces of leather, five straps;

xams žluud five skins

želdi (adj) of leather, leather (adj)

žamʃa (ft pl žamaʃ) week, Friday

žnuub south

žooze see zoože

žraabe (ft) stocking

ʃaʔl (pl ʃʔuul) mind, reason

ʃaadatan usually

ʃaadi (adj) ordinary, usual

ʃaafa(i) strengthen; mʃáafa nšáalla

(said to or about a sick person)

I hope you (he...) recover

ʃaad(i) repeat

ʃaal (inv adj) fine, excellent

ʃaalee(f) Aley, resort town near

Beirut, Lebanon

ʃaasi (adj) stubborn, contrary;

lʃaasi the Orontes river

- ʃabba fill
 ʃabd (pl ʃbiid) slave, negro; (also in
pers names: ʃabdalla, ʃabd_lmaʃiid,
etc.
 ʃafiif (adj) pure, sound, chaste
(also pers name ʃafiif)
 ʃala (ʃaliyyi, ʃalee-; before 1- the ʃa-)
on, at, to, for; ʃalʔard on the
ground; rāayeh_ʃassiinama? Are you
going to the movies? ktiir_ʃaliyyi
too much for me; ʃaliyyi_məʃwāar
I have a trip to take.
 ʃali (pers name) Ali
 ʃallam mark, teach
 ʃamaliyye (ft) operation
 ʃamm (pl ʃmūum) father's brother;
father-in-law
 ʃan from, than, about
 ʃand at the place of, near, in the
possession, (have); maa_
ʃandi_ʃii . I don't have anything.
tləʃna_lafāndo . We went up to his
place.
 ʃarabi (adj pl ʃarab) Arabic, Arabian
 ʃarraʃ cause to know, introduce
ʃala to
- ʃaʃara (ft) ten; ʃaʃr_leerāat ten
pounds; ʃaʃr_tiiyyām ten days;
ʃaʃratna the ten of us
 ʃaʃʃiyye (ft) housekeeper, cook
 ʃaʃa (-aʃti imv ʃaʃi) give
 ʃayyat shout, yell
 ʃaziim (adj pl ʃzaam, ʃezama,
 ʃezamaaʔ) great, great man, leader
 ʃaʒaʔ(e, o) crowd; maʃzuuʔ crowded
 ʃaʒale (ft) hurry
 ʃeele ft (pl reg or ʃiyal) family
 ʃeen (f ʃeenteen or ʃeeneen two eyes
pl ʃyuun) eye, spring (water)
 ʃamar (pers name) Omar
 ʃamel (-aʃmel) do, make
 ʃamr (pl ʃmaar) age
 ʃane, ʃana(i) mean; yaʃni he, it
means; well, mm...
 ʃanwaan (pl ʃanawiin) address
 ʃaref (-aʃref) know
 ʃəʃriin (+ sg noun) twenty
 ʃiyaade (ft) clinic
 ʃtaʔad believe
 ʃtamad decide
 ʃtana take care of fii-

DINING OUT

285

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Hello, Mahmoud. | safiide yaa mammuud.. |
| dine | tfašša byetfašša |
| 2. How about having dinner together tonight? | šūu_rā'yak netfašša_sāwa llēele ? |
| excel | mtaaz byemtaaz |
| 3. Excellent idea. | fēkra_mentāaze . |
| broil | šawa byəšwi |
| salad | šalata |
| 4. I feel like some lahm mishwi and salad. | šāaye_šala_bāali lahm_məšwi šalata . |
| mishwi maker | šawwa |
| 5. How about going to Abu Ahmad's? | šūu_rā'yak 'iza_mənrdun_lafand 'abu_ |
| accustom | 'ahmad_ššāwwa ? |
| | šawwad bišawwed |
| 6. I'm used to eating at the Asadiyye. | 'ana_mšāwwad_šāakol šand_ʿasadiyye . |
| be appealing | šahha bišahhi |
| level out, become moderate | štadal byəštadel |
| 7. The food is appetizing and the service is good and the prices are reasonable. | l'ākl_bišāhhi welxədmə_mnīna wel'asfāar_ |
| | məštādle . |
| hungry | šuušaan |
| 8. No kidding, I'm very hungry. | wallāhi_la'ənkiilak_ddegri 'ana_šuušaan |
| Let's hurry up. | ktīr . xalliina_nəštāšəl . |
| list | liista |
| 9. Waiter, bring us the menu. | yaa_garšoon šatfina_lliista . |
| appetizer, hors d'oeuvre | m'abbel |
| 10. What hors d'oeuvres do you serve? | dāxlak šūu_btāštu m'ablāat ? |
| tabbouli | tabbuule |
| olives | zeetuun |
| chickpeas | hammos |
| sesame oil | šaiine . |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 11. We serve tabbouli and olives and
hommos. | mnāʕti tabbūle wzeetūn whāmmog
betāfine . |
| 12. And now what is your order? | whālla? šūu btāʕmru tāaklu ? |
| kibbeh | kābbe |
| 13. Bring me a plate of kibbeh and
tomato salad with lemon. | šābli sahn kābbe wšālatet banadōora
belleemūn . |
| mnazzaleh | mnāzzale |
| 14. And for me a plate of eggplant
mnazzaleh with rice. | wšāli sahn mnazzālt beetnāān maf rrāzz . |
| 15. We don't have eggplant mnazzaleh.
What else do you want? | māa fānna maazzālt beetnāān šūu batrīd
šēero ? |
| roll | laff billaff |
| grapes | fāneb |
| 16. Then bring a plate of stuffed grape
leaves. | fāla hallōon šābli sahn malfūuf wāra?
fāneb . |
| 17. What sweets and fruit shall I bring
you? | wšūu batrīdu šāblkon hēlu wfawāaki ? |
| pears | nāaas |
| plums | xoox |
| 18. Bring us pears and plums, and what
sweets do you have? | šāblna nāaas wxōox wšūu fii fandak hēlu ? |
| (mafmuul) | mafmuul |
| (knaafe) | knaafe |
| (nammoora) | nammoora |
| 19. We have mafmuul and knaafe and
nammoora. | fii fanna mafmuul wēknāafe wnammoora . |
| assort | šakkal bišakkal |
| 20. Make an assorted plate just right. | saawiilna sahn mšakkal fāla kēefak . |
| cup | fənzaan |
| sugar | səkkar |
| medium | wasat |
| 21. Bring us two cups of coffee - medium
sugar. | šāblna fənzaaneen ʔāhwe səkkar wasat . |
| 22. Give us the check. | fātīna wārʔet laṭsāab . |

invitation	faziime <u>or</u> daŋwe
23. Thanks for this invitation.	ʔana_mamndunak fala_halfaziime .
24. Don't mention it.	māa_fii_šii mən_ʔiimtak .
spend the evening	səher byəshar
25. Now where shall we go to spend the evening?	whāllaʔ lawēen mənrdun lanəshar ?
singing	ḡene
26. Let's go to the Scheherezade and hear some Arabic singing.	tāfa_lanrdun fala_šahrazād lanəsmas
sing	ḡanna biḡanni
27. At the present time Marie Gibran is singing there.	balwāʔt_lhāader māri_žəbrān fanna_
dance	raʔas byerʔos
dancer (fem.)	raʔʔaasa
28. And they have some new dancers from Egypt.	wfii_raʔʔaasāat žaayiin_žedad mən_məsr .
call	naada binaadi <u>or</u> sarax byəsrax
carriage driver	fərbāši
29. Call the waiter to get us a carriage.	nāadi_lalgarsdon yaşráxlna_laʔərbāzi .
30. Take us to the Scheherazade.	xādna lašahrazād .
setting	şəfra
31. Set the table for four.	hətti şəfra laʔərbəfa <u>or</u> hədri şəfra laʔərbəfa .
guests	dyuuf
dinner	şaša
32. We are having guests for dinner.	žaayiina dyuuf şaşa .
get out <u>or</u> up	taalaʔ
knives	sakakiin
silver	fədda
33. Get out the silver knives.	taalfiilna ssakakiin lfədda .
fork	šooke
spoon	maʔlaʔa <u>or</u> malʔaʔa

34. Give everyone two forks and
two spoons.

nett lakell waaned šookteen wmafla?teen .

glass

kebbaaye

35. Put the glass to the right of
the plate.

netti lkebbaye ſala yamiin şşanen .

PART THREE

UNIT 14

RENTING A HOUSE

Section A. Basic Sentences

hello (on the phone)	?alo
sir, mister	?afandi
1. Hello. Good morning, Jamil.	?alo . şabaah lxeer žamiil afandi .
2. Good morning. What can I do for you,	şabaah nnuur . ?amr ?
friend	sadii?
3. I have an American friend who just	fii şandi sadii? ?ameerkaani ?əža
came to the country.	ždiid şalblaad .
4. He works at the Legation.	byəštəğel bəlmufawwadiyye .
arrange for	dabbar
live (= dwell)	sakan(o)
5. And he asked me to get him a house	ukallafni dabberlo beet hatta
to live in.	yəskon fii .
6. Does he have a family?	şando şeele ?
last part of, end of	?aaxer
steamship	baaxra
7. Yes, but his family will arrive by	naşam, bass şeelto btuuşal b?aaxer
ship at the end of the month.	şşahr şalbaaxra .
precede	saba?(e)
8. He came on ahead ("he preceded her	huwwe sabá?a u?əža bəttəyyaara
and came") by plane.	
furnish	faraş(e,o)
9. Does he want the house to be	bəddo lbeet ikuun mafruuş ?
furnished?	
near	?ariib

- | | |
|---|--|
| 10. Yes, and to be near the Legation. | ʔeewa wikuun ʔariib ʔalmufawwaɗiyye. |
| 11. How many rooms does he want in it? | kám ʔuuda biriid fii ? |
| sleep | noom |
| parlor, living room | saaloon |
| kitchen | maɗbax |
| utilities | manaafes |
| 12. About three or four bedrooms, a
living room, kitchen, and utilities.
balcony, terrace | šii tlatarbaʔ ʔuwaɗ n om ušaaloŋ
umaɗbax umanaafes .
balkoon or veranda |
| 13. And if there would be balconies
that would be preferable.
garden | uʔiza kaan fii balkoonaat bikuun
ʔafdal .
žneene |
| 14. Would he like it to have a garden? | bihebb ikuun ʔelo žneene ? |
| 15. How much can he pay? | ʔaddees byeʔder yedfaʔ ? |
| reasonable | maʔʔuul |
| 16. Well, the rent isn't so important
as long as it's reasonable. | yaʔni lʔəžra maa bethemm ktiir bass
tkuun maʔʔuule . |
| 17. About two thousand a year would be
fine.
go around | hawaali ʔalfeen bəssene bikuun ʔaal .
dawwar
tekrām bdawwərlak wəbrəddəllak xabar
bəkra ʃəbəh . |
| 18. All right, I'll look around for you
and let you know tomorrow morning.
depend
whiten | ttakal
bayyaɗ |
| 19. I'll depend on you. | bettekel ʔaleek . bayyaɗlna wəšna
ʔəddaamo .
ʔəttikaal |
| dependence | |

14.3

20. Depend on God. 1'əttikaal ʃala ʔalla
 21. When you find a house, you and I bass tlaaʔi lbeet mənruuh ʔana wiiyyaak
 will go and see it. lanʃuufo .
 22. Good luck. So long. ʃala xeer nʃaalla xaatrak .
 rent ʔaʒaar
 23. How much is the rent, Jamil? ʔaddees 1ʔaʒaar yaa ʒamiil afandi ?
 differ xtalaf
 24. We won't disagree. As much as maa mnəxtəlef . ʔadd maa btəʔmor
 you say, sir. hadrtak .
 owner, friend ʃaaneb
 25. No. How much did the owners ask? laʔ ʔaddees ʔalabu ʃaabo ?
 26. Oh, they've left it up to you. walla tarakuuha lahəmtak .
 27. What do you say? ʃuu betʔuul ʔənte ?
 deceived, cheated maḡluub
 be treated unjustly nʒalam yənzəlem
 28. I don't want you to be cheated ʔana maa bəddi yaak tkuun maḡluub
 and I don't want them to be wala hanne yənzəlm .
 treated badly.
 side, edge ʔaraf
 29. All right, what do you think would ʔayyeb ʃuu betlaaʔi mnaaseb ləʔtarafeen?
 be suitable for both sides?
 30. Two thousand five hundred would be ʔalfeen uxams miyye ʃaal ləʒʒihte .
 fine for both sides.
 taxes hraase
 be obligated tkaffal
 expenditures maʃruuf

31. They'll pay the taxes but you'll
have to take care of the water
and electricity.

honne byadfaŋu ləhgaase bass ʔantu
btətkaffalu bmaŋruuf lmayy
wəlkahraba .

32. The house really seems very nice.

lmaʔiiʔa lbeet mniis mbayyen falee .

33. But maybe two thousand five hundred
is a little steep.

ʔayyeb ŋuu btədfaŋ ʔante yaa xawaaʒa ?

34. Two thousand.

ʔalfeen .

divide

ʔasam(e, o)

35. We'll split the difference in half.

mnaʔsem lfərʔ bənnəŋŋ .

payment

dafʔ

amount

mablaŋ

36. And the payment is half the amount
in advance and the other half
after six months.

wəddafʔ nəŋŋ lmaɓlaŋ salaf wənnəŋŋ
ttaani baɓd sett təʒhor .

37. Agreed. Goodbye.

ttafaʔna . xaatrak .

blessed

mabruuk

38. I hope you'll be happy.

nšaalla bikuun mabruuk .

("God willing it will be blessed.")

39. And if you need anything, we're
always at your service.

uʔiza ləzmak ŋii nəhna daayman
belxədme .

40. Goodbye.

maŋ ssalaame .

PART THREE

AT THE BANK

UNIT 15

bank

1. I want to open an account with the bank.

run

saving

2. Do you want a checking ("running") account or a savings account?
3. What's the difference between the two?

withdraw, pull

4. With a checking account you deposit and withdraw money...
5. As much as you want and whenever you want.

appoint, make definite

6. With a savings account you deposit for a definite time.
7. And you can't withdraw before that time.

interest

8. How much interest do you pay?
9. The checking account has no interest.

limit

10. And the savings account up to a thousand pounds is 1 1/2%.
11. And over a thousand, 1%.
12. I want a checking account.

bank or masraf

beddi ?eftan nsaab belbank .

žara (i)

tašmiid

beddak_nsaab_žari wella nsaab tašmiid ?

šuu lfar? been ttneen ?

sanab (a)

l^žnsaab_lžari betnətt_masaari
webtəsnab_mənhon?add_maa_betriid ^wlwa?t_maa_betriid .

fayyan

wənsaab_ttašmiid betnətt_masaari
lawa?t_mfayyan .l^wmmaa_btə?der təsnab_mənhon ?abl_hadaak_
lwa?t .

faayde

?addeš_btədfasu faayde ?

lənsaab_lžari maalo faayde .

hadd

wənsaab_ttašmiid_lanadd_l?alf_leera
belmiyye_waaned_ynəss .l^wyfoo?_l?alf waaned_belmiyye .

?ana_beddi nsaab_žari .

payment

13. Very well. How much do you want to put as a first deposit?

14. How much is the least I have to deposit?

less

15. The minimum is 500 pounds.

statement

16. I want you to send me a statement of my account every month.

remain stationary

means

17. And since I don't have a permanent address, send it care of the American Legation.

traveling

place

18. I'm a traveling salesman and I'm in a different place every day.

daffa

tekram . ?addeeš_beddak_tneṭṭ
?awwal_daffa ?

?addeeš ?a'all_šii laazem_neṭṭo ?

?adna

lhadd_l?adna xams_miiṭ_leera .

bayaan

bnebb kelli_šahr tebṭatuuli_bayaan
beṇsaabi .

sabat (o)

waasta

yla?anno maali_ṭenwaan_saabet bṭatuuli_
yaa bwaaset(ə)ṭ lmfawwadiyye_l?amerkiyye .

metṭawwel

maṭraṇ

?ana taaṣer_metṭawwel mkell_yoom
bmaṭraṇ .

19. Good morning, Mr. Adel.

20. How are you?

21. Fine, thank you.

22. Well, it looks as though you're all very busy.

scratch

23. It's always like this. We don't have time to turn around ("to scratch our heads").

ṣabaan_lxeer ṣaadel_afandi .

kiif ṣanneṭkon ?

lhambu_lellaa .

ṣuu mbayyen mašṣuuliin_ktiir .

hakk (ə)

walla daayman_heck . maa_ṭanna wa?t
nnekk_raasna .

- | | |
|---|---|
| strength | ʔaafye |
| make powerful | ʔawwa |
| 24. God give you strength and make you powerful. | ʔalla yaʔtiikon_lʔaafye wiʔawwiikon . |
| 25. God keep you. | ʔalla_yənfazak wixalliik . |
| assistance | msaaʔade |
| matter, case | ʔadiyye |
| 26. I need your assistance in a small matter. | bəddi_msaaʔattak bʔadiyye_zgiire . |
| 27. With pleasure. | bkeell_mamnuuniyye . |
| intercede, mediate | twassat |
| meet face to face, "see" | ʔaabal |
| director | mudiir |
| 28. Could you intercede for me so I could see the director now? | məmkən tətwaʔsatli ʔaabel_lmudiir hallaʔ ? |
| effort | ʔahd |
| 29. The director is quite busy, but I'll do my best. | walla_lmudiir maʔguul_ktiir bass_baʔmel_ʔahdi . |
-
- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| become easy | tsahhal byetsahhal |
| 30. Everything's all right. Go in and see the director. | tsahhalet . tfaddal laʔand_lmudiir . |
| excellence | safaade |
| 31. Good morning, sir ("your excellence the Bey"). | ʔabaah_lxeer yaa_safaatt_lbeek . |
| 32. Welcome. | ʔahlan_wasahlan . |

project	mašruuf
produce	?antaž byentež
need	ntaaž byentaaz
loan	qard
33. I have a production project and I need a loan.	fii_fandi mašruuf_muntež ^w mtentaaz laqard_maali .
34. Very well, what's your project?	ṭayyeb šuu_huwwe mašruufak ?
extract	staxraž byestəxrež
pertaining to plants	nabaati
35. My project is the extraction of vegetable oils.	mašruufi ?estəxraaz zyuut_nabaatiyye .
partner, associate	šriik
36. Are you undertaking this project alone or do you have associates?	?ente ?aayem wandak bhalmašruuf wella mafak šeraka ?
association, company	šerke
blessing	barake
37. There's no blessing in association. (Proverb)	ššerke maa_fiiha barake .
38. How much do you need?	?addeeš_btəntaaž ?
39. About LS 20,000.	hawaali lfəšriin ?alf leera .
present, offer	?addam
guarantee	damaan
against, covering	liqaa?
40. What collateral do you have to offer the bank against this amount?	šuu_fandak damaanaat t?addemha ləlbənk liqaa? halmablağ ?
share (of stock)	sahm
bond, note	sanad
entrust	wadaf byuuda?

15.5

41. I have stocks and bonds with value of LS 5,000 I'll leave with you as surety.

mortgage, pawn

42. And I have a three-story house I'll mortgage to you.

43. But all that isn't enough.

jewelry

be worth

44. All right. I also have my wife's jewelry worth about LS 5,000.

period of time

45. And how long do you want the loan to run?

depend

condition, term

46. It depends on your terms.

47. On loans of this kind we take 10%.

48. But that's a little high.

regulation, law

49. That's our rule.

waiting period

consider, think over

subject

50. Give me some time to think the subject over and I'll let you know.

fii_sandi 'ashom msanadaat b'iimet
xams_taalaaf leera buuda'ha_sandkon .

rahan (o)

W
ufandi_binaaye betlet_tawaabe'
berhenha_sandkon kamaan .

bass haada kello maa_bikaffi .

siiga

sewi (a)

W
tayyeb ufandi_kamaan siiget_saa'elti
bteswa sii_xams_taalaaf leera .

medde

ula'addees beddak_tkuun meddet_
lqard ?

twa''af

šart

btetwa''af fala_šruutkon .

qruud_men_hannoof mnaaxod_faleeha fašra_
belmiyye .
bass_haada ktiir_šwadiye .

qaanuun

lqaanuun heek_fanna .

mehle

fakkar

mawduuf

fa'iini_mehle fakker_belmawduuf
webreddelkon_xabar .

PART THREE

UNIT 17

HOLIDAY

SECTION A. BASIC SENTENCES

1. Good morning, momma.

ṣabaan_lxéer māama .

safe

saalem

2. (Holiday greeting)

káll_sène uʔənti_sáalme .

3. (reply)

uʔənte_sáalem .

certificate, diploma

š(a)haade

4. I hope you'll have your certificate
this time next year.nšáalla sséne_žžàaye mətł_halʔiyyám
btáaxòd_ššahàade .

wish holiday greetings

ṣaayad

holiday gift

ṣiidiyye

5. Where's daddy so I can wish him
happy holiday and get my gift?féen_ḡaaba hatta_ṣáayed_ṣalée
uʔaaxòd_ṣiidiiti ?

pray

ṣalla

prayer

ṣalaa

fitra (alms given at end of
Ramadan)

fetra

6. Daddy went to pray the holiday
prayer and pay the fitra.báaba raah_isállì_salaat_lṣiidi
uʔédfaṣ_lfetra uʔéži .

cannon

madfaṣ

end

nihaaye

7. A little while ago I heard the
cannons that mark the end of the
prayer.ʔábl_šwáyye sméšt_lmadàafeṣ halli_
beddáll_ṣala_niháayt_ṣṣalaa .

8. And he hasn't come yet!

uʔhúwwe_ləssáa máa_ʔəža !

while

labéen_maa

suit

badle

9. And by the time you put on your
new suit daddy will be here.uʔlabéen_maa telbes badltak žždiide
bikuun_ḡaaba weṣel .

10. Why does daddy pay fitra?

léesh baaba byedfaa fetra ?

11. Because by (doing) it he helps the poor so they can celebrate the holiday like us.

la?anno fiiha bisaa'ed lfā'ara
hatta ifāydu metlāna.

become happy

fereh (a)

butcher

lanhaam

12. And you'll see how happy they get when the butcher comes."

nhālla? betsuuf 'addeesh byēframu
wa't byēzi llanhaam...

slaughter
separate, distribute
yearling, ram

dabaa (a)

farra?

xaaruuf

13. and he slaughters the ram and we distribute it to them.

wabyēdbaa lxaarduuf umenfār'o

holiday

salēehon .

fiid

rich

gani

14. So that they eat like the rich during the holiday time.

lanhatta yāaklu b'iyyāam lfiid
metl maa byāaklu l'āgniya

dressing

lebs

eating

'akl

15. I finished dressing and eating and daddy isn't back yet.

xalāst lēbs v'ākl ubāaba
lessa maa 'eža .

holiday greetings (visit
or card)

mfaayade

president or chairman

ra'iis

republic

žamhuriyye

16. Maybe he went with his friends to pay his respects to the president of the Republic.

yamken raah maf rafa'aato
lamfaayadet ra'iis žžamhuriyye .

custom, habit

faade

17. Because it's the custom after the prayer to go greet the president.

la'anno bā'ad ssalaa lfāade
biruunu biāaydu rra'iis

"big shots"

'akaaber

18. And the cabinet ministers
will be there and the
officers and big shots.

19. And then where will daddy
go?

break the fast

20. He'll come back home, wish
us holiday greetings and
break his fast with us.

cemetery

21. And after that he'll go and
visit the cemetery.

turn, go around

relative

22. And he'll come back and go
around calling on relatives
and friends.

23. And where am I going today?

breaking the fast, lunch

neighbor

24. After lunch Miriam will take
you with the neighbors'
children and take you around
the suk.

toy, game

fireworks

25. And you'll buy toys and
fireworks.

mount, ride

merry-go-round

ferris-wheel

^Wybikūun_hniik hee'et_lwazáara
walmwazzaffin wal'akáaber .

^Wybaſdeen fēen_bàaba_birūun ?

fatar (a)

byéržaf_salbeet biſáayed_salēena
webyeftar_māſna .

terbe

^Wybaſdha birūun bizūur_ttérbe .

daar (u)

ʔaraayeb

webyéržaf bidūur sal'araaybiin,
weſſhdab .

^Wy'ána fēen_beddi_rūun lyōom ?

fūur

žaar

bāſd leſtūur māryam_btāaxdak maſ_
^Wyłāad_žžiiirāan ybeddawwarkon_bessūu? .

leſbe

fetteeš or fattaaš

webteštēru_léſab ^Wyfetteeš

rekeb (a)

duwweexa

ʔallaabe

26. And you'll ride on the merry-go-round and the ferris-wheel.

decorations

street

27. And you'll look at the decorations and the people on all the streets.

rugs

hang

28. And the rugs spread out and hanging up on both sides (of the street).

happy

laughing

29. And all the people happy and laughing wishing one another holiday greetings.

wake up, recover. guard
against

get lost

30. Be careful Ziyad not to let go of Miriam's hand, so you won't get lost.

world

crowd

31. Because it (the world) is crowded and all the children are celebrating.

foot or leg

crowd

17.4
ybtterkabu bedduwweexa ybel'allaabe .

ziine

šaaref

ybtetfarražu fazziine yfannaas
bkell ššawaaref .

sežžaad

falla?

wessežžaad mafruuš wemfalla?
faṭṭarafeen .

farnaan

ḍankaan

wennaas kelha farnaane uḍankaane
famma tfaayed fala baḍha .

ṣeḥi (a)

ḍaaḥ (i)

ʔeṣṣhak yaa ziyaad tetrok ʔiid
maryam hatta maaddiif .

ḍenye or ḍenya

fažʔa

laʔanno ḍenye fažʔa ktiir
ykel(1) lyllaad mṣaydiin .

režl or ʔežr

zanme

32. And it'll be so crowded
you won't be able to find
room to put your foot in.

run

kiss

33. Here comes your father, run
over and kiss his hand and
wish him happy holiday.

Islam

34. There are two important
Moslem holidays:

Ramadan

Shawwal

35. Lesser Bairam comes after
the last day of Ramadan,
i.e. on the first of Shawwal

fall

Dhu'l Hijjah

36. Greater Bairam falls on the
tenth of Dhu'l Hijjah.

Christian

37. There are three important
Christian holidays.

birth

December

38. Christmas comes on the
twenty fifth of December.

January

39. New Year's Day comes on
the first of January.

Easter

date

amaa betlaa'i matran thett režlak
fii men ketr zahanne .

rakad (o)

baas (u)

hayy ?abuuk ?əža . rkood buus
?iido yaaaved ?alee .

?əslaam

?ayaad l'?əslaam ləmhəmmin tneen .

ramadaan

šawwaal

?iidi zəg'iir ?aw'iidi lfətr byənkə
ba?id ?axer ramadaan ya'ni bi'?awwal
šawwaal .

wə?əf (-uu?af)
zəlhəžžə

?iidi ləkbiir ?aw ?iidi l'?adna
byuu?af bi'fašara zəlhəžžə .

massiini

?ayaad lmassiiniyye ləmhəmmin tlaate .

miillaad

kaanuun l'?awwal

?iidi lmiillaad byəži bxamsaa
?əšriin kaanuun l'?awwal

kaanuun ttaani

?iidi raas ssəne bišiir bwaaned
kaanuun ttaani .

fəsh

taariix

17.6

40. Easter-this has no definite date

Jews

Passover

Sukkoth

fiid lekbiir ?aw fiid lfash^v xhaada

maalo taariix mfayyan .

yahuud

ftiir

mdalle

41. The Jews have two important holidays: Passover and Sukkoth.

lyahuud sandhon fiideen mhemmin :

fiid leftiirwelmalle .

January

kaanuun ttaani

February

šbaat

March

?aadaar

April

niisaan

May

?ayyaar or nawwaar or maayez

June

hzeeraan

July

tammuuz

August

?aab

September

?eeluul

October

tašriin l'awwal

November

tašriin ttaani

December

kaanuun l'awwal

THE ARAB RENAISSANCE

1. Introduction. mʔaddame .
2. There is a strong national renaissance in the Arab World today. fii lyoom belʔaalam lʔarabi nahda qawmiyye ʔawiyye .
3. And this renaissance covers all the Arabic peoples, extending to all sects and classes. uhannahda haadi ʔaamme ʃʃuʔuub lʔarabiyye kəlha, umenteʃre bkell ṭṭawaayef weʔṭṭabaqaat .
4. The causes and origin of the renaissance. ʔasbaab nnahda unuʃuuʔha .
5. This renaissance originated in the last century in Lebanon among certain poets, men of letters, and journalists... naʃʔet hannahda belqarn lmaadi blebnaan been beʔd ʃʃeʔara welʔadaba weʃʃanaafiyyiin .
6. ... who began to restore and revivify ancient Arabic culture. halli badu yenʃʃu uyeyu lʔadab lʔarabi lʔadiim .
7. And naturally the political conditions in the days of the Ottomans were a very powerful factor... utabʃan kaanet lʔawdaaf ssiyaasiyye bʔiyyaam lʔesmaaniyyiin sabab ʔawi ktiir...
8. ... in arousing the Arab peoples to a demand for independence. litammiis ʃʃuʔuub lʔarabiyye liʔalab lʔesteqlaal .
9. And on the other hand, foreign learned institutions were also nourishing this spirit. ummalʔiha ttaanye, kaanet lmaʔaahed lʔelmiyye lʔaʔnabiyye kamaan ʔamma ṭg̣azzi halhamaas .
10. It is certain that these external reasons would not have created a national renaissance... mʔakkad ʔenno ^{ha/} ~~ka~~ ʔasbaab lxaarʔiyye haadi maa kaanet btexleʔ nahda qawmiyye...
11. ... if there had not been among the people a psychological readiness for the renaissance. laww maa kaan fii ʔand ʃʃaʔb lʔesteʔdaad nnaʔsaani lennuhuud .
12. The first stage - feeling lmarhale lʔuula lʔaatʔiyye .
13. From the middle of the nineteenth century the Arabic renaissance spread and grew stronger. men ʔawaaset lqarn ttaaseʔ ʔaʃar twassaʔet nnahda lʔarabiyye uʔuwyet .
14. Even defeats kept strengthening it. uhatta lʔenkisaarant tʔawwiha .

15. Because it was gathering together the feelings of the Arabic peoples and making them one feeling...
li?annha kaanet tēzma? fawaatef_ ššēfuub l?arabiyye ute?melha faatfe weande .
16. ... and creating a sense of brotherhood and cohesion which had not existed in the past.
utexle? šufuur bel?exuwwe wel?ertibaat maa kaan mawzuud belmaadi .
17. The second stage - action
lmarnale ttaanye l?amaliyye .
18. But all these developments of feeling remained limited in their influence...
laaken kell hattatawwuraat l?aatfiyye haadi dallet marduude ktiir bita?siirha
19. ...until the first world war broke out,
hatta fel?et l?arb l?aalamiiyye_ l?awwalaaniyye .
20. and King Husei proceeded to bring together the Arab peoples and armies,
u?aam lmalek rseen u?ama? ššufuub welžuyuuš l?arabiyye .
21. and led them in a revolution against the Turks.
uqaadha bisawra dēdd l?atraak .
22. But the results of the war were not very good.
laaken nataayež l?arb maa kaanet ktiir mniina .
23. Because the allies divided the Arabs into many countries.
la?anno l?ulafa qassamu l?arab laduwal ktiire .
24. And they placed a number of them under mandate or protectorate.
uwada?u fadad menha tant l?entidaab ?aw_ l?himaaye .
25. And for this reason the second stage came to consist of attempts to free these countries and bring them together by action.
ulehassabab saaret lmarnale ttaanye kinaaye fan muhaawalaat l?amaliyye latahriir hadduwal u?am?ha maf ba?id .
26. And from this the Arab League originated during the second World War.
umen hoon naš?et l?aamfa l?arabiyye bmeddet l?arb l?aalamiiyye ttaanye
27. The third stage - reform
lmarnale ttaalte l?ešlaaniyye .
28. The third and final stage is the shift of the Arab peoples toward internal reforms.
welmarnale ttaalte wel?axiire hiyye tanawwol ššufuub l?arabiyye nanu l?ešlaanaat ddaaxliyye .

29. ... in social systems, political conditions, law, equality and justics,

bennazom l'əʒtimaafiyye, bel'awdaaf ssiyaasiyye, belnuquuq, belmusaawaat welfadaale,

30. ... freedom of thought and opinion, abolition of sectarianism and feudalism, and in many other areas.

bəerriyyet lfəkr werraʔi, b'elḡaaʔ tṭaaʔifiyye wəl ʔigṭaafiyye

31. And with this reform there came also a renewal in culture, art, science and thought.

umaf hal'əslaah naʒaʔ kamaan taʒdiid bessaqaafe, belfann welfəlm welfəkr .

32. And the Arab peoples today feel that independence and unity will not benefit them at all if this fundamental reform is not accomplished with them.

wəʃʃuʃuub lʔarabiyye lyoom bethəss ʔənno l'əsteqlaal wəlwənde maa bifiiduuhə ʃii ʔiza maa tamm maʃha hal'əslaah l'asaasi haada .

33. Conclusion

xaatme .

34. And thus we see that the Arab national renaissance has three aims: independence, unification and internal reform.

uheek menʃuuf ʔənno nnaħda lqawmiyye lʔarabiyye ʔəlha tlet ʔahdaaf: l'əsteqlaal, wəttawhiid, wəl'əslaah ddaaxli .

SPOKEN SYRIAN ARABIC

Supplementary Unit: Politics

- | | |
|--|---|
| present | ʔaddam |
| ambassador | safiir |
| credentials (letter of credence) | ʔawraaq lʔəʔtimaad |
| 1. Has the Ambassador presented his credentials? | ʔaddam ssafiir ʔawraaq ʔəʔtimaado ? |
| 2. Yes, he did today. | naʔam . ʔaddamha lyoom . |
| translation | tarʒame |
| life | hayaat |
| biography | tarʒamet hayaat |
| 3. What is his background? | ʃuu tarʒamet hayaato ? |
| study | daras (o) |
| university, league | ʒaamʔa |
| 4. He studied at the American University of Beirut. | daras belʒaamʔa lʔamərkiyye fii beerunt . |
| obtain | naʒal (a) |
| degree | daraʒe |
| science | ʔelm |
| political science(s) | leʔluum ssiyʔaasiyye |
| 5. And received his doctor's degree in political science from the University of Chicago. | uʔasal ʔala daraʒet doktöör fəʔluum ssiyʔaasiyye mən ʒaamʔet ʃiikaago , |
| deputy, representative | naaʔeb |
| House of Representatives,
Chamber of Deputies | lmaʒles nniyaabi <u>or</u>
maʒles nnuwwaab |
| 6. And became a deputy in the Chamber of Deputies in the year such-and-such. | uʔaar naaʔeb belmaʒles nniyyaabi bsent kaza . |

appoint

ṣayyan

delegate

manduub

envoy

muṣṭamad

extraordinary

fawq lṣaade or foo' lṣaade

minister

waziir

plenipotentiary

mfawwad

7. And was appointed Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to London.

wetṣayyan manduub fawqlṣaade
uwaziir mfawwad fii london .

number

ṣadad

official

mwazzaf

embassy

safaara

legation

mfawwadiyye

8. How many are on the staff of the Embassy (Legation)?

Ṣuu ṣadad mwazzafiin ṣsafaara
(lṣmfawwadiyye) ?

diplomatic service

sselk ssiyyaasi

accountant

mhaaseb

clerk

kaateb

9. There are ten in the Diplomatic Service, two accountants and four local clerks.

fii ṣaṣara beṣselk ssiyyaasi
wemhaasbeen u'arbaṣ kettaab
mahalliyyiin .

rank

retbe

10. What are the ranks in the Diplomatic Service?

Ṣuu retab selk ssiyyaasi ?

11. Counsellor

mustaṣaar

(First, Second, Third) Secretary

sakreteer (ʔawwal, taani, taalet)

Cultural Attache

mulhaq ṣaṣaafi

- | | |
|---|--|
| Press Attache | mulnaq qanaafi |
| Commercial Attache | mulnaq tižaari |
| Military Attache | mulnaq faskari |
| Air Attache | mulnaq leṭṭayaraan |
| Naval Attache | mulnaq banri |
| Chairman | raʼiis |
| delegation | wafd |
| body | heeʼa |
| nation | ʼumme |
| assembly, council | mažles |
| 12. Who is the Chairman of your delegation to the General Assembly of the United Nations? | miin raʼiis wafdkon fii heeʼet (or mažles) lʼumam lmettahide ? |
| 13. Our Ambassador is the Chairman. | safiirna huwwe rraʼiis . |
| security | ʼamn |
| 14. And at the same time he's our delegate on the Security Council. | ubinafs lwaʼt huwwe manduubna bimažles lʼamn . |
| form | ʼallaf |
| member | ʼədu |
| adviser | mustašaar |
| 15. The delegation consists of four members and two Advisers. | lwafd byetʼallaf mən ʼarbaʼ ʼafdaaʼ umustašaareen . |
| 16. How is the situation at home? | kiif lhaale ʼanna belblaad ? |
| elect | ntaxab |
| 17. The Chamber elected the President of the Republic and a new cabinet has been formed. | lmažles ntaxab raʼiis lʼamhuuriyye wəʼallafet wazaara ždiide . |

18. Premier, Prime Minister

Minister of Foreign Affairs

Minister of Finance

Minister of Agriculture

Minister of National Economy

Minister of Public Instruction

Minister of Defense

Minister of Public Works

Minister of Justice

Minister of Supply

Minister of Health

Minister of State

party (political)

support

19. What are the parties which supported the Cabinet?

coalition

20. It's a coalition cabinet.

program

government

21. What is the program of the new government?

ra'iis lwazaara

or ra'iis lwuzaraa?

or ra'iismažles lwuzaraa?

waziir lxaaržiyye

waziir lmaaliyye

waziir zziraaſa

waziir l'eqtigaad lwaṭani

waziir lmaſaaref

waziir ddifaaſ

waziir l'ašgaal lſaamme

waziir lſadliyye

waziir lhaqqaaniyye (in Egypt)

waziir l'iſaaše or waziir ttamwiin

waziir ṣṣanna

waziir ddawle

hezb

ʔayyad

šuu lʔanzaab yalli ʔayyadet
lwazaara ?

ʔeʔtilaaf

haadi wazaara ʔtilaafiyye .

bernaamež

h(u)kuume

šuu bernaamež lhukuume žždiide ?

include

improvement

economic

combat

illiteracy

finding

solution

refugee

ddamman

tansiin

ʔeqṭisaadi

kaafan

ʔummiyye

ʔiiṣaad

hall

laaṣeʔ

22. Its program includes:

The improvement of the agricultural
and economical situation,

combatting the illiteracy,

and finding a solution to the
refugee problem.

bye ddamman berna^amēṣha :

tansiin laaale zzira^aṣiyye
welʔeqṭisaadiyye,

wemkaafanet lʔummiyye,

uʔiiṣaad hall laṣadiyyet llaaṣiʔiin .

party (social)

consulate

general

hafe

qensliyye or ʔensliyye

ṣaamm

23. What is the occasion for the
Consulate General's party?

farewell

consul

ṣuu mnaasabet haflet lqensliyye
lṣaamme ?

wadaaṣ

qensol or ʔensol

24. It's a farewell party in honor
of the Consul.

transfer

promote

haadi haflet wadaaṣ ṣala ṣaraf
lqensol .

naʔal

raffaṣ

25. The Department has transferred him
to Baghdad and promoted him to the
rank of Consul General.

lxaarṣiyye naʔalto labaḡdaad
uraffaṣeto laretbet qensol ṣaamm .

People's Party	hezbi ššafib
Nationalist Party	lhezbi lwaṭani
Nationalist bloc	lkətle lwaṭaniyye
National Resurrection Party	hezbi lbaʔθ lʃarabi
The Wafd Party	hezbi lwafd
Liberal Party	hezbi lʔanraar
Liberal Constitutional Party	hezbi lʔanraar ddastuuriyyiin
Unionist Party	hezbi lʔəttinaad
Communist Party	lhezbi ššuyuuʃi
Moslem Brotherhood	lʔəxwaan lmuslimiin
Arab League	lʔaamʃa lʃarabiyye

SPOKEN SYRIAN ARABIC

Supplementary Unit: In the Classroom

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. It's hot in here; let's open the window. | fii šoob hoon xalliina neftan ššebbaak . |
| 2. Can you see well or shall I turn on the light for you? | šaayef mniin wella ʔeftanlak ddaaw ʔ |
| 3. Pull down the shade; the sun's in my eyes. | ʔerxi lberdaaye ššams žaaye ʔala ʔyuuni . (or beʔyuuni) |
| 4. Where is a good piece of chalk?
These are too small. | ween fii tabšuura mniina haššəʔaf zgaar ktiir . |
| 5. I forgot to bring my notebook. | nsiit žiib daftari . |
| 6. We need a map today to follow the discussion. | byelzamna xariita lyoom lanafham lmunaqaše . |
| 7. Repeat the sentences after Mr. So-and-so. | ʔiid žžəmal baʔd maa biʔuulhon ssayyeɛ flaan . |
| 8. Don't look at ("read") the paper before you hear the sentence. | laa təʔra lwaraʔa ʔabl maa tesmaʔ lžəmle . |
| 9. Say it faster so that it sounds natural. | ʔuulha bʔažale ʔaktar latežhar tabiiʔiyye . |
| 10. Memorize these new words by tomorrow. | hfaaz halkelmaat žždiide men hoon labakra . |
| 11. Double the "d". | šadded ddaal . |
| 12. That noun is feminine, so the adjective must be feminine too. | halʔəsm muʔannas wəssifa tabaʔo laazer təži belmuʔannas kamaan . |
| 13. We'll discuss that question later. | mnəbhas halmasʔale baʔdeen . |